



owner.ford.com



ford.ca

2016 **ESCAPE** Owner's Manual

November 2015  
Second Printing  
Owner's Manual  
Escape  
Litho in U.S.A.



GJ5J19A321 AA



The information contained in this publication was correct at the time of going to print. In the interest of continuous development, we reserve the right to change specifications, design or equipment at any time without notice or obligation. No part of this publication may be reproduced, transmitted, stored in a retrieval system or translated into any language in any form by any means without our written permission. Errors and omissions excepted.

© Ford Motor Company 2015

All rights reserved.

Part Number: 20151016184941



# Table of Contents

## Introduction

About This Manual.....	7
Symbols Glossary.....	7
Data Recording.....	9
California Proposition 65.....	11
Perchlorate.....	11
Ford Credit.....	11
Replacement Parts Recommendation.....	11
Special Notices.....	12
Mobile Communications Equipment.....	13
Export Unique Options.....	13

## Environment

Protecting the Environment.....	14
---------------------------------	----

## Child Safety

General Information.....	15
Installing Child Restraints.....	16
Booster Seats.....	22
Child Restraint Positioning.....	24
Child Safety Locks.....	25

## Seatbelts

Principle of Operation.....	27
Fastening the Seatbelts.....	28
Seatbelt Height Adjustment.....	31
Seatbelt Warning Lamp and Indicator Chime.....	31
Seatbelt Reminder.....	32
Child Restraint and Seatbelt Maintenance.....	33

## Personal Safety System™

Personal Safety System™.....	34
------------------------------	----

## Supplementary Restraints System

Principle of Operation.....	35
-----------------------------	----

Driver and Passenger Airbags.....	36
Front Passenger Sensing System.....	37
Side Airbags.....	39
Driver Knee Airbag.....	40
Safety Canopy™.....	40
Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator.....	42
Airbag Disposal.....	43

## Keys and Remote Controls

Principle of Operation.....	44
General Information on Radio Frequencies.....	44
Remote Control.....	45
Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control.....	48

## MyKey™

Principle of Operation.....	49
Creating a MyKey.....	50
Clearing All MyKeys.....	50
Checking MyKey System Status.....	52
Using MyKey With Remote Start Systems.....	53
MyKey Troubleshooting.....	53

## Locks

Locking and Unlocking.....	55
Manual Liftgate.....	59
Power Liftgate.....	60
Keyless Entry.....	62

## Security

Passive Anti-Theft System.....	65
Anti-Theft Alarm.....	66

## Steering Wheel

Adjusting the Steering Wheel.....	67
Audio Control.....	67
Voice Control.....	68
Cruise Control.....	68

# Table of Contents

---

Information Display Control.....	69
Heated Steering Wheel.....	69

## Wipers and Washers

Windshield Wipers.....	70
Autowipers.....	70
Windshield Washers.....	71
Rear Window Wiper and Washers.....	72

## Lighting

Lighting Control.....	73
Autolamps.....	73
Instrument Lighting Dimmer.....	74
Headlamp Exit Delay.....	74
Daytime Running Lamps.....	75
Front Fog Lamps.....	75
Direction Indicators.....	76
Interior Lamps.....	76
Ambient Lighting.....	76

## Windows and Mirrors

Power Windows.....	77
Exterior Mirrors.....	78
Interior Mirror.....	80
Sun Visors.....	80
Moonroof.....	80

## Instrument Cluster

Gauges.....	82
Warning Lamps and Indicators.....	84
Audible Warnings and Indicators.....	86

## Information Displays

General Information.....	87
Trip Computer.....	90
Information Messages.....	90

## Climate Control

Manual Climate Control.....	100
-----------------------------	-----

Automatic Climate Control.....	101
Hints on Controlling the Interior Climate.....	102
Heated Windows and Mirrors.....	105
Cabin Air Filter.....	106
Remote Start.....	106

## Seats

Sitting in the Correct Position.....	107
Head Restraints.....	107
Manual Seats.....	109
Power Seats.....	110
Memory Function.....	112
Rear Seats.....	113
Heated Seats.....	113
Rear Seat Armrest.....	114

## Universal Garage Door Opener

Universal Garage Door Opener.....	115
-----------------------------------	-----

## Auxiliary Power Points

Auxiliary Power Points.....	120
-----------------------------	-----

## Storage Compartments

Center Console.....	122
Overhead Console.....	122

## Starting and Stopping the Engine

General Information.....	123
Ignition Switch.....	123
Keyless Starting.....	123
Starting a Gasoline Engine.....	124
Engine Block Heater.....	127

## Fuel and Refueling

Safety Precautions.....	129
Fuel Quality.....	130
Fuel Filler Funnel Location.....	130

# Table of Contents

---

Running Out of Fuel.....	130	Cross Traffic Alert.....	163
Refueling.....	131	Eco Mode.....	166
Fuel Consumption.....	133	Steering.....	167
Emission Control System.....	134		
<b>Transmission</b>		<b>Load Carrying</b>	
Automatic Transmission.....	137	Rear Under Floor Storage.....	169
		Luggage Covers.....	169
<b>Four-Wheel Drive</b>		Roof Racks and Load Carriers.....	170
Principle of Operation.....	140	Load Limit.....	171
Using Four-Wheel Drive.....	140		
		<b>Towing</b>	
<b>Brakes</b>		Towing a Trailer.....	178
General Information.....	145	Trailer Sway Control.....	179
Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes.....	145	Recommended Towing Weights.....	179
Parking Brake.....	146	Essential Towing Checks.....	181
Hill Start Assist.....	146	Towing Points.....	184
		Transporting the Vehicle.....	185
		Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels.....	185
<b>Traction Control</b>		<b>Driving Hints</b>	
Principle of Operation.....	148	Breaking-In.....	187
Using Traction Control.....	148	Economical Driving.....	187
		Driving Through Water.....	188
<b>Stability Control</b>		Floor Mats.....	188
Principle of Operation.....	149		
Using Stability Control.....	150	<b>Roadside Emergencies</b>	
		Roadside Assistance.....	190
<b>Parking Aids</b>		Hazard Warning Flashers.....	191
Principle of Operation.....	151	Fuel Shutoff.....	191
Rear Parking Aid.....	151	Jump Starting the Vehicle.....	192
Front Parking Aid.....	152	Post-Crash Alert System.....	194
Active Park Assist.....	153		
Rear View Camera.....	157	<b>Customer Assistance</b>	
		Getting the Services You Need.....	195
<b>Cruise Control</b>		In California (U.S. Only).....	196
Principle of Operation.....	160	The Better Business Bureau (BBB) Auto Line Program (U.S. Only).....	197
Using Cruise Control.....	160	Utilizing the Mediation/Arbitration Program (Canada Only).....	198
<b>Driving Aids</b>			
Blind Spot Information System.....	161		

# Table of Contents

Getting Assistance Outside the U.S. and Canada.....	198
Ordering Additional Owner's Literature.....	199
Reporting Safety Defects (U.S. Only).....	200
Reporting Safety Defects (Canada Only).....	200

## Fuses

Fuse Specification Chart.....	202
Changing a Fuse.....	211

## Maintenance

General Information.....	213
Opening and Closing the Hood.....	213
Under Hood Overview - 1.6L EcoBoost™.....	215
Under Hood Overview - 2.0L EcoBoost™.....	216
Under Hood Overview - 2.5L.....	217
Engine Oil Dipstick - 1.6L EcoBoost™.....	218
Engine Oil Dipstick - 2.0L EcoBoost™/2.5L.....	218
Engine Oil Check.....	218
Engine Coolant Check.....	219
Automatic Transmission Fluid Check.....	222
Brake Fluid Check.....	222
Power Steering Fluid Check.....	222
Washer Fluid Check.....	222
Fuel Filter.....	222
Changing the 12V Battery.....	223
Checking the Wiper Blades.....	224
Changing the Wiper Blades.....	224
Adjusting the Headlamps.....	225
Removing a Headlamp.....	227
Changing a Bulb.....	227
Bulb Specification Chart.....	231
Changing the Engine Air Filter.....	233

## Vehicle Care

General Information.....	235
Cleaning Products.....	235
Cleaning the Exterior.....	235
Waxing.....	236
Cleaning the Engine.....	237
Cleaning the Windows and Wiper Blades.....	237
Cleaning the Interior.....	238
Cleaning the Instrument Panel and Instrument Cluster Lens.....	238
Cleaning Leather Seats.....	239
Repairing Minor Paint Damage.....	239
Cleaning the Alloy Wheels.....	239
Vehicle Storage.....	240

## Wheels and Tires

General Information.....	242
Tire Care.....	245
Using Snow Chains.....	258
Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....	259
Changing a Road Wheel.....	262
Technical Specifications.....	266

## Capacities and Specifications

Engine Specifications - 1.6L EcoBoost™.....	268
Engine Specifications - 2.0L EcoBoost™.....	268
Engine Specifications - 2.5L.....	269
Motorcraft Parts - 1.6L EcoBoost™.....	270
Motorcraft Parts - 2.0L EcoBoost™.....	271
Motorcraft Parts - 2.5L.....	272
Vehicle Identification Number.....	273
Vehicle Certification Label.....	274
Transmission Code Designation.....	274
Capacities and Specifications - 1.6L EcoBoost™.....	275
Capacities and Specifications - 2.0L EcoBoost™.....	278

# Table of Contents

---

Capacities and Specifications - 2.5L.....282

## Audio System

General Information.....	286
Audio Unit - Vehicles With: AM/FM/ CD.....	287
Audio Unit - Vehicles With: AM/FM/CD/ SYNC.....	289
Audio Unit - Vehicles With: AM/FM/CD/ SYNC/Satellite Radio.....	291
Audio Unit - Vehicles With: Premium AM/ FM/CD.....	293
Audio Unit - Vehicles With: Sony AM/FM/ CD.....	295
Digital Radio.....	296
Satellite Radio.....	298
USB Port.....	301
Media Hub.....	301

## SYNC™

General Information.....	302
Using Voice Recognition.....	304
Using SYNC™ With Your Phone.....	306
SYNC™ Applications and Services.....	318
Using SYNC™ With Your Media Player.....	323
SYNC™ Troubleshooting.....	332

## Accessories

Accessories.....	340
------------------	-----

## Extended Service Plan (ESP)

Extended Service Plan (ESP).....	342
----------------------------------	-----

## Scheduled Maintenance

General Maintenance Information.....	344
Normal Scheduled Maintenance.....	347
Special Operating Conditions Scheduled Maintenance.....	350
Scheduled Maintenance Record.....	352

## Appendices

End User License Agreement.....	363
---------------------------------	-----





# Introduction

## ABOUT THIS MANUAL

Thank you for choosing Ford. We recommend that you take some time to get to know your vehicle by reading this manual. The more that you know about your vehicle, the greater the safety and pleasure you will get from driving it.

### WARNING



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

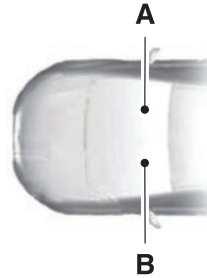
**Note:** This manual describes product features and options available throughout the range of available models, sometimes even before they are generally available. It may describe options not fitted to the vehicle you have purchased.

**Note:** Some of the illustrations in this manual may show features as used in different models, so they may appear different to you on your vehicle.

**Note:** Always use and operate your vehicle in line with all applicable laws and regulations.

**Note:** Pass on this manual when selling your vehicle. It is an integral part of your vehicle.

This manual may qualify the location of a component as left-hand side or right-hand side. The side is determined when facing forward in the seat.



E154903

A Right-hand side.

B Left-hand side.

## SYMBOLS GLOSSARY

These are some of the symbols you may see on your vehicle.



Safety alert



See Owner's Manual



Air conditioning system



Anti-lock braking system



Avoid smoking, flames or sparks



Battery



Battery acid



Brake fluid - non petroleum based

# Introduction



Brake system



Cabin air filter



Check fuel cap



Child safety door lock or unlock



Child seat lower anchor



Child seat tether anchor



Cruise control



Do not open when hot



Engine air filter



Engine coolant



Engine coolant temperature



Engine oil



Explosive gas



Fan warning



Fasten seatbelt



Front airbag



Front fog lamps



Fuel pump reset



Fuse compartment



Hazard warning flashers



Heated rear window



Heated windshield



Interior luggage compartment release



Jack



Keep out of reach of children



Lighting control



Low tire pressure warning



Maintain correct fluid level



Note operating instructions



Panic alarm

# Introduction



Parking aid



Parking brake



Power steering fluid



Power windows front/rear



Power window lockout



Service engine soon



Side airbag



Shield the eyes



Stability control



Windshield wash and wipe

## DATA RECORDING

### Service Data Recording

Service data recorders in your vehicle are capable of collecting and storing diagnostic information about your vehicle. This potentially includes information about the performance or status of various systems and modules in the vehicle, such as engine, throttle, steering or brake systems. In order to properly diagnose and service your vehicle, Ford Motor Company, Ford of Canada, and service and repair

facilities may access or share among them vehicle diagnostic information received through a direct connection to your vehicle when diagnosing or servicing your vehicle. Additionally, when your vehicle is in for service or repair, Ford Motor Company, Ford of Canada, and service and repair facilities may access or share among them data for vehicle improvement purposes. For U.S. only (if equipped), if you choose to use the SYNC Vehicle Health Report, you consent that certain diagnostic information may also be accessed electronically by Ford Motor Company and Ford authorized service facilities, and that the diagnostic information may be used for any purpose. See **SYNC™** (page 302).

### Event Data Recording

**This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder. The main purpose of an event data recorder is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle; this data will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The event data recorder is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less.**

**The event data recorder in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:**

- **How various systems in your vehicle were operating;**
- **Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were buckled/fastened;**
- **How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or the brake pedal; and**
- **How fast the vehicle was traveling; and**
- **Where the driver was positioning the steering wheel.**

# Introduction

---

**This data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.**

**Note:** *Event data recorder data is recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data is recorded by the event data recorder under normal driving conditions and no personal data or information (e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location) is recorded (see limitations regarding 911 Assist and Traffic, directions and Information privacy below). However, parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the event data recorder data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.*

**To read data recorded by an event data recorder, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the event data recorder is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have such special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the event data recorder. Ford Motor Company and Ford of Canada do not access event data recorder information without obtaining consent, unless pursuant to court order or where required by law enforcement, other government authorities or other third parties acting with lawful authority. Other parties may seek to access the information independently of Ford Motor Company and Ford of Canada.**

**Note:** *Including to the extent that any law pertaining to Event Data Recorders applies to SYNC or its features, please note the following: Once 911 Assist (if equipped) is enabled (set ON), 911 Assist may, through any paired and connected cell phone, disclose to emergency services that the vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or, in certain vehicles, the activation of the fuel pump shut-off. Certain versions or updates to 911 Assist may also be capable of being used to electronically or verbally provide to 911 operators the vehicle location (such as latitude and longitude), and/or other details about the vehicle or crash or personal information about the occupants to assist 911 operators to provide the most appropriate emergency services. If you do not want to disclose this information, do not activate the 911 Assist feature. See SYNC™ (page 302).*

**Additionally, when you connect to Traffic, Directions and Information (if equipped, U.S. only), the service uses GPS technology and advanced vehicle sensors to collect the vehicle's current location, travel direction, and speed ("vehicle travel information"), only to help provide you with the directions, traffic reports, or business searches that you request. If you do not want Ford or its vendors to receive this information, do not activate the service. For more information, see Traffic, Directions and Information, Terms and Conditions. See SYNC™ (page 302).**

# Introduction

## CALIFORNIA PROPOSITION 65

### WARNINGS



Some constituents of engine exhaust, certain vehicle components, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm.



Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harm. Batteries also contain other chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer. Wash your hands after handling.

## PERCHLORATE

Certain components in your vehicle such as airbag modules, safety belt pretensioners and remote control batteries may contain perchlorate material. Special handling may apply for service or vehicle end of life disposal.

### For more information visit:

Web Address
<a href="http://www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate">www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate</a>

## FORD CREDIT

### (U.S. Only)

Ford Credit offers a full range of financing and lease plans to help you acquire your vehicle. If you have financed or leased your vehicle through Ford Credit, thank you for your business.

For your convenience we offer a number of ways to contact us, as well as to help manage your account.

Phone: 1-800-727-7000

For more information regarding Ford Credit, as well as to access Account Manager, please go to [www.fordcredit.com](http://www.fordcredit.com).

## REPLACEMENT PARTS RECOMMENDATION

Your vehicle has been built to the highest standards using quality parts. We recommend that you demand the use of genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts whenever your vehicle requires scheduled maintenance or repair. You can clearly identify genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts by looking for the Ford, FoMoCo or Motorcraft branding on the parts or their packaging.

## Scheduled Maintenance and Mechanical Repairs

One of the best ways for you to make sure that your vehicle provides years of service is to have it maintained in line with our recommendations using parts that conform to the specifications detailed in this Owner's Manual. Genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts meet or exceed these specifications.

## Collision Repairs

We hope that you never experience a collision, but accidents do happen. Genuine Ford replacement collision parts meet our stringent requirements for fit, finish, structural integrity, corrosion protection and dent resistance. During vehicle

# Introduction

---

development we validate these parts deliver the intended level of protection as a whole system. A great way to know for sure you are getting this level of protection is to use genuine Ford replacement collision parts.

## Warranty on Replacement Parts

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft replacement parts are the only replacement parts that benefit from a Ford Warranty. Damage caused to your vehicle as a result of the failure of non-Ford parts may not be covered by the Ford Warranty. For additional information, refer to the terms and conditions of the Ford Warranty.

## SPECIAL NOTICES

### New Vehicle Limited Warranty

For a detailed description of what is covered and what is not covered by your vehicle's New Vehicle Limited Warranty, refer to the Warranty Manual that is provided to you along with your Owner's Manual.

### Special Instructions

For your added safety, your vehicle is fitted with sophisticated electronic controls.

#### WARNINGS



You risk death or serious injury to yourself and others if you do not follow the instruction highlighted by the warning symbol. Failure to follow the specific warnings and instructions could result in personal injury.



Front seat mounted rear-facing child or infant seats should **NEVER** be placed in front of an active passenger airbag.

---

## On-board Diagnostics (OBD-II)

Your vehicle's On-board Diagnostics (OBD-II) system has a data port for diagnostics, repair and reprogramming services with diagnostic scan tools. Installing a non-Ford-approved aftermarket OBD plug-in device that uses the port during normal driving, for example remote insurance company monitoring, remote vehicle diagnostics, telematics or engine reprogramming, may cause interference or damage to vehicle systems. We do not recommend or endorse the use of any non-Ford-approved aftermarket OBD plug-in devices. The vehicle Warranty may not cover damage caused by any non-Ford-approved aftermarket OBD plug-in device.

## Notice to Owners of Pickup Trucks and Utility Type Vehicles

#### WARNING



Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles.

---

Before you drive your vehicle, please read this Owner's Guide carefully. Your vehicle is not a passenger car. As with other vehicles of this type, failure to operate this vehicle correctly may result in loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury or death.

## Using Your Vehicle With a Snowplow

### Do not use this vehicle for snowplowing.

Your vehicle is not equipped with a snowplowing package.

# Introduction

---

## Using Your Vehicle as an Ambulance

### **Do not use this vehicle as an ambulance.**

Your vehicle is not equipped with the Ford Ambulance Preparation Package.

## MOBILE COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT

Using mobile communications equipment is becoming increasingly important in the conduct of business and personal affairs. However, you must not compromise your own or others' safety when using such equipment. Mobile communications can enhance personal safety and security when appropriately used, particularly in emergency situations. Safety must be paramount when using mobile communications equipment to avoid negating these benefits. Mobile communication equipment includes, but is not limited to, cellular phones, pagers, portable email devices, text messaging devices and portable two-way radios.

### **WARNING**



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

---

## EXPORT UNIQUE OPTIONS

For your particular global region, your vehicle may be equipped with features and options that are different from the features and options that are described in this Owner's Manual. A market unique supplement may be supplied that complements this book. By referring to the market unique supplement, if provided, you can properly identify those features, recommendations and specifications that are unique to your vehicle. This Owner's Manual is written primarily for the U.S. and Canadian Markets. Features or equipment listed as standard may be different on units built for Export. **Refer to this Owner's Manual for all other required information and warnings.**



# Environment

---

## **PROTECTING THE ENVIRONMENT**

You must play your part in protecting the environment. Correct vehicle usage and the authorized disposal of waste, cleaning and lubrication materials are significant steps toward this aim.

# Child Safety

---

## GENERAL INFORMATION

See the following sections for directions on how to properly use safety restraints for children.

### WARNINGS



Always make sure your child is secured properly in a device that is appropriate for their height, age and weight. Child safety restraints must be bought separately from your vehicle. Failure to follow these instructions and guidelines may result in an increased risk of serious injury or death to your child.



All children are shaped differently. The recommendations for safety restraints are based on probable child height, age and weight thresholds from the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration and other safety organizations, or are the minimum requirements of law. We recommend checking with a NHTSA Certified Child Passenger Safety Technician (CPST) and

### WARNINGS

consult your pediatrician to make sure your child seat is appropriate for your child, and is compatible with and properly installed in your vehicle. To locate a child seat fitting station and CPST, contact NHTSA toll free at 1-888-327-4236 or go to <http://www.nhtsa.dot.gov>. In Canada, contact Transport Canada toll free at 1-800-333-0371 or go to [www.tc.gc.ca](http://www.tc.gc.ca) to find a Child Car Seat Clinic in your area. Failure to properly restrain children in safety seats made especially for their height, age, and weight may result in an increased risk of serious injury or death to your child.



Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. On hot days, the temperature in the trunk or vehicle interior can rise very quickly. Exposure of people or animals to these high temperatures for even a short time can cause death or serious heat-related injuries, including brain damage. Small children are particularly at risk.

---

# Child Safety

## Recommendations for Safety Restraints for Children

Child	Child size, height, weight, or age	Recommended restraint type
Infants or toddlers	Children weighing 40 lb (18 kg) or less (generally age four or younger).	Use a child safety seat (sometimes called an infant carrier, convertible seat, or toddler seat).
Small children	Children who have outgrown or no longer properly fit in a child safety seat (generally children who are less than 4 ft. 9 in. (1.45 m) tall, are greater than age four and less than age 12, and between 40 lb (18 kg) and 80 lb (36 kg) and upward to 100 lb (45 kg) if recommended by your child restraint manufacturer).	Use a belt-positioning booster seat.
Larger children	Children who have outgrown or no longer properly fit in a belt-positioning booster seat (generally children who are at least 4 ft. 9 in. (1.45 m) tall or greater than 80 lb (36 kg) or 100 lb (45 kg) if recommended by child restraint manufacturer).	Use a vehicle safety belt having the lap belt snug and low across the hips, shoulder belt centered across the shoulder and chest, and seat back upright.

- You are required by law to properly use safety seats for infants and toddlers in the United States and Canada.
- Many states and provinces require that small children use approved booster seats until they reach age eight, a height of 4 feet 9 inches (1.45 meters) tall, or 80 pounds (36 kilograms). Check your local and state or provincial laws for specific requirements about the safety of children in your vehicle.
- When possible, always properly restrain children 12 years of age and under in a rear seating position of your vehicle. Accident statistics suggest that children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in a front seating position. See **Front Passenger Sensing System** (page 37).

## INSTALLING CHILD RESTRAINTS

### Child Seats



E142594

# Child Safety

Use a child safety seat (sometimes called an infant carrier, convertible seat, or toddler seat) for infants, toddlers, or children weighing 40 pounds (18 kilograms) or less (generally age four or younger).

## Using Lap and Shoulder Belts

### WARNINGS



Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child seat. Never place a rear-facing child seat in front of an active airbag. If you must use a forward-facing child seat in the front seat, move the seat upon which the child seat is installed all the way back.



Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child seat. Children 12 and under should be properly restrained in the rear seat whenever possible.



Depending on where you secure a child restraint, and depending on the child restraint design, you may block access to certain safety belt buckle assemblies and LATCH lower anchors, rendering those features potentially unusable. To avoid risk of injury, occupants should only use seating positions where they are able to be properly restrained.

When installing a child safety seat with combination lap and shoulder belts:

- Use the correct safety belt buckle for that seating position.
- Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle until you hear a snap and feel it latch. Make sure the tongue is securely fastened in the buckle.
- Keep the buckle release button pointing up and away from the safety seat, with the tongue between the child seat and the release button, to prevent accidental unbuckling.

- Place the vehicle seat upon which the child seat will be installed in the upright position.
- Put the safety belt in the automatic locking mode. See Step 5. This vehicle does not require the use of a locking clip.

Perform the following steps when installing the child seat with combination lap and shoulder belts:

**Note:** *Although the child seat illustrated is a forward facing child seat, the steps are the same for installing a rear facing child seat.*



E142528

1. Position the child safety seat in a seat with a combination lap and shoulder belt.



E142529

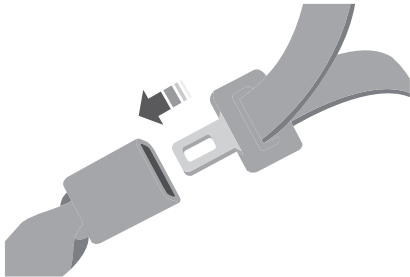
## Child Safety

2. Pull down on the shoulder belt and then grasp the shoulder belt and lap belt together.



E142530

3. While holding the shoulder and lap belt portions together, route the tongue through the child seat according to the child seat manufacturer's instructions. Be sure the belt webbing is not twisted.



E142531

4. Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle (the buckle closest to the direction the tongue is coming from) for that seating position until you hear a snap and feel the latch engage. Make sure the tongue is latched securely by pulling on it.



E142875

5. To put the retractor in the automatic locking mode, grasp the shoulder portion of the belt and pull downward until all of the belt is pulled out.

**Note:** *The automatic locking mode is available on the front passenger and rear seats.*

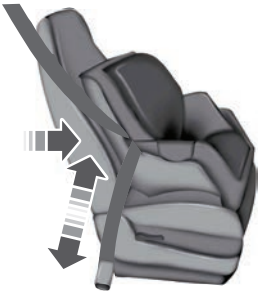
6. Allow the belt to retract to remove slack. The belt will click as it retracts to indicate it is in the automatic locking mode.
7. Try to pull the belt out of the retractor to make sure the retractor is in the automatic locking mode (you should not be able to pull more belt out). If the retractor is not locked, unbuckle the belt and repeat Steps 5 and 6.



E142533

# Child Safety

- Remove remaining slack from the belt. Force the seat down with extra weight, for example, by pressing down or kneeling on the child restraint while pulling up on the shoulder belt in order to force slack from the belt. This is necessary to remove the remaining slack that will exist once the extra weight of the child is added to the child restraint. It also helps to achieve the proper snugness of the child seat to your vehicle. Sometimes, a slight lean toward the buckle will additionally help to remove remaining slack from the belt.
- Attach the tether strap (if the child seat is equipped).




E142534


- Before placing the child in the seat, forcibly move the seat forward and back to make sure the seat is securely held in place. To check this, grab the seat at the belt path and attempt to move it side to side and forward and back. There should be no more than 1 inch (2.5 centimeters) of movement for proper installation.

We recommend checking with a NHTSA Certified Child Passenger Safety Technician to make certain the child restraint is properly installed. In Canada, check with Transport Canada for referral to a Child Car Seat Clinic.

## Using Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH)

### WARNINGS

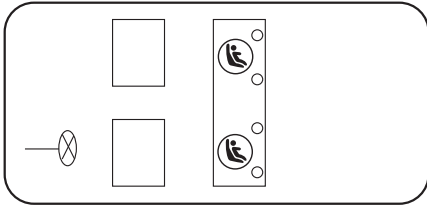
 Never attach two child safety seats to the same anchor. In a crash, one anchor may not be strong enough to hold two child safety seat attachments and may break, causing serious injury or death.

 Depending on where you secure a child restraint, and depending on the child restraint design, you may block access to certain safety belt buckle assemblies or LATCH lower anchors, rendering those features potentially unusable. To avoid risk of injury, occupants should only use seating positions where they are able to be properly restrained.

The LATCH system is composed of three vehicle anchor points: two lower anchors located where seat back and seat cushion meet (called the seat bight) and one top tether anchor located behind that seating position.

LATCH compatible child safety seats have two rigid or webbing mounted attachments that connect to the two lower anchors at the LATCH equipped seating positions in your vehicle. This type of attachment method eliminates the need to use safety belts to attach the child seat, however the safety belt can still be used to attach the child seat. For forward-facing child seats, the top tether strap must also be attached to the proper top tether anchor, if a top tether strap has been provided with your child seat.

# Child Safety



E142535

Your vehicle has LATCH lower anchors for child seat installation at the seating positions marked with the child seat symbol.




E144054

The LATCH anchors are located at the rear section of the rear seat between the cushion and seat back below the symbols as shown. Follow the child seat manufacturer's instructions to properly install a child seat with LATCH attachments. Follow the instructions on attaching child safety seats with tether straps.

Attach LATCH lower attachments of the child seat only to the anchors shown.

## Use of Inboard Lower Anchors from the Outboard Seating Positions (Center Seating Use)

### WARNING

 The standardized spacing for LATCH lower anchors is 11 inches (28 centimeters) center to center. Do not use LATCH lower anchors for the center seating position unless the child seat manufacturer's instructions permit and specify using anchors spaced at least as far apart as those in this vehicle.

The lower anchors at the center of the second row rear seat are spaced 18 inches (46 centimeters) apart. A child seat with rigid LATCH attachments cannot be installed at the center seating position. LATCH compatible child seats (with attachments on belt webbing) can only be used at this seating position provided that the child seat manufacturer's instructions permit use with the anchor spacing stated. Do not attach a child seat to any lower anchor if an adjacent child seat is attached to that anchor.

Each time you use the safety seat, check that the seat is properly attached to the lower anchors and tether anchor, if applicable. Tug the child seat from side to side and forward and back where it is secured to your vehicle. The seat should move less than one inch when you do this for a proper installation.

If the safety seat is not anchored properly, the risk of a child being injured in a crash greatly increases.

# Child Safety

## Combining Safety Belt and LATCH Lower Anchors for Attaching Child Safety Seats

When used in combination, either the safety belt or the LATCH lower anchors may be attached first, provided a proper installation is achieved. Attach the tether strap afterward, if included with the child seat.

## Using Tether Straps

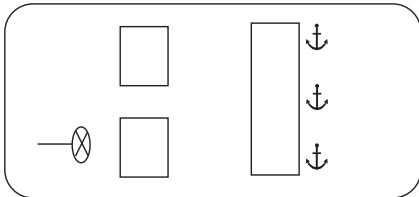


Many forward-facing child safety seats include a tether strap which extends from the back of the child safety seat and hooks to an anchoring point called the top tether anchor. Tether straps are available as an accessory for many older safety seats.

Contact the manufacturer of your child seat for information about ordering a tether strap, or to obtain a longer tether strap if the tether strap on your safety seat does not reach the appropriate top tether anchor in your vehicle.

Once the child safety seat has been installed using either the safety belt, the lower anchors of the LATCH system, or both, you can attach the top tether strap.

The tether strap anchors in your vehicle are in the following positions (shown from top view):

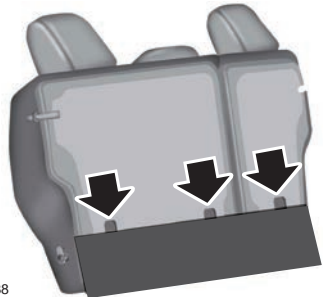


E142537

Perform the following steps to install a child safety seat with tether anchors:

**Note:** *If you install a child seat with rigid LATCH attachments, do not tighten the tether strap enough to lift the child seat off your vehicle seat cushion when the child is seated in it. Keep the tether strap just snug without lifting the front of the child seat. Keeping the child seat just touching your vehicle seat gives the best protection in a severe crash.*

1. Route the child safety seat tether strap over the back of the seat. For outboard seating positions, route the tether strap under the head restraint and between the head restraint posts. For the center seating positions, route the tether strap over the top of the head restraint. If needed, the head restraints can also be removed.



E142538

2. Locate the correct anchor on the back panel of the rear seat for the selected seating position. The anchors are labeled with the tether strap symbol and are partially covered by the gap panel. Pull the panel back to fully expose the anchors.



# Child Safety



E142539

3. Clip the tether strap to the anchor as shown.
4. Tighten the child safety seat tether strap according to the manufacturer's instructions. If your child restraint system is equipped with a tether strap, and the child restraint manufacturer recommends its use, We also recommend its use.

## BOOSTER SEATS

### WARNING

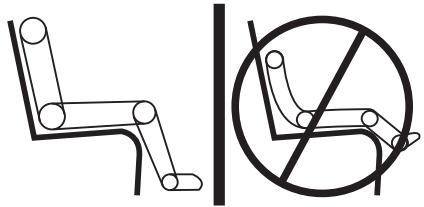


Never place, or allow a child to place, the shoulder belt under a child's arm or behind the back because it reduces the protection for the upper part of the body and may increase the risk of injury or death in a crash.

Use a belt-positioning booster seat for children who have outgrown or no longer properly fit in a child safety seat (generally children who are less than 4 feet 9 inches (1.45 meters) tall, are greater than age four (4) and less than age twelve (12), and between 40 pounds (18 kilograms) and 80 pounds (36 kilograms) and upward to 100 pounds (45 kilograms) if

recommended by your child restraint manufacturer). Many state and provincial laws require that children use approved booster seats until they reach age eight, a height of 4 feet 9 inches (1.45 meters) tall, or 80 pounds (36 kilograms).

Booster seats should be used until you can answer YES to ALL of these questions when seated without a booster seat:



E142595

- Can the child sit all the way back against their vehicle seat back with knees bent comfortably at the edge of the seat cushion?
- Can the child sit without slouching?
- Does the lap belt rest low across the hips?
- Is the shoulder belt centered on the shoulder and chest?
- Can the child stay seated like this for the whole trip?

Always use booster seats in conjunction with your vehicle lap and shoulder belt.

# Child Safety

## Types of Booster Seats



E68924

- Backless booster seats

If your backless booster seat has a removable shield, remove the shield. If a vehicle seating position has a low seat back or no head restraint, a backless booster seat may place your child's head (as measured at the tops of the ears) above the top of the seat. In this case, move the backless booster to another seating position with a higher seat back or head restraint and lap and shoulder belts, or consider using a high back booster seat.



E70710

- High back booster seats

If, with a backless booster seat, you cannot find a seating position that adequately supports your child's head, a high back booster seat would be a better choice.

Children and booster seats vary in size and shape. Choose a booster that keeps the lap belt low and snug across the hips, never up across the stomach, and lets you adjust the shoulder belt to cross the chest and rest snugly near the center of the shoulder. The following drawings compare the ideal fit (center) to a shoulder belt uncomfortably close to the neck and a shoulder belt that could slip off the shoulder. The drawings also show how the lap belt should be low and snug across the child's hips.



E142596

# Child Safety





E142597

If the booster seat slides on the vehicle seat upon which it is being used, placing a rubberized mesh sold as shelf or carpet liner under the booster seat may improve this condition. Do not introduce any item thicker than this under the booster seat. Check with the booster seat manufacturer's instructions.

## CHILD RESTRAINT POSITIONING


### WARNINGS


 Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child seat. Never place a rear-facing child seat in front of an active airbag. If you must use a forward-facing child seat in the front seat, move the vehicle seat upon which the child seat is installed all the way back. When possible, all children age 12 and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position. If all children cannot be seated and restrained properly in a rear seating position, properly restrain the largest child in the front seat.


 Always carefully follow the instructions and warnings provided by the manufacturer of any child restraint to determine if the restraint device is appropriate for your child's size, height, weight, or age. Follow the child restraint manufacturer's instructions and warnings


### WARNINGS

provided for installation and use in conjunction with the instructions and warnings provided by your vehicle manufacturer. A safety seat that is improperly installed or utilized, is inappropriate for your child's height, age, or weight or does not properly fit the child may increase the risk of serious injury or death.

 Never let a passenger hold a child on his or her lap while your vehicle is moving. The passenger cannot protect the child from injury in a crash, which may result in serious injury or death.

 Never use pillows, books, or towels to boost a child. They can slide around and increase the likelihood of injury or death in a crash.

 Always restrain an unoccupied child seat or booster seat. These objects may become projectiles in a crash or sudden stop, which may increase the risk of serious injury.

 Never place, or allow a child to place, the shoulder belt under a child's arm or behind the back because it reduces the protection for the upper part of the body and may increase the risk of injury or death in a crash.

# Child Safety

## WARNINGS



To avoid risk of injury, do not leave

## WARNINGS

children or pets unattended in your vehicle.

### Recommendations for attaching child safety restraints for children

Restraint Type	Combined weight of child and child seat	Use any attachment method as indicated below by X				
		LATCH (lower anchors and top tether anchor)	LATCH (lower anchors only)	Safety belt and top tether anchor	Safety belt and LATCH (lower anchors and top tether anchor)	Safety belt only
Rear facing child seat	Up to 65 lb (29.5 kg)		X			X
Rear facing child seat	Over 65 lb (29.5 kg)					X
Forward facing child seat	Up to 65 lb (29.5 kg)	X		X	X	
Forward facing child seat	Over 65 lb (29.5 kg)			X	X	

**Note:** *The child seat must rest tightly against the vehicle seat upon which it is installed. It may be necessary to lift or remove the head restraint. See **Seats** (page 107).*

## CHILD SAFETY LOCKS

When these locks are set, the rear doors cannot be opened from the inside.

# Child Safety

---



E112197

The childproof locks are located on the rear edge of each rear door and must be set separately for each door.

## **Left-Hand Side**

Turn counterclockwise to lock and clockwise to unlock.

## **Right-Hand Side**

Turn clockwise to lock and counterclockwise to unlock.

# Seatbelts

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

### WARNINGS



Always drive and ride with your seatback upright and the lap belt snug and low across the hips.



To reduce the risk of injury, make sure children sit where they can be properly restrained.



Never let a passenger hold a child on his or her lap while your vehicle is moving. The passenger cannot protect the child from injury in a crash.



All occupants of your vehicle, including the driver, should always properly wear their safety belts, even when an airbag supplemental restraint system is provided.



It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and safety belts. Be sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and using a safety belt properly.



In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a safety belt.



Each seating position in your vehicle has a specific safety belt assembly which is made up of one buckle and one tongue that are designed to be used as a pair. 1) Use the shoulder belt on the outside shoulder only. Never wear the shoulder belt under the arm. 2) Never swing the safety belt around your neck over the inside shoulder. 3) Never use a single belt for more than one person.



When possible, all children 12 years old and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position.

### WARNINGS



Safety belts and seats can become hot in a vehicle that has been closed up in sunny weather; they could burn a small child. Check seat covers and buckles before you place a child anywhere near them.



Front and rear seat occupants, including pregnant women, should wear safety belts for optimum protection in an accident.

All seating positions in this vehicle have lap and shoulder safety belts. All occupants of the vehicle should always properly wear their safety belts, even when an airbag supplemental restraint system is provided.

The safety belt system consists of:

- lap and shoulder safety belts
- shoulder safety belt with automatic locking mode, (except driver safety belt)
- height adjuster at the front outboard seating positions
- retractor and anchor pretensioner at the front outboard seating positions
- belt tension sensor at the front outboard passenger seating position



- safety belt warning light and chime



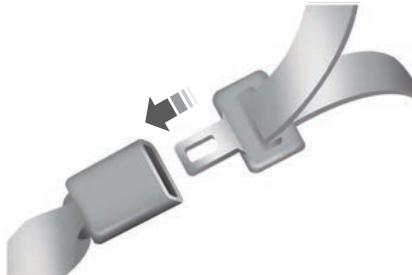
- crash sensors and monitoring system with readiness indicator.

# Seatbelts

The safety belt pretensioners are designed to activate in frontal, near-frontal and side crashes, and in rollovers. The safety belt pretensioners on the retractor and anchor at the front seating positions are designed to tighten the safety belts firmly against the occupant's body when activated. This helps increase the effectiveness of the safety belts. In frontal crashes, the safety belt pretensioners can be activated alone or, if the crash is of sufficient severity, together with the front airbags.

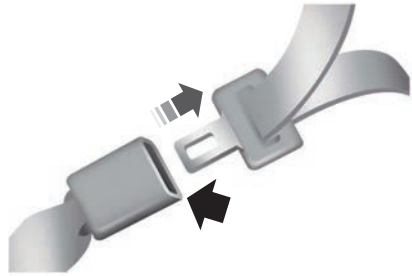
## FASTENING THE SEATBELTS

The front outboard and rear safety restraints in the vehicle are combination lap and shoulder belts.



E142587

1. Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle (the buckle closest to the direction the tongue is coming from) until you hear a snap and feel it latch. Make sure the tongue is securely fastened in the buckle.



E142588

2. To unfasten, press the release button and remove the tongue from the buckle.




E142589

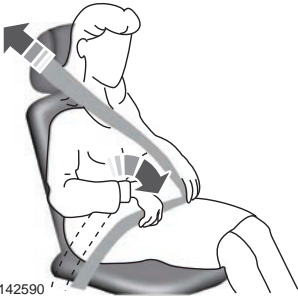
When in use, the rear safety belts should be placed in the belt guides on the outboard seatbacks.

## Using Safety Belts During Pregnancy

### WARNING

 Always ride and drive with your seatback upright and the safety belt properly fastened. The lap portion of the safety belt should fit snug and be positioned low across the hips. The shoulder portion of the safety belt should be positioned across the chest. Pregnant women should also follow this practice. See the following figure.

# Seatbelts



Pregnant women should always wear their safety belt. The lap belt portion of a combination lap and shoulder belt should be positioned low across the hips below the belly and worn as tight as comfort will allow. The shoulder belt should be positioned to cross the middle of the shoulder and the center of the chest.

## Safety Belt Locking Modes

### WARNINGS



After any vehicle crash, the safety belt system at all passenger seating positions must be checked by an authorized dealer to verify that the automatic locking retractor feature for child seats is still functioning properly. In addition, all safety belts should be checked for proper function.



**BELT AND RETRACTOR ASSEMBLY MUST BE REPLACED** if the safety belt assembly automatic locking retractor feature or any other safety belt function is not operating properly when checked by an authorized dealer. Failure to replace the belt and retractor assembly could increase the risk of injury in crashes.

All safety restraints in the vehicle are combination lap and shoulder belts. The driver safety belt has the first type of locking mode, and the front outboard passenger and rear seat safety belts have both types of locking modes described as follows:

### Vehicle Sensitive Mode

This is the normal retractor mode, which allows free shoulder belt length adjustment to your movements and locking in response to vehicle movement. For example, if the driver brakes suddenly or turns a corner sharply, or the vehicle receives an impact of about 5 mph (8 km/h) or more, the combination safety belts will lock to help reduce forward movement of the driver and passengers.

In addition, the retractor is designed to lock if the webbing is pulled out too quickly. If this occurs, let the belt retract slightly and pull webbing out again in a slow and controlled manner.

### Automatic Locking Mode

In this mode, the shoulder belt is automatically pre-locked. The belt will still retract to remove any slack in the shoulder belt. The automatic locking mode is not available on the driver safety belt.

### When to Use the Automatic Locking Mode

This mode should be used any time a child safety seat, except a booster, is installed in passenger front or rear seating positions. Children 12 years old and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position whenever possible. See **Child Safety** (page 15).



# Seatbelts

## How to Use the Automatic Locking Mode



E142591

1. Buckle the combination lap and shoulder belt.
2. Grasp the shoulder portion and pull downward until the entire belt is pulled out.

Allow the belt to retract. As the belt retracts, you will hear a clicking sound. This indicates the safety belt is now in the automatic locking mode.

## How to Disengage the Automatic Locking Mode

Unbuckle the combination lap and shoulder belt and allow it to retract completely to disengage the automatic locking mode and turn on the vehicle sensitive (emergency) locking mode.

## How to Extract Safety Belts in the Rear Outboard Positions

Safety belts in the rear outboard positions can lock if the seatback is returned firmly to its upright position. You can unlock the safety belts using the following procedures.

For vehicles where the rear seats recline:

1. Recline the seat to its full rear recline position.
2. The safety belt should then unlock.

3. Return the seatback to its desired upright position.

For vehicles with rear seats that do not recline or are locked with the seat in its full rear recline position:

1. Grasp the safety belt webbing at the top of the seatback.
2. Pull the safety belt webbing forward, firmly.
3. After pulling the safety belt forward, allow the safety belt to feed back into the safety belt retractor as much as possible. If necessary, press the seatback down to allow the safety belt webbing to retract further.
4. The safety belt should then unlock.
5. If the safety belt does not unlock, repeat steps 1-3.

## Safety Belt Extension Assembly

### WARNING



Do not use extensions to change the fit of the shoulder belt across the torso.

If the safety belt is too short when fully extended, you can obtain a safety belt extension assembly from an authorized dealer.

Use only extensions manufactured by the same supplier as the safety belt.

Manufacturer identification is on a label located either at the end of the webbing or on the retractor behind the trim. Also, use the safety belt extension only if the safety belt is too short for you when fully extended.

# Seatbelts

## SEATBELT HEIGHT ADJUSTMENT

### WARNING



Position the seatbelt height adjusters so that the belt rests across the middle of your shoulder. Failure to adjust the seatbelt correctly could reduce the effectiveness of the seatbelt and increase the risk of injury in a crash.



E87511

To adjust the shoulder belt height, squeeze the button and slide the height adjuster up or down. Release the button and pull down on the height adjuster to make sure it is locked in place.

## SEATBELT WARNING LAMP AND INDICATOR CHIME



This lamp illuminates and an audible warning will sound if the driver's safety belt has not been fastened when the vehicle's ignition is turned on.

## Conditions of operation

If...	Then...
The driver's safety belt is not buckled before the ignition switch is turned to the on position...	The safety belt warning light illuminates 1-2 minutes and the warning chime sounds 4-8 seconds.
The driver's safety belt is buckled while the indicator light is illuminated and the warning chime is sounding...	The safety belt warning light and warning chime turn off.
The driver's safety belt is buckled before the ignition switch is turned to the on position...	The safety belt warning light and indicator chime remain off.

# Seatbelts

## SEATBELT REMINDER

### Belt-Minder™

This feature supplements the safety belt warning function by providing additional reminders that intermittently sound a tone and illuminate the safety belt warning light when you are in the driver seat or you have a front seat passenger and a safety belt is unbuckled.

The system uses information from the front passenger sensing system to determine if a front seat passenger is present and therefore potentially in need of a warning. To avoid activating the Belt-Minder feature for objects you place in the front passenger seat, only the front seat passengers receive warnings as determined by the front passenger sensing system.

If the Belt-Minder warnings expire (warnings for about five minutes) for one passenger (driver or front passenger), the other passenger can still cause the Belt-Minder feature to turn on.

<b>If...</b>	<b>Then...</b>
You and the front seat passenger buckle your safety belts before you switch the ignition on or less than 1-2 minutes elapse after you switch the ignition on...	The Belt-Minder feature will not activate.
You or the front seat passenger do not buckle your safety belts before your vehicle reaches at least 6 mph (9.7 km/h) and 1-2 minutes elapse after you switch the ignition on...	The Belt-Minder feature activates, the safety belt warning light illuminates and a warning tone sounds for 6 seconds every 25 seconds, repeating for about 5 minutes or until you and the front seat passenger buckle your safety belts.
The safety belt for the driver or front passenger is unbuckled for about 1 minute while the vehicle is traveling at least 6 mph (9.7 km/h) and more than 1-2 minutes elapse after you switch the ignition on...	The Belt-Minder feature activates, the safety belt warning light illuminates and a warning tone sounds for 6 seconds every 25 seconds, repeating for about 5 minutes or until you and the front seat passenger buckle your safety belts.

# Seatbelts

## Deactivating and Activating the Belt-Minder Feature

### WARNING



While the system allows you to deactivate it, this system is designed to improve your chances of being safely belted and surviving an accident. We recommend you leave the system activated for yourself and others who may use your vehicle.

**Note:** *The driver and front passenger warnings switch on and off independently. When you perform this procedure for one seating position, do not buckle the other position as this will terminate the process.*

Read Steps 1 - 4 thoroughly before proceeding with the programming procedure.

Before following the procedure, make sure that:

- The parking brake is set.
  - The transmission is in park (P).
  - The ignition is off.
  - The driver and front passenger safety belts are unbuckled.
1. Switch the ignition on. Do not start the engine.
  2. Wait until the safety belt warning light turns off (about one minute). After Step 2, wait an additional five seconds before proceeding with Step 3. Once you start Step 3, you must complete the procedure within 60 seconds.
  3. For the seating position you are switching off, buckle then unbuckle the safety belt three times at a moderate speed, ending in the unbuckled state. After Step 3, the safety belt warning light turns on.

4. While the safety belt warning light is on, buckle and then unbuckle the safety belt. After Step 4, the safety belt warning light flashes for confirmation.
  - This will switch the feature off for that seating position if it is currently on.
  - This will switch the feature on for that seating position if it is currently off.

## CHILD RESTRAINT AND SEATBELT MAINTENANCE

Inspect the vehicle safety belts and child safety seat systems periodically to make sure they work properly and are not damaged. Inspect the vehicle and child seat safety belts to make sure there are no nicks, tears or cuts. Replace if necessary. All vehicle safety belt assemblies, including retractors, buckles, front safety belt buckle assemblies, buckle support assemblies (slide bar-if equipped), shoulder belt height adjusters (if equipped), shoulder belt guide on seat back (if equipped), child safety seat LATCH and tether anchors, and attaching hardware, should be inspected after a crash. Read the child restraint manufacturer's instructions for additional inspection and maintenance information specific to the child restraint.

Ford Motor Company recommends that all safety belt assemblies in use in vehicles involved in a crash be replaced. However, if the crash was minor and an authorized dealer finds that the belts do not show damage and continue to operate properly, they do not need to be replaced. Safety belt assemblies not in use during a crash should also be inspected and replaced if either damage or improper operation is noted.

Properly care for safety belts. See **Vehicle Care** (page 235).

# Personal Safety System™

---

The Personal Safety System provides an improved overall level of frontal crash protection to front seat occupants and is designed to help further reduce the risk of airbag-related injuries. The system is able to analyze different occupant conditions and crash severity before activating the appropriate safety devices to help better protect a range of occupants in a variety of frontal crash situations.

The Vehicle Personal Safety System consists of:

- Driver and passenger dual-stage airbag supplemental restraints.
- Front seat outboard safety belts with pretensioners, energy management retractors and safety belt usage sensors.
- Driver seat position sensor.
- Front passenger sensing system.
- Passenger airbag off and on indicator lamp.
- Front crash severity sensors.
- Restraints control module with impact and safing sensors.
- Restraint system warning light and backup tone.
- The electrical wiring for the airbags, crash sensors, safety belt pretensioners, front safety belt usage sensors, driver seat position sensor, front passenger sensing system and indicator lights.


## How Does the Personal Safety System Work?


The Personal Safety System can adapt the deployment strategy of the safety devices according to crash severity and occupant conditions. A collection of crash and occupant sensors provides information to the restraints control module. During a crash, the restraints control module may deploy the safety belt pretensioners, one or both stages of the dual-stage airbags based on crash severity and occupant conditions.


# Supplementary Restraints System


## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION


### WARNINGS


 Airbags do not inflate slowly or gently, and the risk of injury from a deploying airbag is the greatest close to the trim covering the airbag module.


 All occupants of your vehicle, including the driver, should always properly wear their safety belts, even when an airbag supplemental restraint system is provided. Failure to properly wear your safety belt could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.


 Always transport children 12 years old and under in the back seat and always properly use appropriate child restraints. Failure to follow this could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.

 Never place your arm over the airbag module as a deploying airbag can result in serious arm fractures or other injuries.

 Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child seat. Never place a rear-facing child seat in front of an active airbag. If you must use a forward-facing child seat in the front seat, move the seat upon which the child seat is installed all the way back.

 Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the airbag supplemental restraint systems or its fuses as you could be seriously injured or killed. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

 Several airbag system components get hot after inflation. Do not touch them after inflation as this may result in serious injury.

 If the airbag has deployed, the airbag will not function again and must be replaced immediately. If the airbag is not replaced, the unrepaired area will increase the risk of injury in a crash.

The airbags are a supplemental restraint system and are designed to work with the safety belts to help protect the driver and right front passenger from certain upper body injuries. Airbags do not inflate slowly; there is a risk of injury from a deploying airbag.

**Note:** *You will hear a loud bang and see a cloud of harmless powdery residue if an airbag deploys. This is normal.*

The airbags inflate and deflate rapidly upon activation. After airbag deployment, it is normal to notice a smoke-like, powdery residue or smell the burnt propellant. This may consist of cornstarch, talcum powder (to lubricate the bag) or sodium compounds (for example, baking soda) that result from the combustion process that inflates the airbag. Small amounts of sodium hydroxide may be present which may irritate the skin and eyes, but none of the residue is toxic.

While the system is designed to help reduce serious injuries, contact with a deploying airbag may also cause abrasions or swelling. Temporary hearing loss is also a possibility as a result of the noise associated with a deploying airbag. Because airbags must inflate rapidly and with considerable force, there is the risk of death or serious injuries such as fractures, facial and eye injuries or internal injuries, particularly to occupants who are not properly restrained or are otherwise out of position at the time of airbag deployment. Thus, it is extremely important that occupants be properly restrained as far away from the airbag module as possible while maintaining vehicle control.

Routine maintenance of the airbags is not required.

# Supplementary Restraints System

## DRIVER AND PASSENGER AIRBAGS

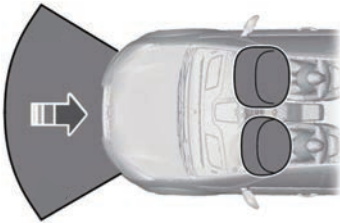
### WARNINGS



Never place your arm or any objects over an airbag module. Placing your arm over a deploying airbag can result in serious arm fractures or other injuries. Objects placed on or over the airbag inflation area may cause those objects to be propelled by the airbag into your face and torso causing serious injury.



Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child seat. Never place a rear-facing child seat in front of an active airbag. If you must use a forward-facing child seat in the front seat, move the seat upon which the child seat is installed all the way back.



E151127

The driver and front passenger airbags will deploy during significant frontal and near frontal crashes.

The driver and passenger front airbag system consists of:

- Driver and passenger airbag modules.
- Front passenger sensing system.



• Crash sensors and monitoring system with readiness indicator. See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator** (page 42).

## Proper Driver and Front Passenger Seating Adjustment

### WARNING



National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) recommends a minimum distance of at least 10 inches (25 centimeters) between an occupant's chest and the driver airbag module.

To properly position yourself away from the airbag:

- Move your seat to the rear as far as you can while still reaching the pedals comfortably.
- Recline the seat slightly (one or two degrees) from the upright position.

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and put on safety belts, it is very important that they continue to sit properly. A properly seated occupant sits upright, leaning against the seat back, and centered on the seat cushion, with their feet comfortably extended on the floor. Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury in a crash event. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash is greatly increased.

## Children and Airbags

### WARNING



Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child seat. Never place a rear-facing child seat in front of an active airbag. If you must use a forward-facing child seat in the front seat, move the seat upon which the child seat is installed all the way back.

# Supplementary Restraints System



E142846

Children must always be properly restrained. Accident statistics suggest that children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in the front seating position. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of injury in a crash.

## FRONT PASSENGER SENSING SYSTEM

### WARNINGS



Even with Advanced Restraints Systems, children 12 and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position. Failure to follow this could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.



Sitting improperly out of position or with the seatback reclined too far can take off weight from the seat cushion and affect the decision of the front passenger sensing system, resulting in serious injury or death in a crash.



Always sit upright against your seat back, with your feet on the floor.



Any alteration or modification to the front passenger seat may affect the performance of the front passenger sensing system which could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.



E145987

The indicator lamp is located in the center stack of the instrument panel.

The front passenger sensing system is designed to disable (will not inflate) the front passenger frontal airbag under certain conditions:

- The front passenger seat is unoccupied.
- The system determines an infant is present in a child restraint.
- A passenger takes their weight off the seat for a period of time.
- If there is a problem with the airbag system or the passenger sensing system.

Even with this technology, parents are **strongly** encouraged to always properly restrain children in the rear seat.



# Supplementary Restraints System

---

- When the front passenger sensing system disables (will not inflate) the front passenger frontal airbag, the passenger airbag status indicator will illuminate and stay lit to remind you that the front passenger frontal airbag is disabled.
- If the passenger airbag status indicator lamp indicates the passenger airbag is enabled, after the child restraint has been installed, turn the vehicle off, remove the child restraint from the vehicle and reinstall the restraint following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.
- If the passenger airbag status indicator lamp continues to indicate the passenger airbag is enabled, the child should be properly restrained in a rear seating position.

The front passenger sensing system works with sensors that are part of the front passenger seat and safety belt. The sensors are designed to detect the presence of a properly-seated occupant and determine if the front passenger frontal airbag should be enabled.

- When the front passenger sensing system enables the front passenger frontal airbag (may inflate), the passenger airbag status indicator will not illuminate.

If a person of adult size is sitting in the front passenger seat, but the passenger airbag is disabled, it is possible that the person is not sitting properly in the seat. If this happens:

- Turn the vehicle off and ask the person to place the seatback in the full upright position.
- Have the person sit upright in the seat, centered on the seat cushion, with the person's legs comfortably extended.
- Restart the vehicle and have the person remain in this position for about two minutes. This will allow the system to detect that person and enable the passenger's frontal airbag.
- If the passenger airbag status indicator lamp remains lit even after this, the person should be advised to ride in the rear seat.

**Note:** *When the passenger airbag status indicator lamp is illuminated, the passenger side airbag (seat mounted) may be disabled to avoid the risk of airbag deployment injuries.*

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and put on safety belts, it is very important that they continue to sit properly. A properly seated occupant sits upright, leaning against the seatback, and centered on the seat cushion, with their feet comfortably extended on the floor. Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury in a crash event. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash is greatly increased.

If you think that the status of the passenger airbag off indicator lamp is incorrect, check for the following:

- Objects lodged underneath the seat.
- Objects between the seat cushion and the center console.
- Objects hanging off the seatback.
- Objects stowed in the seatback map pocket.
- Objects placed on the occupant's lap.
- Cargo interference with the seat.
- Other passengers pushing or pulling on the seat.
- Rear passenger feet and knees resting or pushing on the seat.

# Supplementary Restraints System

The conditions listed above may cause the weight of a properly seated occupant to be incorrectly interpreted by the passenger sensing system. The person in the front passenger seat may appear heavier or lighter due to the conditions described in the list above.



Make sure the front passenger sensing system is operating properly. See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator** (page 42).

## If the airbag readiness lamp is lit, do the following:

Check for objects that are lodged underneath the front passenger seat, or cargo interfering with the seat.

If there are lodged objects, or cargo is interfering with the seat, take the following steps to remove the obstruction:

- Pull the vehicle over.
- Turn the vehicle off.
- Driver or adult passengers should check for any objects lodged underneath the front passenger seat or cargo interfering with the seat.
- Remove the obstruction(s) (if found).
- Restart the vehicle.
- Wait at least two minutes and verify that the airbag readiness lamp is no longer illuminated.
- If the airbag readiness lamp remains illuminated, this may or may not be a problem due to the front passenger sensing system.

Do not attempt to repair or service the system; take your vehicle immediately to an authorized dealer.

If it is necessary to modify an advanced front airbag system to accommodate a person with disabilities, contact your authorized dealer.

## SIDE AIRBAGS

### WARNINGS



Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the airbag cover, on the side of the seatbacks (of the front seats), or in front seat areas that may come into contact with a deploying airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.



Do not use accessory seat covers. The use of accessory seat covers may prevent the deployment of the side airbags and increase the risk of injury in an accident.



Do not lean your head on the door. The side airbag could injure you as it deploys from the side of the seatback.



Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the airbag, its fuses or the seat cover on a seat containing an airbag as you could be seriously injured or killed. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.



If the side airbag has deployed, the airbag will not function again. The side airbag system (including the seat) must be inspected and serviced by an authorized dealer. If the airbag is not replaced, the unrepaired area will increase the risk of injury in a crash.

The side airbags are located on the outboard side of the seatbacks of the front seats. In certain sideways crashes, the airbag on the side affected by the crash will be inflated. The airbag was designed to inflate between the door panel and occupant to further enhance the protection provided occupants in side impact crashes.

# Supplementary Restraints System



E152533

The system consists of the following:

- A label or embossed side panel indicating that side airbags are fitted to your vehicle.
- Side airbags located inside the driver and front passenger seatbacks.
- Front passenger sensing system.



- Crash sensors and monitoring system with readiness indicator. See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator** (page 42).

**Note:** *The passenger sensing system will deactivate the passenger seat-mounted side airbag if it detects an empty passenger seat.*

The design and development of the side airbag system included recommended testing procedures that were developed by a group of automotive safety experts known as the Side Airbag Technical Working Group. These recommended testing procedures help reduce the risk of injuries related to the deployment of side airbags.

## DRIVER KNEE AIRBAG

A driver's knee airbag is located under the instrument panel. During a crash, the restraints control module may activate the driver's knee airbag based on crash severity and occupant conditions. Under certain crash and occupant conditions, the driver's knee airbag may deploy but the driver's front airbag may not activate. As with front and side airbags, it is important to be properly seated and restrained to reduce the risk of death or serious injury.



Make sure the knee airbag is operating properly. See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator** (page 42).

## SAFETY CANOPY™

### WARNINGS



Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the headliner at the siderail that may come into contact with a deploying curtain airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.




Do not lean your head on the door. The curtain airbag could injure you as it deploys from the headliner.





Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the curtain airbags, its fuses, the A, B, or C pillar trim, or the headliner on a vehicle containing curtain airbags as you could be seriously injured or killed. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

# Supplementary Restraints System

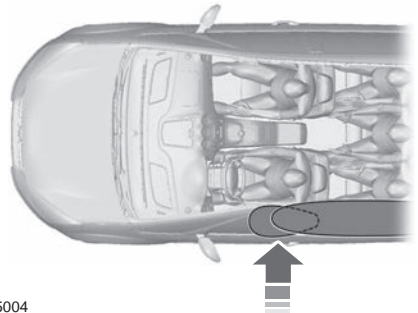
## WARNINGS

 All occupants of your vehicle including the driver should always wear their safety belts even when an airbag supplemental restraint system and curtain airbag is provided. Failure to properly wear your safety belt could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.

 To reduce risk of injury, do not obstruct or place objects in the deployment path of the curtain airbag.

 If the curtain airbags have deployed, the curtain airbags will not function again. The curtain airbags (including the A, B and C pillar trim and headliner) must be inspected and serviced by an authorized dealer. If the curtain airbag is not replaced, the unrepaired area will increase the risk of injury in a crash.

The Safety Canopy will deploy during significant side crashes or when a certain likelihood of a rollover event is detected by the rollover sensor. The Safety Canopy is mounted to the roof side-rail sheet metal, behind the headliner, above each row of seats. In certain sideways crashes or rollover events, the Safety Canopy will be activated, regardless of which seats are occupied. The Safety Canopy is designed to inflate between the side window area and occupants to further enhance protection provided in side impact crashes and rollover events.



E75004

The system consists of the following:

- Safety canopy curtain airbags located above the trim panels over the front and rear side windows identified by a label or wording on the headliner or roof-pillar trim.
- A flexible headliner which opens above the side doors to allow air curtain deployment



• Crash sensors and monitoring system with a readiness indicator. See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator** (page 42).

Children 12 years old and under should always be properly restrained in the rear seats. The Safety Canopy will not interfere with children restrained using a properly installed child or booster seat because it is designed to inflate downward from the headliner above the doors along the side window opening.

The design and development of the Safety Canopy included recommended testing procedures that were developed by a group of automotive safety experts known as the Side Airbag Technical Working Group. These recommended testing procedures help reduce the risk of injuries related to the deployment of side airbags (including the Safety Canopy).

# Supplementary Restraints System

## CRASH SENSORS AND AIRBAG INDICATOR

### WARNING



Modifying or adding equipment to the front end of the vehicle (including frame, bumper, front end body structure and tow hooks) may affect the performance of the airbag system, increasing the risk of injury. Do not modify the front end of the vehicle.

Your vehicle has a collection of crash and occupant sensors which provide information to the restraints control module. The restraints control module deploys (activates) the front safety belt pretensioners, driver airbag, passenger airbag, knee airbag(s), seat mounted side airbags and Safety Canopy airbags. Based on the type of crash (frontal impact or side impact), the restraints control module will deploy the appropriate safety devices.

The restraints control module also monitors the readiness of the above safety devices plus the crash and occupant sensors. The readiness of the safety system is indicated by a warning indicator light in the instrument cluster or by a backup tone if the warning light is not working. Routine maintenance of the airbag is not required.

A difficulty with the system is indicated by one or more of the following:



The readiness light will not illuminate immediately after the ignition is turned on.

- The readiness light will either flash or stay lit.
- A series of five beeps will be heard. The tone pattern will repeat periodically until the problem, the light or both are repaired.

If any of these things happen, even intermittently, have the supplemental restraint system serviced at an authorized dealer immediately. Unless serviced, the system may not function properly in the event of a crash.

The safety belt pretensioners and the front airbag supplemental restraint system are designed to activate when the vehicle sustains frontal deceleration sufficient to cause the restraints control module to deploy a safety device.

The fact that the safety belt pretensioners or front airbags did not activate for both front seat occupants in a crash does not mean that something is wrong with the system. Rather, it means the restraints control module determined the accident conditions (crash severity, belt usage) were not appropriate to activate these safety devices.

- The design of the front airbags is to activate only in frontal and near-frontal crashes (not rollovers, side impacts or rear impacts unless the crash causes sufficient frontal deceleration).
- The safety belt pretensioners are designed to activate in frontal, near-frontal and side crashes.
- The knee airbag(s) may deploy based on crash severity and occupant conditions.
- The design of the side airbags is to inflate in certain side crashes. The design of the Safety Canopy is to inflate in certain side impact crashes and when a certain likelihood of rollover is detected by the rollover sensor. Side airbags and Safety Canopy airbags may activate in other types of crashes if the vehicle experiences sufficient sideways motion or deformation.

# Supplementary Restraints System

---

## **AIRBAG DISPOSAL**

Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible. Airbags must be disposed of by qualified personnel.

# Keys and Remote Controls

---

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

The remote control allows you to:

- Remotely lock or unlock the vehicle doors.
- Unlock the doors without actively using a key or remote control (intelligent access only).
- Remotely open the power liftgate (if equipped).
- Remotely start or stop the engine and user pre-set features (if equipped).
- Arm and disarm the anti-theft system.
- Activate the panic alarm.

## GENERAL INFORMATION ON RADIO FREQUENCIES

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Industry Canada license-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

**Note:** *Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term IC before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.*

The typical operating range for your transmitter is approximately 33 ft (10 m). Vehicles with the remote start feature will have a greater range.

One of the following could cause a decrease in operating range:

- Weather conditions.
- Nearby radio towers.

- Structures around the vehicle.
- Other vehicles parked next to your vehicle.

The radio frequency used by your remote control can also be used by other radio transmitters, for example amateur radios, medical equipment, wireless headphones, wireless remote controls, cell phones, battery chargers and alarm systems. If the frequencies are jammed, you will not be able to use your remote control. You can lock and unlock the doors with the key.

**Note:** *Make sure to lock your vehicle before leaving it unattended.*

**Note:** *If you are in range, the remote control will operate if you press any button unintentionally.*

## Intelligent Access (If Equipped)

The system uses a radio frequency signal to communicate with your vehicle and authorize your vehicle to unlock when one of the following conditions are met:

- You activate the front exterior door handle switch.
- You press the luggage compartment button.
- You press a button on the transmitter.

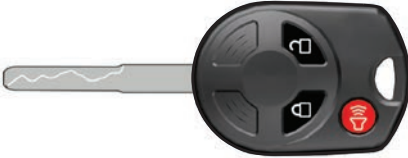
If excessive radio frequency interference is present in the area or if the transmitter battery is low, you may need to mechanically unlock your door. You can use the mechanical key blade in your intelligent access key to open the driver door in this situation. See **Remote Control** (page 45).

# Keys and Remote Controls

## REMOTE CONTROL

### Integrated Keyhead Transmitters

(If Equipped)



E222511

Use the key blade to start your vehicle and unlock or lock the driver door from outside your vehicle. The transmitter portion functions as the remote control.



E138615

**Note:** Your vehicle's keys came with a security label that provides important vehicle key cut information. Keep the label in a safe place for future reference.

### Intelligent Access Key (If Equipped)

**Note:** A three-button remote control operates similarly.



E138616

Your intelligent access keys operate the power locks and the remote start system. The key must be in your vehicle to activate the push-button start system.



E142431

The intelligent access key also contains a removable mechanical key blade that you can use to unlock the driver door. Slide the release on the back of the transmitter to release the key blade, then pull the blade out.



E138618

**Note:** Your vehicle's back-up keys came with a security tag that provides important vehicle key cut information. Keep the tag in a safe place for future reference.



# Keys and Remote Controls

## Replacing the Battery

**Note:** Refer to local regulations when disposing of transmitter batteries.

**Note:** Do not wipe off any grease on the battery terminals or on the back surface of the circuit board.

**Note:** Replacing the battery does not delete the transmitter from the vehicle. The transmitter should operate normally.

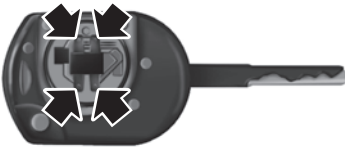
The remote control uses one coin-type three-volt lithium battery CR2032 or equivalent.

## Integrated Keyhead Transmitter



E138619

1. Twist a thin coin in the slot of the transmitter near the key ring to remove the battery cover.
2. Remove the old battery.



E138620

3. Insert the new battery. Refer to the instructions inside the transmitter for the correct orientation of the battery. Press the battery down to make sure it is fully in the housing.
4. Snap the battery cover back onto the transmitter.

## Intelligent Access Transmitter

1. Remove the backup key from the transmitter.



E142432

2. Twist a thin coin under the tab hidden behind the backup key head to remove the battery cover. Do not use the backup key to remove the cover or you could damage the intelligent access key.



E138622

3. Remove the old battery.

# Keys and Remote Controls

4. Insert a new battery with the + facing downward. Press the battery down to make sure it is fully in the housing.
5. Snap the battery cover back onto the transmitter and install the backup key.

## Car Finder



Press the button twice within three seconds. The horn sounds and the direction indicators flash. We recommend you use this method to locate your vehicle, rather than using the panic alarm.

**Note:** *If locking was not successful or if any door or the liftgate is open, or if the hood is open on vehicles with a perimeter alarm or remote start, the horn sounds twice and the lamps do not flash.*

## Sounding a Panic Alarm

**Note:** *The panic alarm only operates when the ignition is off.*



Press the button to activate the alarm. Press the button again or switch the ignition on to deactivate.

## Remote Start (If Equipped)

### WARNING



To avoid exhaust fumes, do not use remote start if your vehicle is parked indoors or areas that are not well ventilated.

**Note:** *Do not use remote start if your vehicle is low on fuel.*



The remote start button is on the transmitter.

This feature allows you to start your vehicle from outside the vehicle. The transmitter has an extended operating range.

Vehicles with automatic climate control can be configured to operate when the vehicle is remote started. See **Automatic Climate Control** (page 101).

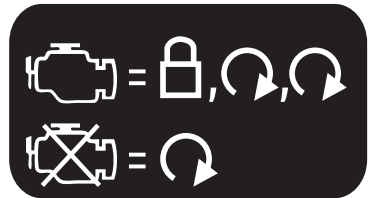
Many states and provinces have restrictions for the use of remote start. Check your local and state or provincial laws for specific requirements regarding remote start systems.

The remote start system does not work if:

- The ignition is on.
- The alarm system is triggered.
- You disable the feature.
- The hood is open.
- The transmission is not in park (P).
- The vehicle battery voltage is too low.
- The service engine soon indicator was on the last time your vehicle was driven.

## Remote Starting the Vehicle

**Note:** *You must press each button within three seconds of each other. If you do not follow this sequence your vehicle does not remote start, the exterior lamps do not flash twice and the horn does not sound.*



E138626

The label on your transmitter details the starting procedure.

To remote start your vehicle:

1. Press the lock button to lock all the doors.

# Keys and Remote Controls

---

2. Press the remote start button twice.  
The exterior lamps flash twice.

The horn sounds if the system fails to start, unless quiet start is on. Quiet start runs the blower fan at a slower speed to reduce noise. You can switch it on or off in the information display. See **General Information** (page 87).

**Note:** *If you remote start your vehicle with an intelligent access transmitter, you must press the **START/STOP** button on the instrument panel once while applying the brake pedal before driving your vehicle.*

Remote start does not turn on the power windows and does not automatically start the radio.

The parking lamps remain on and the vehicle runs for 5, 10 or 15 minutes, depending on the setting.

## **Extending the Vehicle Run Time**

Repeat Steps 1 and 2 with the vehicle still running to extend the run time for another remote start duration. If the duration is set to last 10 minutes, you can extend the duration for another 10 minutes. For example, if the vehicle had been running from the first remote start for five minutes, the vehicle continues to run now for a total of 20 minutes. You can only extend the remote start once. You may be able to extend late-build vehicles successively up to 30 minutes.

Wait at least five seconds before remote starting after a vehicle shutdown.

## **Turning the Vehicle Off After Remote Starting**



Press the button once. The parking lamps turn off.

You may have to be closer to the vehicle than when starting due to ground reflection and the added noise of the running vehicle.

You can disable or enable the remote start system through the information display. See **General Information** (page 87).

## **REPLACING A LOST KEY OR REMOTE CONTROL**

Replacement keys or remote controls can be purchased from an authorized dealer. Authorized dealers can program remote controls for your vehicle. See **Passive Anti-Theft System** (page 65).

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

MyKey allows you to program keys with restricted driving modes to promote good driving habits. All but one of the keys programmed to the vehicle can be activated with these restricted modes.

Any keys that have not been programmed are referred to as administrator keys or admin keys. These can be used to:

- Create a MyKey.
- Program configurable MyKey settings.
- Clear all MyKey features.

When you have created a MyKey, you can access the following information using the information display:

- How many admin keys and MyKeys are programmed to your vehicle.
- The total distance your vehicle has traveled using any MyKey.

**Note:** *All MyKeys are programmed to the same settings. You cannot program them individually.*

**Note:** *For vehicles with keyless start, when both a MyKey transmitter and an admin transmitter are present, the admin transmitter will be recognized by the vehicle to start the engine.*

## Non-configurable Settings

The following settings cannot be changed by an admin key user:

- Belt-minder. You cannot disable this feature. The audio system will mute when the safety belts are not fastened.
- Early low fuel warning. The low-fuel warning activates earlier, giving the MyKey user more time to refuel.
- Driver assist features, if equipped on your vehicle, are forced on: parking aid, blind spot information system (BLIS) with cross traffic alert, lane departure warning and forward collision warning system.

## Configurable Settings

With an admin key, you can configure certain MyKey settings when you first create a MyKey and before you recycle the key or restart the vehicle.

You can also change the settings afterward with an admin key:

- A vehicle speed limit can be set. Warnings will be shown in the display followed by an audible tone when your vehicle reaches the set speed. You cannot override the set speed by fully depressing the accelerator pedal or by setting the cruise control.

### WARNING



Do not set MyKey maximum speed limit to a limit that will prevent the driver from maintaining a safe speed considering posted speed limits and prevailing road conditions. The driver is always responsible to drive in accordance with local laws and prevailing conditions. Failure to do so could result in accident or injury.

- Vehicle speed minders. Once you select a speed, it will be shown in the display followed by an audible tone when the set vehicle speed is exceeded.
- Audio system maximum volume of 45%. A message will be shown in the display when you attempt to exceed the limited volume. Also, the speed sensitive compensated volume (automatic volume control) feature will be disabled.
- Always on setting. When this is selected you will not be able to disable the traction control system (if your vehicle is equipped with this feature).

## CREATING A MYKEY

Use the information display to create a MyKey:

1. Insert the key you want to program into the ignition. If your vehicle is equipped with a push-button start, hold the intelligent access key next to the steering column. Details on the correct fob placement and position is in another chapter. See **Starting and Stopping the Engine** (page 123).
2. Switch the ignition on.
3. Access the main menu on the information display controls, and select **Settings** and then **MyKey** by pressing **OK** or the **>** button.
4. Press **OK** or the **>** button to select **Create MyKey**.
5. When prompted, hold the **OK** button until you see a message informing you to label this key as a MyKey. The key will be restricted at your vehicle's next start.

MyKey is successfully created. Make sure you label it so you can distinguish it from the admin keys.

You can also program configurable settings for the key(s). Refer to **Programming/Changing Configurable Settings**.

## Programming/Changing Configurable Settings

Use the information display to access your configurable MyKey settings:

1. Switch the ignition on using an admin key or fob.
2. Access the main menu on the information display controls, and select **Settings**, then **MyKey** by pressing **OK** or the **>** button.
3. Use the arrow buttons to get to a configurable feature.
4. Press **OK** or **>** to make a selection.

**Note:** *You can clear or change your MyKey settings at any time during the same key cycle as you created the MyKey. Once you have switched the engine off, however, you will need an admin key to change or clear your MyKey settings.*

## CLEARING ALL MYKEYS

You can clear or change your MyKey settings using the information display control on the steering wheel. See **Information Displays** (page 87).

Switch the ignition on using an admin key or remote control.

# MyKey™

---

**To clear all MyKeys of all MyKey settings, press the left arrow button to access the main menu and scroll to:**

Message	Action and Description
Settings	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
MyKey	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Clear MyKey	Press and hold the <b>OK</b> button until the following message displays.
All MyKeys Cleared	

**Note:** *When you clear your MyKeys, you remove all restrictions and return all MyKeys to their original admin key status.*

## CHECKING MYKEY SYSTEM STATUS

You can find information on programmed MyKey(s) using the information display control on the steering wheel. See **Information Displays** (page 87).

**To find information on programmed MyKey(s), press the left arrow button to access the main menu and scroll to:**

Message	Description
Settings	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
MyKey	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
<b>Select one of the following:</b>	
MyKey Dist.	Tracks the distance when drivers use a MyKey. The only way to delete the accumulated distance is by using an admin key to clear your MyKeys. If the distance does not accumulate as expected, then the intended user is not using the MyKey, or an admin key user recently cleared and then recreated a MyKey.
{0} MyKeys	Indicates the number of MyKeys programmed to your vehicle. Use this feature to detect how many MyKeys you have for your vehicle and determine when a MyKey has been deleted.
{0} Admin Keys	Indicates how many admin keys are programmed to your vehicle. Use this feature to determine how many unrestricted keys you have for your vehicle, and detect if an additional MyKey has been programmed.

## USING MYKEY WITH REMOTE START SYSTEMS

MyKey is not compatible with non

Ford-approved, aftermarket remote start systems. If you choose to install a remote start system, see an authorized dealer for a Ford-approved remote start system.

## MYKEY TROUBLESHOOTING

Condition	Potential Causes
I cannot create a MyKey.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The key or transmitter used to start the vehicle does not have admin privileges.</li> <li>• The key or transmitter used to start the vehicle is the only admin key (there always has to be at least one admin key).</li> <li>• Vehicles with keyless start: The keyless start transmitter is not placed in the backup position. See <b>Starting a Gasoline Engine</b> (page 124).</li> <li>• SecuriLock passive anti-theft system is disabled or in unlimited mode.</li> </ul>
I cannot program the configurable settings.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The key or transmitter used to start your vehicle does not have admin privileges.</li> <li>• No MyKeys are created. See <b>Creating a MyKey</b> (page 50).</li> </ul>
I cannot clear the MyKeys.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The key or transmitter used to start your vehicle does not have admin privileges.</li> <li>• No MyKeys are created. See <b>Creating a MyKey</b> (page 50).</li> </ul>
I lost the only admin key.	Purchase a new key from an authorized dealer.



# MyKey™

Condition	Potential Causes
I lost a key.	Program a spare key. See <b>Passive Anti-Theft System</b> (page 65).
MyKey distances do not accumulate.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• The MyKey user is not using the MyKey.</li><li>• An admin key holder cleared the MyKeys and created new MyKeys.</li><li>• The key system has been reset.</li></ul>
No MyKey functions with the keyless entry transmitter.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• An admin transmitter is present at vehicle start.</li><li>• No MyKeys are created. See <b>Creating a MyKey</b> (page 50).</li></ul>

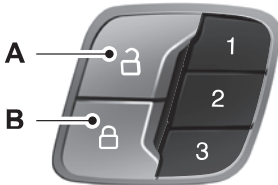
# Locks

## LOCKING AND UNLOCKING

You can use the power door lock control or the remote control to lock and unlock your vehicle.

### Power Door Locks

The power door lock control is on the driver and front passenger door panels.



E138628

- A Unlock
- B Lock

### Door Lock Indicator

An LED on the instrument panel will light when you lock the doors. It is not a functional control.

### Remote Control

#### Unlocking the Doors (Two-Stage Unlock)



Press the button to unlock the driver door.

Press the button again within three seconds to unlock all doors. The turn signals will flash.

Press and hold both the lock and unlock buttons on the remote control for four seconds to disable or enable two-stage unlocking. Disabling two-stage unlocking allows all vehicle doors to unlock with one press of the button. The turn signals will flash twice to indicate a change to the unlocking mode. The unlocking mode applies to the remote control, keyless entry keypad and intelligent access.

Intelligent access at the driver door will unlock all doors when you disable two-stage unlocking.

### Locking the Doors



Press the button to lock all the doors. The turn signals will flash.

Press the button again within three seconds to confirm that all the doors are closed. The doors will lock again, the horn will sound and the turn signals will flash if all the doors and the luggage compartment are closed.

**Note:** *If locking was not successful or any door or the liftgate is open, or if the hood is open on vehicles with a perimeter alarm or remote start, the horn will sound twice and the lamps will not flash.*

### Liftgate

#### WARNINGS



Make sure all persons are clear of the liftgate area before using the liftgate control.



Make sure to close and latch the liftgate to prevent drawing exhaust fumes into your vehicle. This will also prevent passengers and cargo from falling out. If you must drive with the liftgate open, keep the vents or windows open so outside air comes into your vehicle. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

# Locks

**Note:** Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.



Press twice within three seconds to:

- unlatch a manual liftgate
- open, close or stop the movement of a power liftgate. See **Power Liftgate** (page 60).

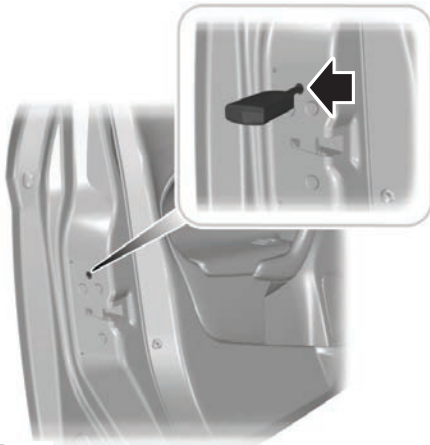
## Mechanical Key

Turn the top of the key toward the front of your vehicle once to lock all doors.

Turn the top of the key toward the rear of your vehicle once to unlock the driver door only.

## Locking the Doors Individually

If the power locks fail to operate, lock the doors individually using the key in the position shown.



E112203

## Left-Hand Side

Turn clockwise to lock.

## Right-Hand Side

Turn counterclockwise to lock.

## Opening a Rear Door from Inside

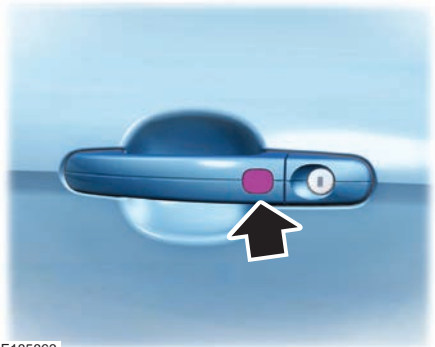
Pull the interior door release handle twice to unlock and open a rear door. The first pull unlocks the door and the second pull will unlatch the door.

## Activating Intelligent Access (if Equipped)

The intelligent access key must be within 3 feet (1 meter) of your vehicle.

## At the Front Doors

Pull a front exterior door handle to unlock and open the door. The unlock sensor is on the back of the handle. Make sure not to touch the lock sensor area on the front of the handle.



E185863

Touch the lock sensor area for a few seconds to lock your vehicle. To avoid inadvertently unlocking the door, make sure you only touch the lock sensor and no other area of the door handle.

# Locks

---

After locking the doors with the lock sensor, there is a brief delay before you can unlock your vehicle. This delay lets you pull the handle to make sure it locked.

**Note:** *Keep the door handle surface clean to avoid issues with operation.*

## At the Liftgate

Press the exterior liftgate release button on the top of the liftgate pull-cup handle.

## Smart Unlocks For Integrated Keyhead Transmitter

This feature helps to prevent you from locking yourself out of your vehicle if your key is still in the ignition.

When you open one of the front doors and lock your vehicle with the power door lock control, all the doors will lock then unlock if your key is still in the ignition.

You can still lock your vehicle with the key in the ignition by either:

- using the keyless entry keypad with the driver door closed
- pressing the lock button on the transmitter even if the doors are not closed.

If both front doors are closed, you can lock your vehicle by any method, regardless of whether the key is in the ignition or not.

## Smart Unlocks For Intelligent Access Keys (If Equipped)

This feature helps to prevent you from unintentionally locking your intelligent access key inside your vehicle's passenger compartment or rear cargo area.

When you lock your vehicle using the power door lock control (with the door open, vehicle in park and ignition off), your vehicle will search for an intelligent access key in the passenger compartment after you close the door. If your vehicle finds a key, all of the doors will immediately unlock.

In order to override the smart unlock feature and intentionally lock the intelligent access key inside your vehicle, you can lock your vehicle after all doors are closed by using the keyless entry keypad, pressing the lock button on another intelligent access key or touching the locking area on the handle with another intelligent access key in your hand.

When you open one of the front doors and lock your vehicle using the power door lock control, all doors will lock then unlock if the ignition is on.

## Autolock (If Equipped)

The autolock feature will lock all the doors when:

- all doors are closed,
- the ignition is on,
- you shift into any gear putting your vehicle in motion, and
- your vehicle attains a speed greater than 4 mph (7 km/h).

# Locks

## Autounlock (If Equipped)

The autounlock feature will unlock all the doors when:

- the ignition is on, all the doors are closed, and your vehicle has been in motion at a speed greater than 4 mph (7 km/h);
- your vehicle comes to a stop and you switch the ignition off or to accessory; and
- you open the driver door within 10 minutes of the switching the ignition off or to accessory.

**Note:** *The doors will not autounlock if you electronically lock your vehicle after you switch the ignition off and before you open the driver door.*

## Enabling or Disabling Autolock and Autounlock

**Note:** *Your authorized dealer can perform this procedure, or you can do the procedure yourself.*

To enable or disable these features, do the following:

**Note:** *You will have 30 seconds to complete the procedure.*

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Press the power door unlock button three times.
3. Switch the ignition off.
4. Press the power door unlock button three times.
5. Switch the ignition on. The horn will sound indicating your vehicle is in programming mode.

**Autolock:** Press the power door unlock button then the lock button. The horn will sound once if disabled or twice (one short and one long) if enabled.

**Autounlock:** Press the power door lock button then the unlock button. The horn will sound once if disabled or twice (one short and one long) if enabled.

After programming the feature, switch the ignition off. The horn will sound once indicating programming is complete.

**Note:** *You can enable or disable the autounlock feature independently of the autolock feature.*

## Illuminated Entry

The interior lamps and select exterior lamps will illuminate when you unlock the doors with the remote entry system.

The illuminated entry system will turn off the lights if:

- you start your vehicle,
- you press the remote control lock button, or
- after 25 seconds of illumination.

The lights will not turn off if:

- you turn them on with the lamp control, or
- any door is open.

## Illuminated Exit

The interior lamps and select exterior lamps will illuminate when all doors are closed and you switch the ignition off.

The lamps will turn off if all the doors remain closed and:

- 25 seconds elapse, or
- you lock your vehicle from the outside.

## Battery Saver

If you leave the courtesy lamps or dome lamps on and switch the ignition off, the battery saver shuts them off after some time.

# Locks

## Accessory Mode Battery Saver for Intelligent Access Keys (If Equipped)

If you leave the ignition on after leaving your vehicle, it will shut off 15 minutes after you close all of the doors.

## MANUAL LIFTGATE

### WARNINGS



It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seatbelts. Be sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and using a seatbelt properly. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.



Make sure to close and latch the liftgate to prevent drawing exhaust fumes into your vehicle. This will also prevent passengers and cargo from falling out. If you must drive with the liftgate open, keep the vents or windows open so outside air comes into your vehicle. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

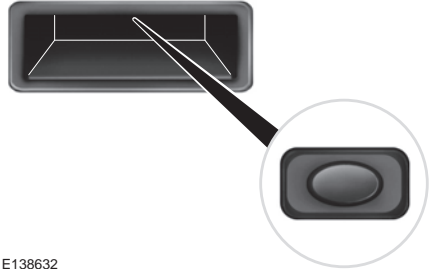
**Note:** Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.

**Note:** Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

**Note:** Do not leave the liftgate open while driving. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

## Opening the Liftgate

### Manually



E138632

Press the button located in the top of the liftgate pull cup handle to unlatch the liftgate, and then pull on the outside handle.

### With the Remote Control



Press the button twice within three seconds.

## Closing the Liftgate



E1155976

A handle is located inside the liftgate to help with closing.

# Locks

## POWER LIFTGATE (If Equipped)

### WARNINGS



It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seatbelts. Make sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and properly using a seatbelt. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.



Make sure to close and latch the liftgate to prevent drawing exhaust fumes into your vehicle. This will also prevent passengers and cargo from falling out. If you must drive with the liftgate open, keep the vents or windows open so outside air comes into your vehicle. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.



Keep keys out of reach of children. Do not allow children to operate or play near an open or moving power liftgate. You should supervise the operation of the power liftgate at all times.

**Note:** Make sure that you close the liftgate before operating or moving your vehicle, especially in an enclosure, like a garage or a parking structure. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

**Note:** Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

The liftgate only operates with the transmission in park (P).

Three warning tones sound once as the liftgate begins to power close. Five short chimes indicate a problem with the open or close request, caused by:

- The ignition is on and the transmission is not in park (P).
- The battery voltage is below the minimum operating voltage.
- The vehicle speed is at or above 1 mph (1 km/h).

If the liftgate starts to close after it has fully opened, this indicates there may be excessive weight on the liftgate or a possible gas strut failure. A repetitive chime sounds and the liftgate closes under control. Remove any excessive weight from the liftgate. If the liftgate continues to close after opening, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

## Opening and Closing the Liftgate

### WARNING



Make sure all persons are clear of the power liftgate area before using the power liftgate control.

**Note:** Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.

**Note:** Do not leave the liftgate open while driving. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

## From the Instrument Panel



Press the button on the instrument panel near the lighting control.

## With the Remote Control



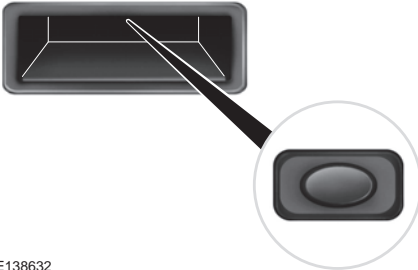
Press the button twice within three seconds.

# Locks

## With the Outside Control Button

### Opening the Liftgate

1. Unlock the liftgate with the remote control or power door unlock control. If an intelligent access key is within 3 ft (1 m) of the liftgate, the liftgate unlocks when you press the liftgate release button.



E138632

2. Press the button in the top of the liftgate pull-cup handle.

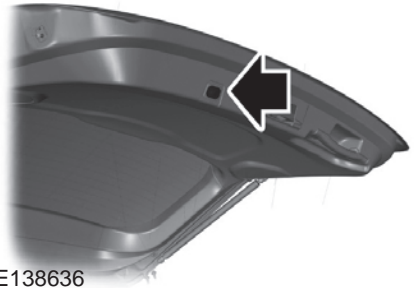
**Note:** Allow the system to open the liftgate. Manually pushing or pulling the liftgate may turn on obstacle detection and stop the power operation or reverse its direction. Manually interfering with the liftgate motion may also replicate a gas strut failure.

### Closing the Liftgate

#### WARNING



Keep clear of the liftgate when activating the rear switch.



E138636

Press and release the liftgate control button.

### Stopping the Liftgate Movement

You can stop the liftgate movement by doing any of the following:

- Pressing the liftgate control button.
- Pressing the liftgate button on the remote control twice.
- Pressing the liftgate button on the instrument panel.
- Moving your foot under and away from the center rear bumper in a single-kick motion.\*

\*This method only works for vehicles with the hands-free liftgate feature.

### Setting the Liftgate Open Height

1. Open the liftgate.
2. Stop the liftgate by pressing the control button on the liftgate when it reaches the desired height.

**Note:** When the liftgate has stopped moving, you can also manually move it to the desired height.

3. Press and hold the liftgate control button on the liftgate until a tone sounds, indicating programming is complete.



# Locks

**Note:** You can only use the liftgate control button to program the height.

**Note:** You cannot program the height if the liftgate position is too low.

The new open liftgate height is recalled when the power liftgate is opened. To change the programmed height, repeat the above procedure. Once you open the power liftgate, you can manually move it to a different height. You can fully open the liftgate by manually pushing it upward to the maximum open position.

**Note:** The system recalls the new programmed height, even if you disconnect the battery.

## Obstacle Detection

### When Closing

The system stops when it detects an obstacle. Two short tones sound and the system reverses to open. When you remove the obstacle, you can power close the liftgate.

**Note:** Entering your vehicle while the liftgate is closing can cause your vehicle to bounce and activate obstacle detection. To prevent this, let the power liftgate close completely before you enter your vehicle. Before driving off, check the instrument cluster for a liftgate or door ajar message or warning indicator. Failure to do this could result in unintentionally leaving the liftgate open while driving.

### When Opening

The system stops when it detects an obstacle and two short tones sound. When you remove the obstacle, you can continue to operate the liftgate.

### Hands-Free Feature (If Equipped)

Make sure you have an intelligent access transmitter within 3 ft (1 m) of the liftgate.



E161602

1. Move your foot under and away from the rear bumper detection area in a single-kick motion. Do not move your foot sideways or the sensors may not detect the motion.
2. The liftgate powers open or close.

**Note:** Allow the power system to open the liftgate. Manually pushing or pulling the liftgate may activate the system's obstacle detection feature and stop the power operation or reverse its direction. Manually interfering with the liftgate motion may also replicate a gas strut failure.

**Note:** Splashing water may cause the hands-free liftgate to open. Keep the intelligent access key away from the rear bumper detection area when washing your vehicle.

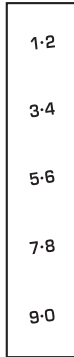
## KEYLESS ENTRY (If Equipped)

### SECURICODE™ KEYLESS ENTRY KEYPAD

The keypad is located near the driver window. It is invisible until touched and then it lights up so you can see and touch the appropriate buttons.

# Locks

**Note:** *If you enter your entry code too fast on the keypad, the unlock function may not work. Re-enter your entry code more slowly.*



E138637

You can use the keypad to:

- lock or unlock the doors
- program and erase user codes
- arm and disarm the anti-theft alarm.

You can operate the keypad with the factory-set five-digit entry code. The code is located on the owner's wallet card in the glove box and is available from an authorized dealer. You can also create up to five of your own five-digit personal entry codes.

## Programming a Personal Entry Code

To create your own personal entry code:

1. Enter the factory-set code.
2. Press **1-2** on the keypad within five seconds.
3. Enter your personal five-digit code. You must enter each number within five seconds of each other.
4. Press **1-2** on the keypad to save personal code 1.

The doors will lock then unlock to confirm that programming was successful.

To program additional personal entry codes, repeat Steps 1-3, then for Step 4:

- press **3-4** to save personal code 2
- press **5-6** to save personal code 3
- press **7-8** to save personal code 4
- press **9-0** to save personal code 5.

## Tips:

- Do not set a code that uses five of the same number.
- Do not use five numbers in sequential order.
- The factory-set code will work even if you have set your own personal code.

## Erasing a Personal Code

1. Enter the factory-set five-digit code.
2. Press and release **1-2** on the keypad within five seconds.
3. Press and hold **1-2** for two seconds. This must be done within five seconds of completing Step 2.

All personal codes will erase and only the factory-set five-digit code will work.

## Anti-Scan Feature

The keypad will go into an anti-scan mode if you enter the wrong code seven times (35 consecutive button presses). This mode disables the keypad for one minute and the keypad lamp will flash.

The anti-scan feature will turn off after:

- one minute of keypad inactivity
- pressing the unlock button on the remote control
- switching the ignition on
- unlocking the vehicle using intelligent access.

# Locks

---

## Unlocking and Locking the Doors

### **To Unlock the Driver Door**

Enter the factory-set five-digit code or your personal code. You must press each number within five seconds of each other. The interior lamps will illuminate.

**Note:** *All doors will unlock if the two-stage unlocking feature is disabled. See **Locking and Unlocking** (page 55).*

### **To Unlock All Doors**

Enter the factory-set code or your personal code, then press **3•4** control within five seconds.

### **To Lock All Doors**

Press and hold **7•8** and **9•0** at the same time with the driver door closed. You do not need to enter the keypad code first.

# Security

---

## PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

**Note:** The system is not compatible with non-Ford aftermarket remote start systems. Use of these systems may result in vehicle starting problems and a loss of security protection.

**Note:** Metallic objects, electronic devices or a second coded key on the same key chain may cause vehicle starting problems if they are too close to the key when starting the engine. Prevent these objects from touching the coded key while starting the engine. Switch the ignition off, move all objects on the key chain away from the coded key and restart the engine if a problem occurs.

**Note:** Do not leave a duplicate coded key in the vehicle. Always take your keys and lock all doors when leaving the vehicle.

### SecuriLock®

The system is an engine immobilization system. It is designed to help prevent the engine from being started unless a coded key programmed to your vehicle is used. Using the wrong key may prevent the engine from starting. A message may appear in the information display.

If you are unable to start the engine with a correctly coded key, a malfunction has happened and a message may appear in the information display.

### Automatic Arming

The vehicle arms immediately after you switch the ignition off.

### Automatic Disarming

Switching the ignition on with a coded key disarms the vehicle.

## Replacement Keys

**Note:** Your vehicle comes equipped with two integrated keyhead transmitters or two intelligent access keys.

The integrated keyhead transmitter functions as a programmed ignition key that operates all the locks and starts the vehicle, as well as a remote control.

The intelligent access key functions as a programmed key that operates the driver door lock and activates the intelligent access with push button start system, as well as a remote control.

If your programmed transmitters or standard SecuriLock coded keys (integrated keyhead transmitters only) are lost or stolen and you do not have an extra coded key, you will need to have your vehicle towed to an authorized dealer. You need to erase the key codes from your vehicle and program new coded keys.

Store an extra programmed key away from the vehicle in a safe place to help prevent any inconveniences. See your authorized dealer to purchase additional spare or replacement keys.

### Programming a Spare Integrated Keyhead Transmitter

**Note:** You can program a maximum of eight coded keys to your vehicle. All eight can be integrated keyhead transmitters.

You can program your own integrated keyhead transmitter or standard SecuriLock coded keys to your vehicle. This procedure will program both the engine immobilizer keycode and the remote entry portion of the remote control to your vehicle.

Only use integrated keyhead transmitters or standard SecuriLock keys.

# Security

You must have two previously programmed coded keys and the new unprogrammed key readily accessible. See your authorized dealer to have the spare key programmed if two previously programmed coded keys are not available.

Read and understand the entire procedure before you begin.

1. Insert the first previously programmed coded key into the ignition.
2. Switch the ignition from off to on. Keep the ignition on for at least three seconds, but no more than 10 seconds.
3. Switch the ignition off and remove the first coded key from the ignition.
4. After three seconds but within 10 seconds of switching the ignition off, insert the second previously coded key into the ignition.
5. Switch the ignition from off to on. Keep the ignition on for at least three seconds, but no more than 10 seconds.
6. Switch the ignition off and remove the second previously programmed coded key from the ignition.
7. After three seconds but within 10 seconds of switching the ignition off and removing the previously programmed coded key, insert the new unprogrammed key into the ignition.
8. Switch the ignition from off to on. Keep the ignition on for at least six seconds.
9. Remove the newly programmed coded key from the ignition.

If the key has been successfully programmed it will start the engine and operate the remote entry system (if the new key is an integrated keyhead transmitter).

If programming was not successful, wait 10 seconds and repeat Steps 1 through 8. If you are still unsuccessful, take your vehicle to your authorized dealer.

## Programming a Spare Intelligent Access Key

See your authorized dealer to have additional keys programmed to your vehicle.

## ANTI-THEFT ALARM (If Equipped)

The system will warn you of an unauthorized entry to your vehicle. It will be triggered if any door, the luggage compartment or the hood is opened without using the key, remote control or keyless entry keypad.

The direction indicators will flash and the horn will sound if unauthorized entry is attempted while the alarm is armed.

Take all remote controls to an authorized dealer if there is any potential alarm problem with your vehicle.

### Arming the Alarm

The alarm is ready to arm when there is not a key in the ignition. Electronically lock the vehicle to arm the alarm.



The message indicator flashes when theft protection is active.

### Disarming the Alarm

Disarm the alarm by any of the following actions:

- Unlock the doors or luggage compartment with the remote control or keyless entry keypad.
- Switch the ignition on or start the vehicle.
- Use a key in the driver's door to unlock the vehicle, then switch the ignition on within 12 seconds.

**Note:** *Pressing the panic button on the remote control will stop the horn and signal indicators, but will not disarm the system.*

# Steering Wheel

## ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL

### WARNING



Do not adjust the steering wheel when your vehicle is moving.

**Note:** Make sure that you are sitting in the correct position. See **Sitting in the Correct Position** (page 107).



E95178

1. Unlock the steering column.
2. Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position.



E95179

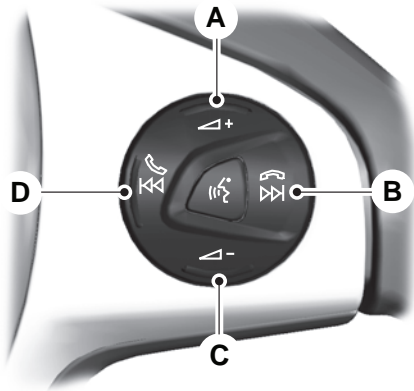
3. Lock the steering column.

## AUDIO CONTROL (If Equipped)

Select the required source on the audio unit.

# Steering Wheel

You can operate the following functions with the control:



E159789

- A Volume up.
- B Seek up, next or end call.
- C Volume down.
- D Seek down, previous or accept call.

## Seek, Next or Previous

Press the seek button to:

- Tune the radio to the next or previous stored preset.
- Play the next or the previous track.

Press and hold the seek button to:

- Tune the radio to the next station up or down the frequency band.
- Seek through a track.

## VOICE CONTROL (If Equipped)



E186192

Press the control to select or deselect voice control. See your SYNC information.

## CRUISE CONTROL



E142437

See **Using Cruise Control** (page 160).

# Steering Wheel

---

## INFORMATION DISPLAY CONTROL



E130248

See **Information Displays** (page 87).

## HEATED STEERING WHEEL (if Equipped)

Press the button to switch the heated steering wheel on and off.

**Note:** *You can locate the heated steering wheel control under the climate controls.*



# Wipers and Washers

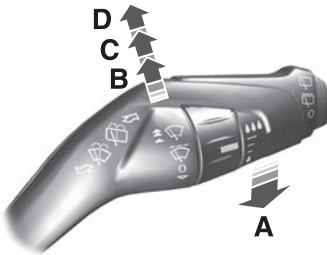
## WINDSHIELD WIPERS

**Note:** Fully defrost the windshield before you switch the windshield wipers on.

**Note:** Make sure you switch the windshield wipers and vehicle power off before using an automatic car wash.

**Note:** If streaks or smears appear on the windshield, clean the windshield and the wiper blades. See **Checking the Wiper Blades** (page 224). If that does not resolve the issue, install new wiper blades. See **Changing the Wiper Blades** (page 224).

**Note:** Do not operate the wipers on a dry windshield. This may scratch the glass, damage the wiper blades or cause the wiper motor to burn out. Always use the windshield washers before wiping a dry windshield.

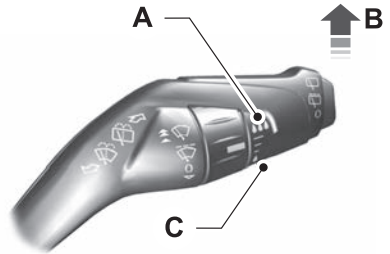


E197525

- A Single wipe.
- B Intermittent wipe.
- C Normal wipe.
- D High-speed wipe.

**Note:** Move to position **O** marked on the wiper lever to switch off.

## Intermittent Wipe



E197526

- A Short-wipe interval.
- B Intermittent wipe.
- C Long-wipe interval.

Push the wiper lever up to switch the wipers on, and then use the rotary control to adjust the intermittent wipe interval.

## Speed Dependent Wipers (If Equipped)

When your vehicle speed increases, the interval between wipes decreases.

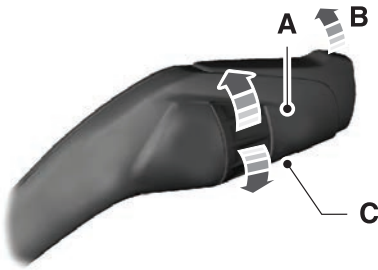
## AUTOWIPERS (If Equipped)

**Note:** Fully defrost the windshield before you switch the windshield wipers on.

**Note:** Make sure you switch the windshield wipers and ignition off before using an automatic car wash.

Autowipers uses a rain sensor located in the area around the interior mirror. The rain sensor monitors the amount of moisture on the windshield and automatically turns the wipers on. It will adjust the wiper speed by the amount of moisture that the sensor detects on the windshield.

# Wipers and Washers



E215460

- A Highest sensitivity.
- B On.
- C Lowest sensitivity.

Switch the autowipers on by moving the wiper lever up to the first position.

Switch the autowipers off by moving the wiper lever down.

Use the rotary control to adjust the sensitivity of the autowipers. When you select low sensitivity, the wipers will operate when the sensor detects a large amount of water on the windshield. When you select high sensitivity, the wipers will operate when the sensor detects a small amount of water on the windshield.

The autowipers feature is active and ready when the wiper lever is in the first position and selected in the information display. You can change the autowipers feature to intermittent wipers through the information display. See **General Information** (page 87).

**Note:** Check your wiper function in the information display. See **General Information** (page 87). The autowipers feature functions only when you select the menu choice in the information display and you move the wiper lever up to the first position. The autowipers feature then remains on in the information display menu until you change it to intermittent wipe.

**Note:** If you switch autolamps on in conjunction with autowipers, your low beam headlamps turn on automatically when the rain sensor activates the windshield wipers continuously. See **General Information** (page 87).

Keep the outside of the windshield clean. The rain sensor is very sensitive and the wipers may operate if dirt, mist or insects hit the windshield.

Wet or winter driving conditions with ice, snow or salty road mist can cause inconsistent and unexpected wiping or smearing. In these conditions, you can do the following to help keep your windshield clear:

- Lower the sensitivity of the autowipers to reduce the amount of smearing.
- Switch to normal or high-speed wipe by moving the wiper lever up.
- Switch the autowipers off and switch intermittent mode on through the information display. See **General Information** (page 87).
- Switch the autowipers off by moving the wiper lever down.

**Note:** Clean the windshield and wiper blades if they begin to leave streaks or smears. If that does not resolve the issue, install new wiper blades. See **Changing the Wiper Blades** (page 224).

## WINDSHIELD WASHERS

**Note:** Do not operate the washers when the washer reservoir is empty. This may cause the washer pump to overheat.

# Wipers and Washers



E197528

To operate the washers and spray the windshield, pull the lever toward you. When you release the lever, the wipers will operate for a short time.

When you shift into reverse (R) and the front wipers are on, the rear wiper may automatically turn on to intermittent wipe.

## Rear Window Washer



E197529

Push the lever away from you to operate the rear window washer. When you release the lever, wiping continues for a short period of time.

## REAR WINDOW WIPER AND WASHERS

### Rear Window Wiper

**Note:** Make sure you switch the rear window wiper and ignition off before using an automatic car wash.



E197647

- A Intermittent wipe.
- B Low speed wipe.
- C Off.

Press the top of the button to switch intermittent wipe on. Press the top of the button again to switch low speed wipe on. Press the bottom of the button to switch the rear window wiper off.

# Lighting

## LIGHTING CONTROL



E142449

- A Off
- B Parking lamps, instrument panel lamps, license plate lamps and tail lamps
- C Headlamps

## High Beams



E162679

Push the lever forward to switch the high beams on.

Push the lever forward again or pull the lever toward you to switch the high beams off.

## Headlamp Flasher



E162680

Pull the lever toward you slightly and release it to flash the headlamps.

## AUTOLAMPS (If Equipped)

### WARNING



The autolamps switch position may not activate the headlamps in all low visibility conditions, such as daytime fog. Always ensure that your headlamps are switched to auto or on, as appropriate, during all low visibility conditions. Failure to do so may result in a collision.



E142451

When the lighting control is in the autolamps position, the headlamps automatically turn on in low light situations or when the wipers activate.

# Lighting

If equipped, the following also activate when the lighting control is in the autolamps position and you switch them on in the information display:

- Configurable daytime running lamps.
- Automatic high beam control.
- Adaptive headlamp control.

The headlamps remain on for a period of time after you switch the ignition off. Use the information display controls to adjust the period of time that the headlamps remain on. See **Information Displays** (page 87).

**Note:** *With the headlamps in the autolamps position, you cannot switch the high beam headlamps on until the autolamps system turns the low beam headlamps on.*

## Windshield Wiper Activated Headlamps

The windshield wiper activated headlamps turn on within 10 seconds when you switch the windshield wipers on and the lighting control is in the autolamps position. They turn off approximately 60 seconds after you switch the windshield wipers off.

The headlamps will not turn on by wiper activation:

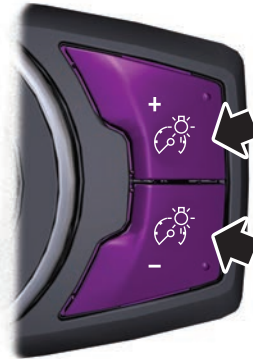
- During a mist wipe.
- When the wipers are on to clear washer fluid during a wash condition.
- If the wipers are in intermittent mode.

**Note:** *If you switch autolamps and autowipers on, the headlamps will automatically turn on when the windshield wipers continuously operate.*

## INSTRUMENT LIGHTING DIMMER

**Note:** *You disable the manual dimmer when you adjust the setting to Auto Dimming in the information display. See **Information Displays** (page 87).*

**Note:** *If you disconnect the battery or it becomes discharged, the illuminated components will switch to the maximum setting.*



E161902

Press repeatedly or press and hold until you reach the desired level.

## HEADLAMP EXIT DELAY

After you switch the ignition off, you can switch the headlamps on by pulling the direction indicator lever toward you. You will hear a short tone. The headlamps will switch off automatically after three minutes with any door open or 30 seconds after the last door has been closed. You can cancel this feature by pulling the direction indicator toward you again or switching the ignition on.

# Lighting

## DAYTIME RUNNING LAMPS (if

Equipped)

### WARNING



The daytime running lamps system does not activate the rear lamps and may not provide adequate lighting during low visibility driving conditions. Also, the autolamps switch position may not activate the headlamps in all low visibility conditions, such as daytime fog. Make sure the headlamps are switched to auto or on, as appropriate, during all low visibility conditions. Failure to do so may result in a crash.

### Type 1 - Conventional (Non-Configurable)

The daytime running lamps turn on when:

1. The ignition is switched to the on position.
2. The transmission is not in park (P) for vehicles with automatic transmissions or the parking brake is released for vehicles with manual transmissions.
3. The lighting control is in the off, parking lamp or autolamps positions.
4. The headlamps are off.

### Type 2 - Configurable

Switch the daytime running lamps on or off using the information display controls. See **Information Displays** (page 87).

The daytime running lamps turn on when:

1. They are switched on in the information display. See **Information Displays** (page 87).
2. The ignition is switched to the on position.

3. The transmission is not in park (P) for vehicles with automatic transmissions or the parking brake is released for vehicles with manual transmissions.
4. The lighting control is in the autolamps position.
5. The headlamps are off.

The other lighting control switch positions do not activate the daytime running lamps, and you can use them to temporarily override autolamp control.

When switched off in the information display, the daytime running lamps are off in all lighting control switch positions.

## FRONT FOG LAMPS



E210814

Press the button to switch the fog lamps on or off.

You can switch the fog lamps on when the lighting control is in any position except off.

# Lighting

## DIRECTION INDICATORS



E162681

Push the lever up or down to use the direction indicators.

**Note:** Tap the lever up or down to make the direction indicators flash three times to indicate a lane change.

## INTERIOR LAMPS

The lamps will switch on when:

- You open any door.
- You press a remote control button.

### Front Interior Lamp



E181171

- A. Left-hand lamp.
- B. Right-hand lamp.

### Rear Interior Lamp (If Equipped)



E142455

You can switch individual map lamps on independently by pressing switch A.

### AMBIENT LIGHTING (If Equipped)

Adjust the ambient lighting using the touchscreen.

# Windows and Mirrors

## POWER WINDOWS

### WARNINGS



Do not leave children unattended in your vehicle and do not let them play with the power windows. They may seriously injure themselves.



When closing the power windows, you should verify they are free of obstructions and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings.



E70848

Press the control to open the window.

Lift the control to close the window.

**Note:** You may hear a pulsing noise when just one of the windows is open. Lower the opposite window slightly to reduce this noise.

### One-Touch Down (If Equipped)

Press the control fully and release it. Press again or lift it to stop the window.

### One-Touch Up (If Equipped)

Lift the control fully and release it. Press or lift it again to stop the window.

### Window Lock



E70850

Press the control to lock or unlock the rear window controls. It lights when the rear window controls lock.

### Bounce-Back (If Equipped)

The window stops automatically while closing. It reverses some distance if there is an obstacle in the way.

### Overriding the Bounce-Back Feature

#### WARNING



When you override the bounce-back feature the window will not reverse if it detects an obstacle. Take care when closing the windows to avoid personal injury or damage to your vehicle.

Proceed as follows to override this protection feature when there is a resistance, for example in winter:



# Windows and Mirrors

1. Close the window twice until it reaches the point of resistance and let it reverse.
2. Close the window a third time to the point of resistance. You disabled the bounce-back feature and you can now close the window manually. The window travels past the point of resistance and you can close it fully.

Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible if the window does not close after the third attempt.

## Resetting the Bounce-Back Feature

### WARNING



The bounce-back feature remains turned off until you reset the memory.

If you have disconnected the battery, you must reset the bounce-back memory separately for each window.

1. Lift and hold the control until the window is fully closed.
2. Release the control.
3. Lift and hold the control again for a few seconds.
4. Release the control.
5. Lift and hold the control again for a few seconds.
6. Release the control.
7. Press and hold the control until the window is fully open.
8. Lift and hold the control until the window is fully closed.
9. Release the control.
10. Open the window and then try to close it automatically.
11. Repeat the procedure if the window does not close automatically.

## Accessory Delay (if Equipped)

You can use the window controls for several minutes after switching off the ignition or until opening either front door.

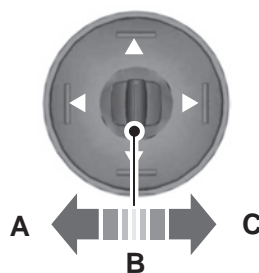
## EXTERIOR MIRRORS

### Power Exterior Mirrors

#### WARNING

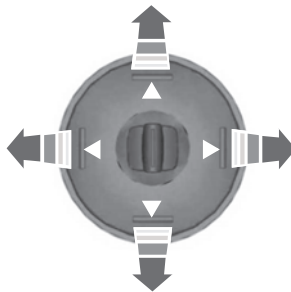


Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving.



E70846

- A Left-hand mirror
- B Off
- C Right-hand mirror



E70847

Press the arrows to adjust the mirror.

# Windows and Mirrors

## Fold-Away Exterior Mirrors

Push the mirror toward the door window glass. Make sure that you fully engage the mirror in its support when returning it to its original position.

## Heated Exterior Mirrors (If Equipped)


See **Heated Windows and Mirrors** (page 105).

## Memory Mirrors (If Equipped)

You can save and recall the mirror positions through the memory function. See **Memory Function** (page 112).

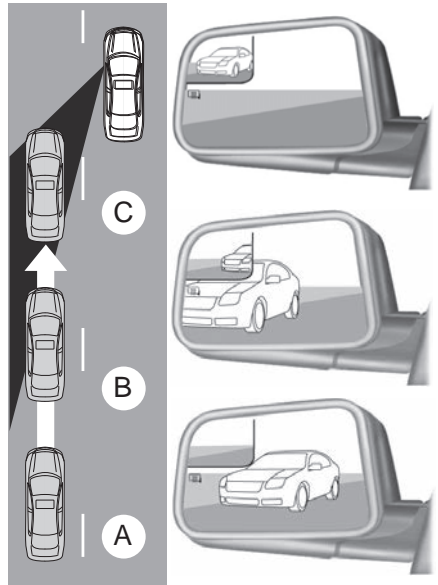
## Integrated Blind Spot Mirrors (If Equipped)

### WARNING

 Objects in the blind spot mirror are closer than they appear.

Blind spot mirrors have an integrated convex mirror built into the upper outboard corner of the exterior mirrors. They are designed to increase your visibility along the side of your vehicle.

Check the main mirror first before a lane change, then check the blind spot mirror. If no vehicles are present in the blind spot mirror and the traffic in the adjacent lane is at a safe distance, signal that you intend to change lanes. Glance over your shoulder to verify traffic is clear and carefully change lanes.



E138665

The image of the approaching vehicle is small and near the inboard edge of the main mirror when it is at a distance. The image becomes larger and begins to move outboard across the main mirror as the vehicle approaches (A). The image will transition from the main mirror and begin to appear in the blind spot mirror as the vehicle approaches (B). The vehicle will transition to your peripheral field of view as it leaves the blind spot mirror (C).

## Blind Spot Monitor (If Equipped)

See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 161).

# Windows and Mirrors

## INTERIOR MIRROR

### WARNING



Do not adjust the mirror when your vehicle is moving.

**Note:** Do not clean the housing or glass of any mirror with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum or ammonia-based cleaning products.

You can adjust the interior mirror to your preference. Some mirrors also have a second pivot point. This lets you move the mirror head up or down and from side to side.

Pull the tab below the mirror toward you to reduce glare at night.

### Auto-Dimming Mirror (If Equipped)

**Note:** Do not block the sensors on the front and back of the mirror. Mirror performance may be affected. A rear center passenger or raised rear center head restraint may also block light from reaching the sensor.

The mirror will dim automatically to reduce glare when bright lights are detected from behind your vehicle. It will automatically return to normal reflection when you select reverse gear to make sure you have a clear view when backing up.

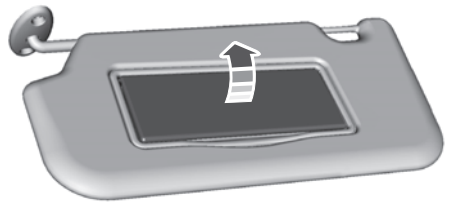
## SUN VISORS



E138666

Rotate the sun visor toward the side window and extend it rearward for extra shade.

### Illuminated Vanity Mirror (If Equipped)



E162197

Lift the cover to switch the lamp on.

## MOONROOF (If Equipped)

### WARNINGS



Do not let children play with the moonroof or leave them unattended in the vehicle. They may seriously hurt themselves.

# Windows and Mirrors

## WARNINGS



When closing the moonroof, you should verify that it is free of obstructions and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the roof opening.

The moonroof and sunscreen controls are located on the overhead console.

The moonroof and sunscreen have a one-touch open and close feature. To stop them during one-touch operation, press the control a second time.

## Opening and Closing the Sunscreen

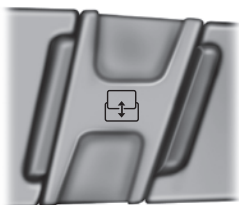


E138668

Press and release the rear of the control to open the sunscreen.

Press and release the front of the control to close the sunscreen. If it is open, the moonroof will automatically close before the sunscreen closes.

## Opening and Closing the Moonroof



E138669

Press and release the rear of the control to open the moonroof. If it is closed, the sunscreen will automatically open before the moonroof opens. The moonroof will stop short of the fully opened position.

**Note:** *This position helps to reduce wind noise or rumbling which may happen with the moonroof fully open. Press and hold the control again to fully open the moonroof.*

Press and release the front of the control to close the moonroof.

## Bounce-Back

The moonroof will stop automatically while closing. It will reverse some distance if there is an obstacle in the way.

Press and hold the front of the control within two seconds of a bounce-back event to override this function. While bounce-back is active, the closing force increases for each of the next three times that you close the moonroof.

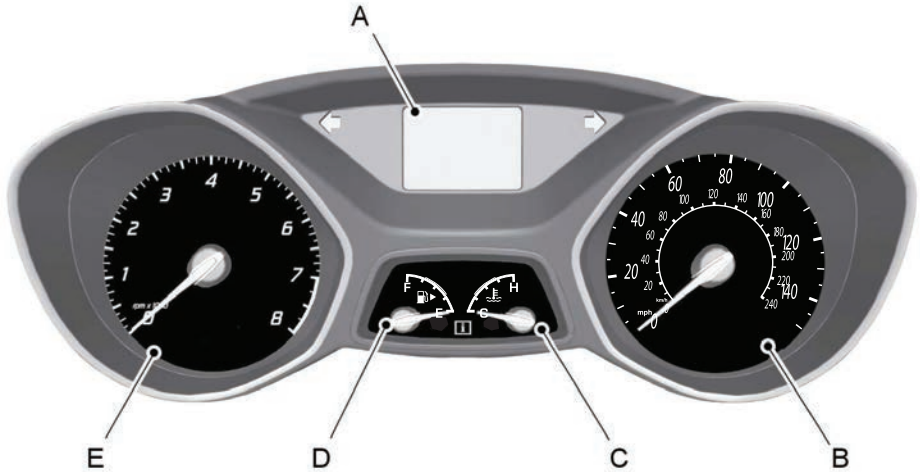
## Venting the Moonroof

Press and release the front of the control to vent the moonroof. Press and release the rear of the control to close the moonroof.

**Note:** *When you vent the moonroof it will rise to 1.57 in (4 cm) and then lower slightly. This is normal. You cannot stop the moonroof in the higher position.*

# Instrument Cluster

## GAUGES



E171213

- A Information display
- B Speedometer
- C Engine coolant temperature gauge
- D Fuel gauge
- E Tachometer

### Information Display

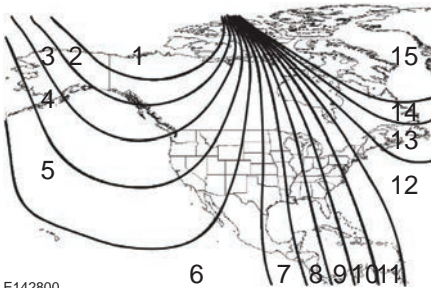
#### Compass (If Equipped)

Displays the vehicle's heading direction.

To calibrate and set the compass zone use the information display menu. See **Information Displays** (page 87).

Use the diagram to determine your magnetic zone.

# Instrument Cluster



E142800

## Odometer

Located in the bottom of the information display, it registers the accumulated distance your vehicle has traveled.

## Outside Air Temperature

Shows the outside air temperature.

## Trip Computer

See **Trip Computer** (page 90).

## Vehicle Settings and Personalization

See **General Information** (page 87).

## Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge

### WARNING



Never remove the coolant reservoir cap while the engine is running or hot.

At normal operating temperature, the needle will remain in the center section.

**Note:** Do not restart the engine until the cause of overheating has been resolved.

If the needle enters the red section, the engine is overheating. Stop the engine, switch the ignition off and determine the cause once the engine has cooled down. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 219).

## Fuel Gauge

**Note:** The fuel gauge level may vary slightly when your vehicle is moving or when driving on a slope.

Switch the ignition on. The fuel gauge will indicate approximately how much fuel is in the fuel tank. The arrow next to the fuel pump symbol shows the fuel filler door side of your vehicle.

The needle will move toward full when you refuel your vehicle. If the needle still points to empty after adding fuel, have your vehicle repaired.

After refueling the needle may not always return to exactly the same position. This is normal.

**Note:** It may take a short time for the needle to reach full after refueling and driving. This is normal and may be due to the slope of pavement at the service station.

**Note:** The fuel pumped into the tank may differ slightly from the fuel gauge. This is normal and may be due to the slope of pavement at the service station.

**Note:** If the service station nozzle shuts off before the tank is full, complete refueling at a different pump.

## Low Fuel Level Reminder

### Vehicles with Trip Computer

A low fuel level reminder displays and sounds when the distance to empty reaches 75 mi (120 km) to empty for MyKey, and at 50 mi (80 km), 25 mi (40 km), 10 mi (20 km) and 0 mi (0 km) for all vehicle keys.

### Vehicles without Trip Computer

A low fuel level reminder displays and sounds when the fuel gauge needle is at 1/16th.

# Instrument Cluster

**Note:** The low fuel warning and distance-to-empty warning can appear at different fuel gauge positions depending on fuel economy conditions. This variation is normal.

## WARNING LAMPS AND INDICATORS

The following warning lamps and indicators will alert you to a vehicle condition that may become serious. Some lamps will illuminate when you start your vehicle to make sure they work. If any lamps remain on after starting your vehicle, refer to the respective system warning lamp for further information.

**Note:** Some warning indicators appear in the information display and function the same as a warning lamp but do not display when you start your vehicle.

### Airbag - Front



If it fails to illuminate when you start your vehicle, continues to flash or remains on, it indicates a malfunction. Have the system checked by your authorized dealer.

### Anti-Lock Braking System



If it illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. You will continue to have the normal braking system (without ABS) unless the brake system warning lamp is also illuminated. Have the system checked by your authorized dealer.

### Battery



If it illuminates while driving, it indicates a malfunction. Switch off all unnecessary electrical equipment and have the system checked by your authorized dealer immediately.

### Blind Spot Monitor (If Equipped)



It will illuminate when you switch this feature off or in conjunction with a message. See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 161). See **Information Messages** (page 90).

### Brake System



It will illuminate when you engage the parking brake with the ignition on.

If it illuminates when you are driving, check that the parking brake is not engaged. If the parking brake is not engaged, this indicates low brake fluid level or a brake system malfunction. Have the system checked immediately by your authorized dealer.

## WARNING



Driving your vehicle with the warning lamp on is dangerous. A significant decrease in braking performance may occur. It will take you longer to stop your vehicle. Have your vehicle checked by your authorized dealer immediately. Driving extended distances with the parking brake engaged can cause brake failure and the risk of personal injury.

### Cruise Control (If Equipped)



It will illuminate when you switch this feature on. See **Using Cruise Control** (page 160).

### Direction Indicator



Illuminates when the left or right turn signal or the hazard warning flasher is turned on. If the indicators stay on or flash faster, check for a burned out bulb. See **Changing a Bulb** (page 227).

# Instrument Cluster

## Engine Oil



If it illuminates with the engine running or when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction.

Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off. Check the engine oil level. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 218).

**Note:** Do not resume your journey if it illuminates despite the level being correct. Have the system checked by your authorized dealer immediately.

## Fasten Safety Belt



It will illuminate and a chime will sound to remind you to fasten your safety belt. See **Seatbelt**

**Reminder** (page 32).

## Fog Lamps - Front (If Equipped)



It will illuminate when you switch the front fog lamps on.

## High Beam



It will illuminate when you switch the high beam headlamps on. It will flash when you use the headlamp flasher.

## Information (If Equipped)



It will illuminate when a new message is stored in the information display. It will be red or amber in color depending on the severity of the message and will remain on until the cause of the message has been rectified. See **Information Messages** (page 90).

## Low Fuel Level



It will illuminate when the fuel level is low or the fuel tank is nearly empty. Refuel as soon as possible.

## Low Tire Pressure Warning



It will illuminate when your tire pressure is low. If the lamp remains on with the engine running or when driving, check your tire pressure as soon as possible.

It will also illuminate momentarily when you switch the ignition to confirm the lamp is functional. If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or begins to flash at any time, have the system checked by your authorized dealer.

## Parking Lamps



It will illuminate when you switch the parking lamps on.

## Service Engine Soon



If the service engine soon indicator light stays illuminated after the engine is started, it indicates that the On-Board Diagnostics (OBD-II) system has detected a malfunction of the vehicle emissions control system. Refer to On-Board Diagnostics (OBD-II) in the Fuel and Refueling chapter for more information about having your vehicle serviced. See **Emission Control System** (page 134).

If the light is blinking, engine misfire is occurring which could damage your catalytic converter. Drive in a moderate fashion (avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration) and have your vehicle serviced immediately.



# Instrument Cluster

## WARNING



Under engine misfire conditions, excessive exhaust temperatures could damage the catalytic converter, the fuel system, interior floor coverings or other vehicle components, possibly causing a fire. Have an authorized dealer service your vehicle immediately.

The service engine soon indicator light illuminates when the ignition is first turned on prior to engine start to check the bulb and to indicate whether the vehicle is ready for Inspection/Maintenance (I/M) testing.

Normally, the service engine soon light will stay on until the engine is cranked, then turn itself off if no malfunctions are present. However, if after 15 seconds the service engine soon light blinks eight times, it means that the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing. See **Emission Control System** (page 134).

## Traction and Stability Control



It will flash when the system is active. If it remains illuminated or does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, this indicates a malfunction. During a malfunction the system will switch off. Have the system checked by your authorized dealer immediately.

## Traction and Stability Control Off



It will illuminate when you switch the system off. It will go out when you switch the system back on or when you switch the ignition off.

## AUDIBLE WARNINGS AND INDICATORS

### Key in Ignition Warning Chime

Sounds when you open the driver's door and you have left the key in the ignition.

### Engine On Warning Chime

A warning chime will sound when any door is opened if the vehicle exceeds a relatively low speed.

### Keyless Warning Alert (If Equipped)

Sounds the horn twice when you exit the vehicle and the keyless vehicle is in RUN, indicating the vehicle is still on.

### Headlamps On Warning Chime

Sounds when you remove the key from the ignition and open the driver's door and you have left the headlamps or parking lamps on.

### Parking Brake On Warning Chime

Sounds when you have left the parking brake on and drive your vehicle. If the warning chime remains on after you have released the parking brake, have the system checked by your authorized dealer immediately.

### Automatic Transmission Warning Chime

Sounds when you have not moved the transmission selector lever to position **P**. A message will be shown in the display.

# Information Displays

## GENERAL INFORMATION

### WARNING



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Various systems on your vehicle can be controlled using the information display controls on the steering wheel. Corresponding information is displayed in the information display.

## Information Display Controls



E138659

- Press the up and down arrow buttons to scroll through and highlight the options within a menu.
- Press the right arrow button to enter a sub-menu.
- Press the left arrow button to exit a menu.
- Press and hold the left arrow button at any time to return to the main menu display (escape button).
- Press the OK button to choose and confirm settings or messages. The OK button may also be used to reset some Trip values.

## Menu Structure - Information Display

### All Vehicles

You can access the menu using the information display control.

**Note:** Some options may appear slightly different or not at all if the items are optional.

# Information Displays

Trip 1 and 2 <sup>1</sup>		
Distance to E		
Trip Odometer		
Trip Timer		
Inst Fuel Econ		
Average Fuel	Ford EcoMode <sup>2</sup>	Anticipation
		Speed
Average Speed		
Digital Speedo		
All Value - Distance to E, Trip Odometer, Instantaneous Fuel and Average Fuel		

<sup>1</sup> See **Trip Computer** (page 90).

<sup>2</sup> See **Eco Mode** (page 166).

Settings
Seatbelt
Intelligent 4WD
MyKey Dist.
MyKey Info
System Check

Settings		
Driver Assist	Traction Ctrl	On or Off
	Blindspot	On or Off
	Cross Traffic	On or Off
Lighting	Rain Light	On or Off
	Dimming	Auto or Manual
	Hdlamp Delay	Manual or xx Seconds

# Information Displays

<b>Settings</b>				
	DRL	On or Off		
Display	Navigation info	On or Off		
	Language	Choose your applicable setting		
	Distance	Choose your applicable setting		
	Temperature	Choose your applicable setting		
Chimes	Park Slot	On or Off		
Convenience	Auto engine off	On or Off		
	Compass	Display	On or Off	
	Remote Start	Climate Control	Heater – A/C / Auto or Last Settings	
			Front Defrost / Auto or Off	
			Rear Defrost / Auto or Off	
		Duration	(5, 10 or 15 minutes)	
		Quiet Start	On/Off	
		Restore Default		
		System	On or Off	
	Wipers	Rain Sensing		
MyKey	Create MyKey	Hold OK to Create MyKey		
	Traction Ctrl	Always On or User Selectable		
	Max Speed	80 MPH (130 km/h) or Off		
	Speed Warning	45 mph (75 km/h), 55 mph (90 km/h), 65 mph (105 km/h) or Off		
	Volume Limiter	On or Off		
	Clear MyKeys	Hold OK to Clear All MyKeys		

# Information Displays

## System Check

All active warnings will display first if applicable. The system check menu may appear different based upon equipment options and current vehicle status. Use the up/down arrow buttons to scroll through the list.

## TRIP COMPUTER

### Resetting the Trip Computer

Press and hold OK on the current screen to reset the respective trip, distance, time and average fuel information.

### Distance to E

Indicates the approximate distance the vehicle will travel on the fuel remaining in the tank. Changes in driving pattern may cause the value to vary.

### Trip Odometer

Registers the distance traveled of individual journeys.

### Trip Timer

Registers the time of individual journeys.

### Instantaneous Fuel (If Equipped)

Shows your instantaneous fuel usage.

### Average Fuel

Indicates the average fuel consumption since the function was last reset.

### Digital Speedo

Shows a digital display of your vehicle speed.

## All Value (If Equipped)

Indicates all the respective remaining fuel, distance, time and average fuel information.

## INFORMATION MESSAGES

**Note:** Depending on your vehicle options and instrument cluster type, not all of the messages display or are available. Additionally, the information display may abbreviate or shorten certain messages.



E130248

Press the OK button to acknowledge and remove some messages from the information display. The information display automatically removes other messages after a short time.

You need to confirm certain messages before you can access the menus.

## Message indicator (If Equipped)



The message indicator illuminates to supplement some messages. It is red or amber depending on the severity of the message and remains on until you or your authorized dealer have fixed the vehicle concern.

# Information Displays

A system specific symbol with a message indicator may supplement some messages.

## Airbag

Message	Message Indicator	Action
Airbag fault Service now	Amber	Displays when the system requires service due to a malfunction. Contact your authorized dealer.

## Alarm

Message	Message Indicator	Action
Alarm activated Check Vehicle	Amber	Displays when the alarm has been triggered due to unauthorized entry. See <b>Anti-Theft Alarm</b> (page 66).
Alarm fault Service required	-	Displays when the system requires service due to a malfunction. Contact your authorized dealer.

## Automatic Engine Shutdown

Message	Message Indicator	Action
Engine Shuts Off For Fuel Economy	-	Displays when the engine has shut off to help increase fuel economy.
Engine Shuts Off in XX Seconds OK to Override	-	Displays when the engine is getting ready to shut off. You can press OK on the left steering wheel button to override the shut down.

# Information Displays

## Battery and Charging System

Message	Message Indicator	Action
Electrical system over-voltage Stop safely	Red	Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition. Contact your authorized dealer.
Battery low See manual	Amber	Displays to warn of a low battery condition. Turn off all unneeded electrical accessories. Contact your authorized dealer.

## Blind Spot Information and Cross Traffic Alert System

Message	Message Indicator	Action
BLIS Low visibility See manual	Amber	Displayed when the blind spot information system and cross traffic alert system sensors are blocked. See <b>Blind Spot Information System</b> (page 161).
BLIS: X sensor fault Service required	Amber	Displayed when a fault with the system has occurred. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.
BLIS not available Trailer attached	Amber	Displayed when the system is not available due to trailer use. See <b>Blind Spot Information System</b> (page 161).
Cross Traffic Vehicle coming from X	Amber	Displayed when the system detects a vehicle. See <b>Blind Spot Information System</b> (page 161).
Cross Traffic Sensor blocked See manual	Amber	Displayed when the blind spot information system and cross traffic alert system sensors are blocked. See <b>Blind Spot Information System</b> (page 161).
Cross Traffic fault Service required	Amber	Displays when the system requires service due to a malfunction. Contact your authorized dealer.
Cross Traffic disabled Trailer attached	-	Displayed when the system is not available due to trailer use. See <b>Blind Spot Information System</b> (page 161).

# Information Displays

## Doors

Message	Message Indicator	Action
X door open	Red	Displays when the door(s) listed is not completely closed and the vehicle is moving.
	-	Displays when the door(s) listed is not completely closed.
Liftgate ajar	Red	Displays when the luggage compartment is not completely closed and the vehicle is moving.
	-	Displays when the luggage compartment is not completely closed.
Hood open	Red	Displays when the hood is not completely closed and the vehicle is moving.
	-	Displays when the hood is not completely closed.

## Engine

Message	Message Indicator	Action
Engine fault Service now	Amber	Engine service is required. Contact your authorized dealer.
High engine temperature Stop safely	Red	Displays when the engine temperature is too high. Stop the vehicle in a safe place and allow to engine to cool. If the problem persists, contact your authorized dealer. See <b>Engine Coolant Check</b> (page 219).
Power reduced to lower temperature	-	Displays when the engine has reduced power in order to help reduce high coolant temperature.



## Information Displays

### Hill Start Assist

Message	Message Indicator	Action
Hill start assist not available	Amber	Displays when hill start assist is not available. Contact your authorized dealer.

### Keyless Vehicle

Message	Message Indicator	Action
Ford KeyFree Key inside vehicle	Amber	Displays to remind you that the key is in the trunk. See <b>Keyless Starting</b> (page 123).
Ford KeyFree No key detected	-	Displayed if the key is not detected by the system. See <b>Keyless Starting</b> (page 123).
Switch ign. off Press ENGINE Start/Stop button	Red	Displayed as a reminder to turn off the vehicle. See <b>Keyless Starting</b> (page 123).
Press brake to start	-	Displayed as a reminder to press the brake while starting the vehicle.
Ford KeyFree Key not inside car	Red	Displayed when a valid key is not detected within the vehicle. See <b>Keyless Starting</b> (page 123).
Key Battery low Replace soon	-	Displays when the key battery is low. Change the battery as soon as possible. See <b>Remote Control</b> (page 45).

# Information Displays

## Lighting

Message	Message Indicator	Action
Brake lamp Bulb fault	-	Displays when the brake lamp bulb has burned out. Contact your authorized dealer.
Low beam Bulb fault	-	Displays when the low beam headlamp bulb has burned out. Contact your authorized dealer.
Headlamp fault Service required	Amber	Displays when an electrical system problem occurs with the headlamp system. Contact your authorized dealer.

## Maintenance

Message	Message Indicator	Action
Engine oil change due	-	Displays when the engine oil life is depleted and requires a change. See <b>Engine Oil Check</b> (page 218).
Brake fluid level low Service now	Red	Indicates the brake fluid level is low and the brake system should be inspected immediately. See <b>Brake Fluid Check</b> (page 222).

## MyKey

Message	Message Indicator	Action
MyKey active Drive Safely	-	Displays when MyKey is active.
MyKey Speed Limited to XX MPH/km/h	-	Displays when starting the vehicle and MyKey is in use and the MyKey speed limit is on.
MyKey Vehicle Near Top Speed	Amber	Displays when a MyKey is in use and the MyKey speed limit is on and the vehicle speed is approaching 80 mph (130 km/h).
MyKey Vehicle at Top Speed	Amber	Displays when a MyKey is in use and the MyKey speed limit is reached.

## Information Displays

Message	Message Indicator	Action
MyKey Check Speed Drive Safely	-	Displays when MyKey is active.
MyKey Buckle Up to Unmute Audio	-	Displays when a MyKey is in use and Belt-Minder is activated.
MyKey Park aid cannot be deactivated	-	Displays when a MyKey is in use and park aid is activated.
Key is Already a MyKey	-	Displays when trying to create a MyKey with a key already designated as a MyKey.
Hold key next to symbol on steering column	-	Displays when programming a MyKey.
MyKey ESC cannot be deactivated	-	Displays when programming a MyKey.

### Park Aid

Message	Message Indicator	Action
Parking aid malfunction Service required	Amber	Displays when the system has detected a condition that requires service. Contact your authorized dealer. See <b>Principle of Operation</b> (page 151).

### Park Brake

Message	Message Indicator	Action
Park brake applied	Red	Displays when the parking brake is set, the engine is running and the vehicle is driven more than 3 mph (5 km/h). If the warning stays on after the parking brake is released, contact your authorized dealer.

# Information Displays

## Power Steering

Message	Message Indicator	Action
Steering loss Stop safely	Red	The power steering system is not working. Stop the vehicle a safe place. Contact your authorized dealer.
Steering assist fault Service required	Amber	The power steering system is not working. Stop the vehicle a safe place. Contact your authorized dealer.
Steering fault Service now	Amber	The power steering system has detected a condition within the power steering system or passive entry or passive start system requires service. Contact your authorized dealer.

## Starting System

Message	Message Indicator	Action
Press brake to start	-	Displays when starting the vehicle as a reminder to apply the brake.
Cranking time exceeded	-	Displays when the vehicle fails to start.

## Transmission and Four-Wheel Drive

Message	Message Indicator	Action
Transmission fault Service now	-	See your authorized dealer.
Transmission overtem- perature Stop safely	Amber	The transmission is overheating and needs to cool. Stop in a safe place as soon as it's possible.
Transmission Service required	Amber	See your authorized dealer.
Transmission Hot Stop or Speed Up	-	Transmission is getting hot. Stop to let it cool or speed up.

## Information Displays

Message	Message Indicator	Action
Transmission Hot Wait ...	-	Transmission is hot. Wait as needed to let it cool.
4WD fault Service required	Amber	The system is not functioning correctly and defaulted to front-wheel drive. See your authorized dealer. See <b>Using Four-Wheel Drive</b> (page 140).
4WD Off	Amber	Displays when the system disables automatically and enters front-wheel drive only mode to protect driveline components. See <b>Using Four-Wheel Drive</b> (page 140).
4WD temporarily disabled	Amber	The system has overheated and defaulted to front-wheel drive. See <b>Using Four-Wheel Drive</b> (page 140).
4WD restored	-	Displays when system operation has been restored. See <b>Using Four-Wheel Drive</b> (page 140).
Transmission not in Park Select P	-	Displays as a reminder to shift into park.
Press brake to unlock gearshift lever	-	Displays to request the operator to apply the brake as needed by the transmission.
Gearshift lever unlocked	-	Displays when the transmission shift lever is unlocked and free to select gears.

# Information Displays

## Tire Pressure Monitoring System

Message	Message Indicator	Action
Low Tire Pressure	Amber	Displays when one or more tires on your vehicle have low tire pressure. See <b>Tire Pressure Monitoring System</b> (page 259).
Tire Pressure Monitor Fault	Amber	Displays when the tire pressure monitoring system is malfunctioning. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact your authorized dealer. See <b>Tire Pressure Monitoring System</b> (page 259).
Tire Pressure Sensor Fault	Amber	Displayed when a tire pressure sensor is malfunctioning, or your spare tire is in use. For more information on how the system operates under these conditions, see <b>Tire Pressure Monitoring System</b> (page 259). If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

## Traction Control

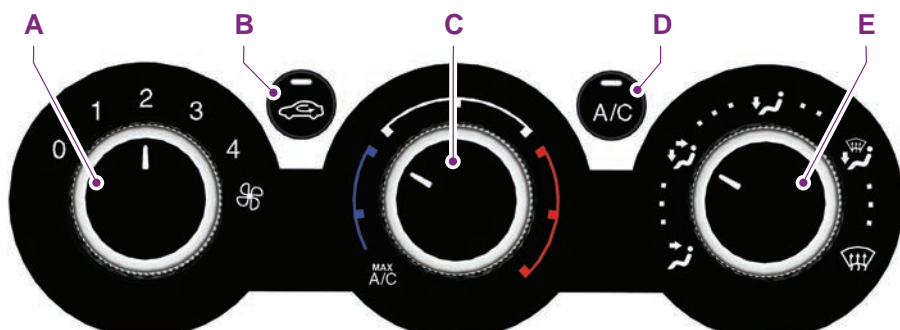
Message	Message Indicator	Action
Traction control off	-	Displays when the traction control system has been switched off. See <b>Using Traction Control</b> (page 148).

## Trailer

Message	Message Indicator	Action
Trailer Sway Reduce Speed	-	Displays when the trailer sway control has detected a trailer sway. See <b>Trailer Sway Control</b> (page 179).

# Climate Control

## MANUAL CLIMATE CONTROL

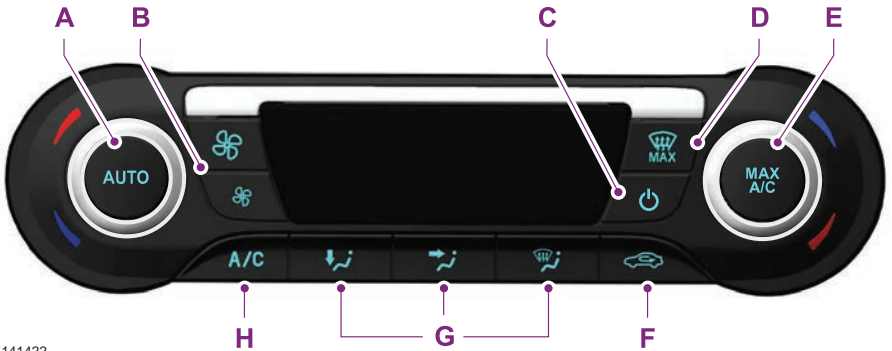


E141421

- A **Fan speed control:** Adjust the volume of air circulated in the vehicle.
- B **Recirculated air:** Press to switch between outside air and recirculated air. The air currently in the passenger compartment recirculates. This can reduce the time needed to cool the interior and reduce unwanted odors from entering your vehicle.
- C **Temperature control:** Controls the temperature of the air circulated in your vehicle.
- D **A/C:** Press to switch the air conditioning on or off. Air conditioning cools your vehicle using outside air. To improve the time to reach a comfortable temperature in hot weather, drive with the windows open until you feel cold air through the air vents.
- E **Air distribution control:** Adjust to turn airflow from the windshield, instrument panel, or footwell vents on or off. You can distribute air through the following combinations: windshield, windshield/floor, panel, panel/floor, and floor.

# Climate Control

## AUTOMATIC CLIMATE CONTROL



E141422

- A **AUTO:** Press to switch on automatic operation. Adjust to select the desired temperature. Fan speed, air distribution, air conditioning operation, and outside or recirculated air are automatically adjusted to heat or cool the vehicle to maintain the desired temperature. You can also switch off dual zone mode by pressing and holding for more than two seconds.
- B **Fan speed control:** Adjust the volume of air circulated in the vehicle.
- C **Power:** Press to switch the system on and off. When the system is off, it prevents outside air from entering the vehicle.
- D **MAX Defrost:** Press to switch on defrost. Outside air flows through the windshield vents, air conditioning automatically turns on, and fan automatically adjusts to the highest speed. You can also use this setting to defrost and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice. The heated rear window also automatically turns on when you select maximum defrost.  
**Note:** To prevent window fogging, you cannot select recirculated air when maximum defrost is on.
- E **MAX A/C:** Press for maximum cooling. Recirculated air flows through the instrument panel vents, air conditioning automatically turns on, and the fan automatically adjusts to the highest speed.
- F **Recirculated air:** Press to switch between outside air and recirculated air. The air currently in the passenger compartment recirculates. This can reduce the time needed to cool the interior and reduce unwanted odors from entering your vehicle.  
**Note:** Recirculated air may also turn on and off automatically in instrument panel or instrument panel and floor airflow modes during hot weather to improve cooling efficiency.

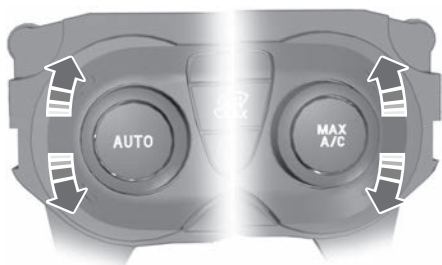


# Climate Control

- G **Air distribution control:** Adjust to turn airflow from the windshield, instrument panel, or footwell vents on or off. You can distribute air through the following combinations: windshield, windshield/floor, panel, panel/floor, and floor.
- H **A/C:** Press to switch the air conditioning on or off. Air conditioning cools your vehicle using outside air. To improve the time to reach a comfortable temperature in hot weather, drive with the windows open until you feel cold air through the air vents.

**Note:** In certain conditions (for example, maximum defrost), the air conditioning compressor may continue to operate even though the air conditioning is switched off.

## Temperature Control



E133115

You can set the temperature between 61°F (16°C) and 86°F (30°C) in steps of 1°F (0.5°C). In position **LO**, 59°F (15°C), the system switches to permanent cooling. In position **HI**, 86°F (30°C), the system switches to permanent heating.

### Single Zone Temperature Control

In this mode, the climate control system links the temperature settings for both the driver's side and passenger's side. If you adjust the setting using the rotary control on the driver's side, the system adjusts the temperature to the same setting on the passenger's side.

### Dual Zone Temperature Control

Select a temperature for the passenger's side using the rotary control on the passenger's side. Single zone temperature control automatically switches off. The temperature on the driver's side remains unchanged. You can now adjust the driver's side and passenger's side temperatures independently. The display shows the temperature settings for each side.

### Switching Back to Single Zone Temperature Control

Press and hold the **AUTO** button. The passenger side temperature is adjusted to the driver side temperature setting.

## HINTS ON CONTROLLING THE INTERIOR CLIMATE

### General Hints

**Note:** Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to fog up.

**Note:** You may feel a small amount of air from the floor air vents regardless of the air distribution setting.

**Note:** To reduce humidity build-up inside your vehicle, do not drive with the system switched off or with recirculated air always switched on.

# Climate Control

**Note:** Do not place objects under the front seats as this may interfere with the airflow to the rear seats.

**Note:** Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.

## Manual Climate Control

**Note:** To reduce fogging of the windshield during humid weather, adjust the air distribution control to the windshield air vents position. Increase the temperature and fan speed to improve clearing, if required.

## Automatic Climate Control

**Note:** Adjusting the settings when your vehicle interior is extremely hot or cold is not necessary. The system automatically adjusts to heat or cool the cabin to your selected temperature as quickly as possible. For the system to function efficiently, the instrument panel and side air vents should be fully open.

**Note:** At low ambient temperatures with **AUTO** selected, the system directs airflow to the windshield and side window vents and fan may run at a slow speed until the engine warms up.

## Heating the Interior Quickly

	Vehicle with manual climate control	Vehicle with automatic climate control
1	Adjust the fan speed to the highest speed setting.	Press the high fan speed button.
2	Adjust the temperature control to the highest setting.	Adjust the temperature control to the highest setting.
3	Adjust the air distribution control to the floor air vents position.	Press the floor button to distribute air to the floor air vents.

## Recommended Settings for Heating

	Vehicle with manual climate control	Vehicle with automatic climate control
1	Adjust the fan speed to the second speed setting.	Press the <b>AUTO</b> button.
2	Adjust the temperature control to the midway point of the hot settings.	Set the temperature to 72°F (22°C).
3	Adjust the air distribution control to the floor and windshield air vents position.	

# Climate Control

## Cooling the Interior Quickly

	Vehicle with manual climate control	Vehicle with automatic climate control
1	Adjust the fan speed to the highest speed setting.	Press the <b>MAX A/C</b> button.
2	Adjust the temperature control to the MAX A/C position.	
3	Adjust the air distribution control to the instrument panel air vents position.	

## Recommended Settings for Cooling

	Vehicle with manual climate control	Vehicle with automatic climate control
1	Adjust the fan speed to the second speed setting.	Press the <b>AUTO</b> button.
2	Adjust the temperature control to the midway point of the cold settings.	Set the temperature to 72°F (22°C).
3	Adjust the air distribution control to the instrument panel air vents position.	

## Vehicle Stationary for Extended Periods during Extreme High Ambient Temperatures

	Vehicle with manual climate control	Vehicle with automatic climate control
1	Apply the parking brake.	Apply the parking brake.
2	Move the transmission selector lever to position <b>P</b> .	Move the transmission selector lever to position <b>P</b> .
3	Adjust the temperature control to the MAX A/C position.	Press the <b>MAX A/C</b> button.
4	Adjust the fan speed to the lowest speed setting.	

# Climate Control

## Side Window Defogging in Cold Weather

	Vehicle with manual climate control	Vehicle with automatic climate control
1	Adjust the air distribution control to the instrument panel and floor air vents positions.	Press the windshield defrosting and defogging button.
2	Press the <b>A/C</b> button.	Adjust the temperature control to the desired setting.
3	Adjust the temperature control to the desired setting.	
4	Adjust the fan speed to the highest setting.	
5	Direct the instrument panel side air vents toward the side windows.	
6	Close the center instrument panel vents.	

### Maximum Cooling Performance in Instrument Panel or Instrument Panel and Footwell Positions

1. Adjust the temperature control to the lowest setting.
2. Press the **A/C** and recirculated air buttons.
3. Adjust the fan speed to the highest setting initially and then adjust it to suit the desired comfort level.

## HEATED WINDOWS AND MIRRORS

### Heated Rear Window

**Note:** Make sure the engine is running before operating the heated windows.



The heated rear window button is below the climate control unit.

Press the button to clear the heated rear window of thin ice and fog. The heated rear window will automatically turn off after a short period of time. Start the engine before you switch the heated rear window on.

Do not use razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window. The vehicle warranty does not cover damage caused to the heated rear window grid lines.

### Heated Exterior Mirror

When you switch the heated rear window on, the heated exterior mirrors will automatically turn on.

**Note:** Do not remove ice from the mirrors with a scraper or adjust the mirror glass when it is frozen in place.

**Note:** Do not clean the mirror housing or glass with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products.

# Climate Control

## CABIN AIR FILTER

Your vehicle is equipped with a cabin air filter, which gives you and your passengers the following benefits:

- It improves your driving comfort by reducing particle concentration.
- It improves the interior compartment cleanliness.
- It protects the climate control components from particle deposits.

Your cabin air filter is located under the instrument panel in the passenger footwell area.

**Note:** *Make sure you have a cabin air filter installed at all times. This prevents foreign objects from entering the system. Running the system without a filter in place could result in degradation or damage to the system.*

Replace the filter at regular intervals. See **Maintenance** (page 213).

For additional cabin air filter information, or to replace the filter, see an authorized dealer.

## REMOTE START (If Equipped)

The climate control system adjusts the cabin temperature during remote start.

You cannot adjust the system during remote start operation. Switch on the ignition to return the system to its previous settings. You can now make adjustments. You need to switch on certain vehicle-dependent features, such as:

- Heated seats.
- Heated mirrors.
- Heated rear window.

You can adjust the settings using the information display controls. See **Information Displays** (page 87).

## Automatic Settings

You can set the climate control to operate in AUTO mode through the information display setting: Remote Start > Climate Control > Heater-A/C > Auto. The climate control system automatically sets the interior temperature to 72°F (22°C).

In hot weather, the system is set to 72°F (22°C). Cooled seats are set to high (if available, and selected to AUTO in the information display).

In moderate weather, the system either heats or cools (based on previous settings). The rear defroster, heated mirrors and heated or cooled seats do not automatically turn on.

In cold weather, the system is set to 72°F (22°C). The rear defroster and heated mirrors automatically turn on.

## Last Settings

You can set the climate control to operate using the last climate control settings through the information display setting: Remote Start > Climate Control > Heater-A/C > Last Settings. The climate control system automatically uses the settings last selected before you turned off the vehicle.


## Heated and Cooled Devices


The climate control system controls other heated and cooled devices inside the vehicle. You can switch these devices on (if available, and selected to AUTO in the information displays) during remote start. Heated devices typically switch on during cold weather, and cooled devices during hot weather.


# Seats

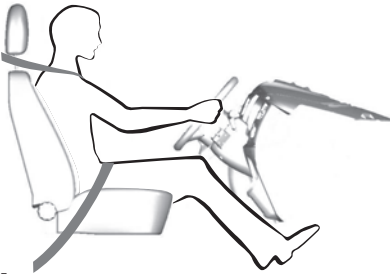
## SITTING IN THE CORRECT POSITION

### WARNINGS

 Sitting improperly, out of position or with the seatback reclined too far can take weight off the seat cushion and affect the decision of the passenger sensing system, resulting in serious injury or death in the event of a crash. Always sit upright against your seat back, with your feet on the floor.

 Do not recline the seatback as this can cause the occupant to slide under the safety belt, resulting in serious injury in the event of a crash.

 Do not place objects higher than the seatback to reduce the risk of serious injury in the event of a crash or during heavy braking.



E68595

When you use them properly, the seat, head restraint, safety belt and airbags will provide optimum protection in the event of a crash.


We recommend that you follow these guidelines:


- Sit in an upright position with the base of your spine as far back as possible.
- Do not recline the seatback more than 30 degrees.
- Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head and as far forward as possible. Make sure that you remain comfortable.
- Keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. We recommend a minimum of 10 in (25 cm) between your breastbone and the airbag cover.
- Hold the steering wheel with your arms slightly bent.
- Bend your legs slightly so that you can press the pedals fully.
- Position the shoulder strap of the safety belt over the center of your shoulder and position the lap strap tightly across your hips.

Make sure that your driving position is comfortable and that you can maintain full control of your vehicle.

## HEAD RESTRAINTS

### WARNINGS

 Fully adjust the head restraint before you sit in or operate your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraint when your vehicle is moving.

 The head restraint is a safety device. Whenever possible it should be installed and properly adjusted when the seat is occupied. An improperly adjusted head restraint may not adequately protect an occupant during an impact from the rear.

# Seats

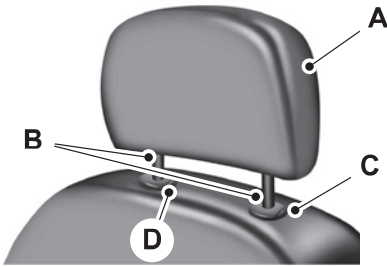
## WARNINGS



Install the head restraint properly to help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash.

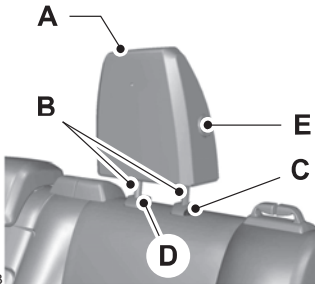
**Note:** Adjust the seatback to an upright driving position before adjusting the head restraint. Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head and as far forward as possible. Make sure that you remain comfortable. If you are extremely tall, adjust the head restraint to its highest position.

### Front seat head restraint



E138642

### Rear seat outboard head restraints

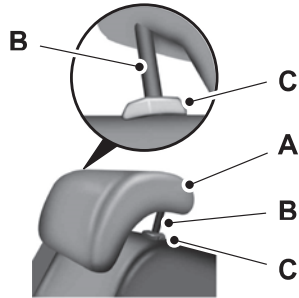


E138643

The head restraints consist of:

- A An energy absorbing head restraint.
- B Two steel stems.
- C Guide sleeve adjust and unlock button.
- D Guide sleeve unlock and remove button.
- E Fold button

### Rear center head restraint



E187325

The rear center head restraint consists of:

- A An energy absorbing head restraint.
- B Two steel stems.
- C Guide sleeve unlock and remove button.

## Adjusting the Head Restraint

### Raising the Head Restraint

Pull the head restraint up.

### Lowering the Head Restraint

1. Press and hold button C.
2. Push the head restraint down.

# Seats

## Removing the Head Restraint

1. Pull the head restraint up until it reaches its highest position.
2. Press and hold buttons C and D.
3. Pull the head restraint up.

## Installing the Head Restraint

Align the steel stems into the guide sleeves and push the head restraint down until it locks.

## Folding the Head Restraint

1. Press and hold button E.
2. Pull it back up to reset.

## Tilting Head Restraints

The front head restraints tilt for extra comfort. To tilt the head restraint, do the following:



E144727

1. Adjust the seatback to an upright driving or riding position.
2. Pivot the head restraint forward toward your head to the desired position.

After the head restraint reaches the forward-most tilt position, pivot it forward again to release it to the rearward, un-tilted position.

## MANUAL SEATS

### WARNING



Do not adjust the driver seat or seatback when your vehicle is moving.

## Moving the Seat Backward and Forward



E163870

### WARNING

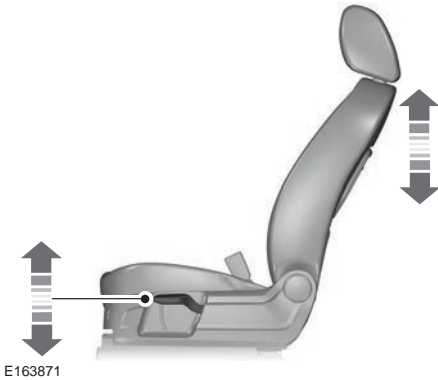


Rock the seat backward and forward after releasing the lever to make sure that it is fully engaged.

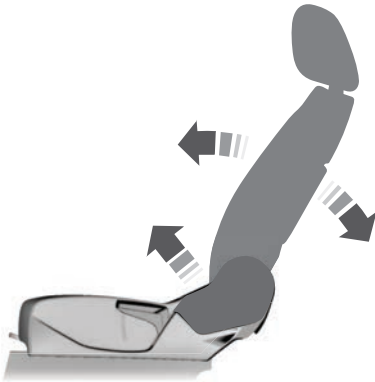


# Seats

## Adjusting the Height of the Driver Seat



## Recline Adjustment



E163872

### WARNING

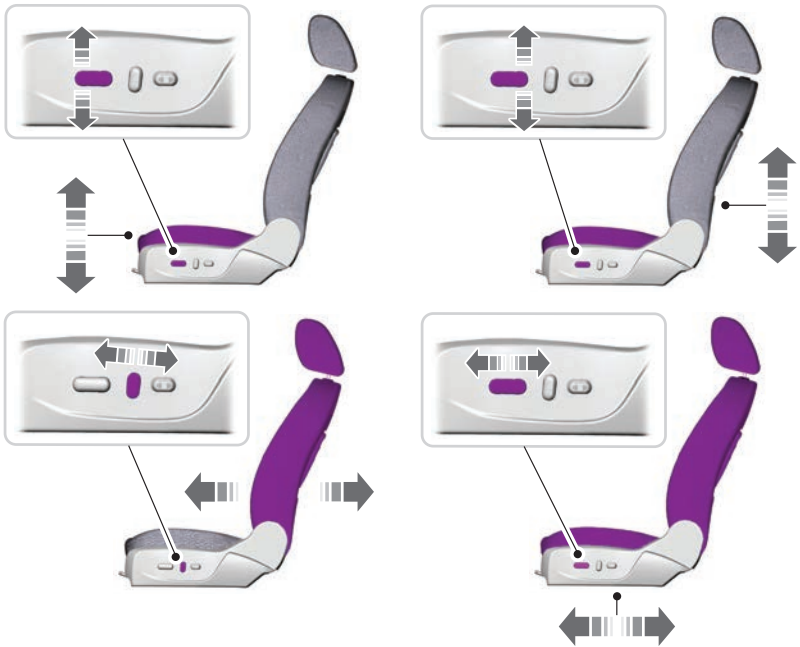
- ⚠ Do not place cargo or any objects behind the seatback before returning it to the original position. Pull on the seatback to make sure that it has fully latched after returning the seatback to its original position. An unlatched seat may become dangerous if you stop suddenly or have a crash.

### POWER SEATS (If Equipped)

#### WARNINGS

- ⚠ Do not adjust the driver's seat or seatback when your vehicle is moving. Adjusting your seatback while your vehicle is in motion may cause loss of control of your vehicle.
- ⚠ Do not place cargo or any objects behind the seatback before returning it to the original position.

# Seats



E138647

# Seats

## Power Lumbar (If Equipped)



E138648

## MEMORY FUNCTION (If Equipped)

### WARNINGS



Before activating the seat memory, make sure that the area immediately surrounding the seat is clear of obstructions and that all occupants are clear of moving parts.



Do not use the memory function when your vehicle is moving.

This feature will automatically recall the position of the driver seat and power mirrors. The memory control is located on the driver door. You can save up to three memory position presets.



E142554

## Saving a PreSet Position

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Adjust the seat and exterior mirrors to your desired position.
3. Press and hold the desired memory button until you hear a single tone.

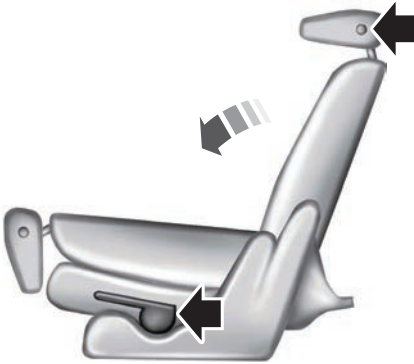
## Recalling a Pre-Set Position

Press and release the memory button associated with your desired driving position. The seat and mirrors will move to the position stored for that preset.

**Note:** Pressing any driver seat control, any of the memory buttons or any mirror control switch will stop seat movement during a recall. You cannot use the seat memory recall while the vehicle is moving.

# Seats

## REAR SEATS



E155554

### Folding the Seatback

With the seat empty, pull the lever up to fold the seatback forward. You may need to fold the outboard head restraints and lower the center head restraint first.

### Unfolding the Seatback


Pull the seatback upward to unfold the seatback.

### Recline Adjustment (If Equipped)

With the seat occupied, pull the lever up to recline the seatback.

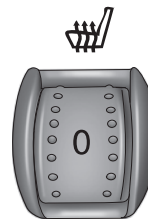
## HEATED SEATS (If Equipped)

### WARNING

 People who are unable to feel pain to their skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion or other physical conditions, must exercise care when using the heated seat. The heated seat may cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time. Do not place anything on the seat that insulates against heat, such as a blanket or cushion. This may cause the heated seat to overheat. Do not puncture the seat with pins, needles or other pointed objects. This may damage the heating element which may cause the heated seat to overheat. An overheated seat may cause serious personal injury.

Do not do the following:

- Place heavy objects on the seat.
- Operate the heated seat if water or any other liquid is spilled on the seat. Allow the seat to dry thoroughly.
- Operate the heated seats unless the engine is running. Doing so can cause the battery to lose charge.



E138653

Adjust the control to the desired heat setting.

# Seats

---

## REAR SEAT ARMREST (If Equipped)



E138656

Fold the armrest down to use the armrest and cupholder.

# Universal Garage Door Opener (If Equipped)

## HomeLink Wireless Control System

### WARNINGS



Make sure that the garage door and security device are free from obstruction when you are programming. Do not program the system with the vehicle in the garage.



Do not use the system with any garage door opener that does not have the safety stop and reverse feature as required by U.S. Federal Safety Standards (this includes any garage door opener manufactured before April 1, 1982). A garage door opener which cannot detect an object, signaling the door to stop and reverse, does not meet current federal safety standards. Using a garage door opener without these features increases the risk of serious injury or death.

**Note:** Make sure you keep the original remote control transmitter for use in other vehicles as well as for future system programming.

**Note:** We recommend that upon the sale or lease termination of your vehicle, you erase the programmed function buttons for security reasons. See **Erasing the Function Button Codes**.

**Note:** You can program a maximum of three devices. To change or replace any of the three devices after it has been initially programmed, you must first erase the current settings. See **Erasing the Function Button Codes**.



E142657

The universal garage door opener replaces the common hand-held garage door opener with a three-button transmitter that is integrated into the driver's sun visor.

The system includes two primary features, a garage door opener and a platform for remote activation of devices within the home. As well as being programmed for garage doors, the system transmitter can be programmed to operate entry gate operators, security systems, entry door locks and home or office lighting.

Additional system information can be found online at [www.homelink.com](http://www.homelink.com), [www.youtube.com/HomeLinkGentex](http://www.youtube.com/HomeLinkGentex) or by calling the toll-free help line on 1-800-355-3515.

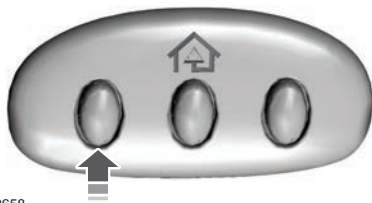
### In-Vehicle Programming

This process is to program your hand-held transmitter and your in-vehicle HomeLink button.

**Note:** The programming steps below assume you will be programming HomeLink that was not previously programmed.

**Note:** Put a new battery in the hand-held transmitter. This will ensure quicker training and accurate transmission of the radio-frequency signal.

## Universal Garage Door Opener (If Equipped)



E142658

1. With your vehicle parked outside of the garage, turn your ignition to the **on** position, but do not start your vehicle.
2. Hold your hand-held garage door transmitter 2–6 in (5–14 cm) away from the HomeLink button you want to program.
3. Using both hands, simultaneously, press and hold the desired HomeLink button and the hand-held transmitter button. DO NOT release either one until the HomeLink indicator light flashes slowly and then rapidly. When the indicator light flashes rapidly, both buttons may be released. The rapid flashing indicates successful training.

**Note:** You may need to use a different method if you live in Canada or have difficulties programming your gate operator or garage door opener. See **Gate Operator / Canadian Programming**.

4. Press and hold the HomeLink button you programmed for two seconds, then release. You may need to do this twice to activate the door. If your garage door does not operate, watch the HomeLink indicator light.

**If the indicator light stays on, the programming is complete. No further action is needed.**

If the indicator light flashes rapidly for 2 seconds and then turns to a constant light, the HomeLink button is not programmed yet. See **Programming Your Garage Door Opener Motor**.

To program additional buttons, repeat Steps 1 – 4.

For questions or comments, please contact HomeLink at [www.homelink.com](http://www.homelink.com), [www.youtube.com/HomeLinkGentex](http://www.youtube.com/HomeLinkGentex) or 1-800-355-3515.

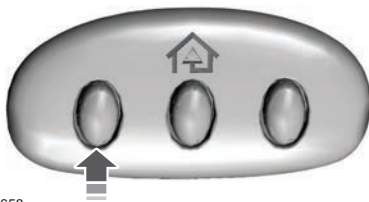
### Programming Your Garage Door Opener Motor

**Note:** You may need a ladder to reach the unit and you may need to remove the cover or lamp lens on your garage door opener.



E142659

1. Press the learn button on the garage door opener motor and then you have 30 seconds to complete the next two steps.
2. Return to your vehicle.



E142658

3. Press and hold the function button you want to program for 2 seconds, then release. Repeat this step. Depending on your brand of garage door opener, you may need to repeat this sequence a third time.

# Universal Garage Door Opener (If Equipped)

## Gate Operator / Canadian Programming

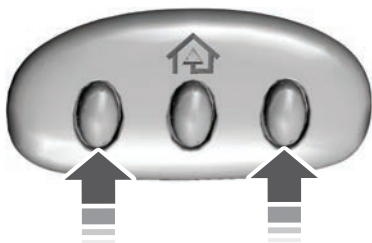
Canadian radio-frequency laws require transmitter signals to “time-out” (or quit) after several seconds of transmission – which may not be long enough for HomeLink to pick up the signal during programming. Similar to this Canadian law, some U.S. gate operators are designed to “time-out” in the same manner.

**Note:** *If programming a garage door opener or gate operator, it is advised to unplug the device during the “cycling” process to prevent possible overheating.*

1. Press and hold the HomeLink button while you press and release, **every two seconds**, your hand-held transmitter until the HomeLink indicator light changes from a slow to a rapidly blinking light.
2. Release both the HomeLink and hand-held transmitter buttons.
3. Continue programing HomeLink. See **In-Vehicle Programming**.

## Erasing the Function Button Codes

**Note:** *You cannot erase individual buttons.*



E142660

1. Press and hold the outer two function buttons simultaneously for approximately 20 seconds until the indicator lights above the buttons flash rapidly.
2. When the indicator lights flash, release the buttons. The codes for all buttons are erased.

## Reprogramming a Single Button

To program a device to a previously trained button, follow these steps:

1. Press and hold the desired button. Do NOT release the button.
2. The indicator light will begin to flash after 20 seconds. Without releasing the button, follow Step 1 in the Programming section.

For questions or comments, contact HomeLink at [www.homelink.com](http://www.homelink.com), [www.youtube.com/HomeLinkGentex](http://www.youtube.com/HomeLinkGentex) or 1-800-355-3515.

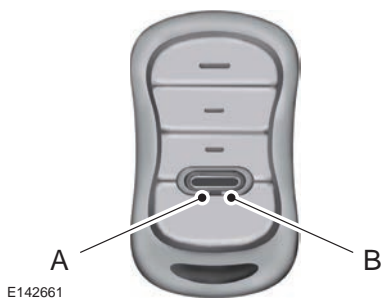
## Programming to a Genie Intellicode 2 Garage Door Opener

**Note:** *The Genie Intellicode 2 transmitter must already be programmed to operate with the garage door opener.*

**Note:** *To program HomeLink to the transmitter you must first put the transmitter into programming mode.*



## Universal Garage Door Opener (If Equipped)



- A. Red indicator light
- B. Green indicator light

1. Press and hold one of the buttons on the hand-held transmitter for 10 seconds. The indicator light will change from green to red and green.
2. Press the same button twice to confirm the change to programming mode. If done properly the indicator light will appear red.
3. Hold the transmitter within 1–3 inches (2–8 centimeters) of the button on the visor you want to program.
4. Press and hold both the programmed Genie button on the hand-held transmitter and the button you want to program. The indicator light on the visor will flash rapidly when the programming is successful.

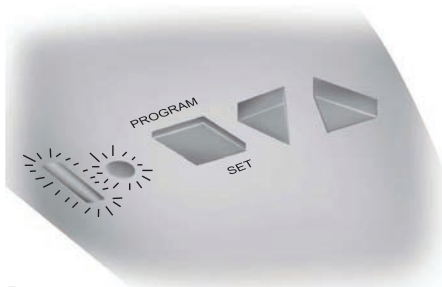
**Note:** *The Genie transmitter will transmit for up to 30 seconds. If HomeLink does not program within 30 seconds the Genie transmitter will need to be pressed again. If the Genie transmitter indicator light displays green and red, release the button until the indicator light turns off before pressing the button again.*

Once HomeLink has been programmed successfully, the Genie transmitter must be changed out of program mode. To do this:

1. Press and hold the previously programmed Genie button on the hand-held transmitter for 10 seconds. The indicator light will change from red to red and green.
2. Press the same button twice to confirm the change. If done correctly the indicator light will turn green.

### Programming HomeLink to the Genie Intellicode Garage Door Opener Motor

**Note:** *You may need a ladder to access the garage door opener motor.*



1. Press and hold the program button on the garage door opener motor until both blue indicator lights turn on.
2. Release the program button. Only the smaller round indicator light should be on.
3. Press and release the program button. The larger purple indicator light will flash.

**Note:** *The next two steps must be completed in 30 seconds.*

4. Press and release the Genie Intellicode 2 hand-held transmitter's previously programmed button. Both indicator lights on the garage door opener motor unit should now flash purple.

## Universal Garage Door Opener (If Equipped)

---

5. Press and hold the previously programmed button on the visor for 2 seconds. Repeat this step up to 3 times until the garage door moves.

Programming is now complete.

### **Clearing a HomeLink Device**

To erase programming from the three HomeLink buttons press and hold the two outer HomeLink buttons until the indicator light begins to flash. The indicator light will begin flashing in 10 to 20 seconds, at which time both buttons should be released. Programming has now been erased, and the indicator light should blink slowly to indicate the device is in train mode when any of the three HomeLink buttons are pressed.

### **FCC and RSS-210 Industry Canada Compliance**

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Changes or modifications to your device not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance can void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

# Auxiliary Power Points

## 12 Volt DC Power Point

### WARNINGS



Do not plug optional electrical accessories into the cigar lighter socket. Incorrect use of the cigar lighter can cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty, and can result in fire or serious injury.



Do not use a power point for operating a cigar lighter. Incorrect use of the power points can cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty, and can result in fire or serious injury.

**Note:** When you switch the ignition on, you can use the socket to power 12 volt appliances with a maximum current rating of 15 amps.

If the power supply does not work after you switch the ignition off, switch the ignition on.

**Note:** Do not hang any accessory from the accessory plug.

**Note:** Do not use the power point over the vehicle capacity of 12 volt DC 180 watts or a fuse may blow.

**Note:** Always keep the power point caps closed when not in use.

Do not insert objects other than an accessory plug into the power point. This will damage the power point and blow the fuse.

Run the vehicle for full capacity use of the power point.

To prevent the battery from running out of charge:

- Do not use the power point longer than necessary when the vehicle is not running.
- Do not leave devices plugged in overnight or when you park your vehicle for extended periods.

## Locations

Power points may be in the following locations:

- On the front of the center console.
- Inside the center console.
- On the rear of the center console.
- Inside the luggage compartment.

## 110 Volt AC Power Point (If Equipped)

### WARNING



Do not keep electrical devices plugged in the power point whenever the device is not in use. Do not use any extension cord with the 110 volt AC power point, since it will defeat the safety protection design. Doing so may cause the power point to overload due to powering multiple devices that can reach beyond the 150 watt load limit and could result in fire or serious injury.

**Note:** The power point will turn off when the ignition is switched off or the battery voltage drops below 11 volts.



E143941

Use the power point for powering electric devices that require up to 150 watts. It is on the rear of the center console.

# Auxiliary Power Points

---

When the indicator light on the power point is:

- On: The power point is working, the ignition is on and a device is plugged in.
- Off: The power point is off, the ignition is off or no device is plugged in.
- Flashing: The power point is in fault mode.

The power outlet temporarily turns off power when in fault mode if the device exceeds the 150 watt limit. Unplug your device and switch the ignition off. Switch the ignition back on, but do not plug your device back in. Let the system cool off and switch the ignition off to reset the fault mode. Switch the ignition back on and make sure the indicator light remains on.

Do not use the power point for certain electric devices, including:

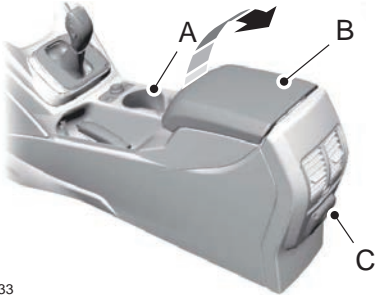
- Cathode-ray, tube-type televisions.
- Motor loads, such as vacuum cleaners, electric saws and other electric power tools or compressor-driven refrigerators.
- Measuring devices, which process precise data, such as medical equipment or measuring equipment.
- Other appliances requiring an extremely stable power supply such as microcomputer-controlled electric blankets or touch-sensor lamps.

# Storage Compartments

## CENTER CONSOLE

Stow items in the cup holder carefully as items may become loose during hard braking, acceleration or crashes, including hot drinks which may spill.

Available console features include:



E142433

- A Cup holder.
- B Storage compartment with auxiliary power point, auxiliary input jack, USB port and media hub.
- C Auxiliary power point.

## OVERHEAD CONSOLE



E131605

Press near the rear edge of the door to open it.

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

## GENERAL INFORMATION

### WARNINGS



Extended idling at high engine speeds can produce very high temperatures in the engine and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire or other damage.



Do not park, idle or drive your vehicle on dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire.



Do not start the engine in a closed garage or in other enclosed areas. Exhaust fumes can be toxic. Always open the garage door before you start the engine.



If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer immediately. Do not drive your vehicle if you smell exhaust fumes.

If you disconnect the battery, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics for approximately 5 miles (8 kilometers) after you reconnect it. This is because the engine management system must realign itself with the engine. You can disregard any unusual driving characteristics during this period.

The powertrain control system meets all Canadian interference-causing equipment standard requirements regulating the impulse electrical field or radio noise.

When you start the engine, avoid pressing the accelerator pedal before and during operation. Only use the accelerator pedal when you have difficulty starting the engine.

## IGNITION SWITCH (If Equipped)



E72128

**O** (off) - The ignition is off.

**Note:** When you switch the ignition off and leave your vehicle, do not leave your key in the ignition. This could cause your vehicle battery to lose charge.

**I** (accessory) - Allows the electrical accessories, such as the radio, to operate while the engine is not running.

**Note:** Do not leave the ignition key in this position for too long. This could cause your vehicle battery to lose charge.

**II** (on) - All electrical circuits are operational and the warning lamps and indicators illuminate.

**III** (start) - cranks the engine.

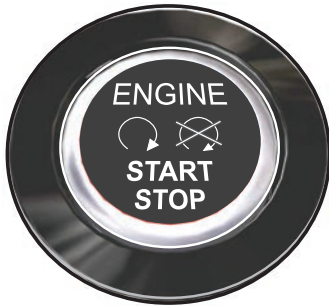
## KEYLESS STARTING (If Equipped)

**Note:** The keyless starting system may not function if the key is close to metal objects or electronic devices such as cellular phones

**Note:** A valid key must be located inside your vehicle to switch the ignition on and start the engine.

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

## Ignition Modes



E142555

The keyless starting system has three modes:

**Off:** Turns the ignition off.

- Without applying the brake pedal, press and release the button once when the ignition is in the on mode, or when the engine is running but the vehicle is not moving.

**On:** All electrical circuits are operational and the warning lamps and indicators illuminate.

- Without applying the brake pedal, press and release the button once.

**Start:** Starts the engine.

- Press the brake pedal, and then press and hold the button until the engine starts.

## STARTING A GASOLINE ENGINE

When you start the engine, the idle speed increases, this helps to warm up the engine. If the engine idle speed does not slow down automatically, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

Before starting the engine check the following:

- Make sure all occupants have fastened their safety belts.
- Make sure the headlamps and electrical accessories are off.
- Make sure the parking brake is on.
- Move the transmission selector lever to position **P**.
- Turn the ignition key to position **II**. If your vehicle is equipped with a keyless ignition, see the following instructions.

## Vehicles with an Ignition Key

**Note:** Do not touch the accelerator pedal.

- Fully press the brake pedal.
- Turn the key to position **III** to start the engine. Release the key when the engine starts.

**Note:** The engine may continue cranking for up to 15 seconds or until it starts.

**Note:** If you cannot start the engine on the first try, wait for a short period and try again.

## Vehicles with Keyless Start

**Note:** Do not touch the accelerator pedal.

- Fully press the brake pedal.
- Press the button.

The system does not function if:

- The key frequencies are jammed.
- The key battery has no charge.

If you are unable to start the engine, do the following:

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

## 3-button remote



E145988

## 5-button remote



E142874

1. Hold the key next to the symbol on the steering column.
2. With the key in this position, you can use the start button to switch the ignition on and start your vehicle.

## Fast Restart

The fast restart feature allows you to restart the engine within 20 seconds of switching it off, even if a valid key is not present.

Within 20 seconds of switching the engine off, press the brake pedal and press the button. After 20 seconds have expired, you can no longer restart the engine without the key present inside your vehicle.

Once the engine has started, it remains running until you press the button, even if the system does not detect a valid key. If you open and close a door while the engine is running, the system searches for a valid key. You cannot restart the engine if the system does not detect a valid key within 20 seconds.

## Failure to Start

If you cannot start the engine after three attempts, wait 10 seconds and follow this procedure:

1. Fully press the brake pedal.
2. Fully press the accelerator pedal and hold it there.
3. Start the engine.

## Automatic Engine Shutdown

If your vehicle is equipped with a keyless ignition, it has a feature that automatically shuts down the engine if it has been idling for an extended period. The ignition also turns off in order to save battery power. Before the engine shuts down, a message appears in the information display showing a timer counting down from 30 seconds. If you do not intervene within 30 seconds, the engine shuts down. Another message appears in the information display to inform you that the engine has shut down in order to save fuel. Start your vehicle as you normally do.

## Automatic Engine Shutdown Override

**Note:** *You cannot permanently switch off the automatic engine shutdown feature. When you switch it off temporarily, it turns on at the next ignition cycle.*



# Starting and Stopping the Engine

You can stop the engine shutdown, or reset the timer, at any point before the 30-second countdown has expired by doing any of the following:

- You can reset the timer by interacting with your vehicle (such as pressing the brake pedal or accelerator pedal).
- You can temporarily switch off the shutdown feature any time the ignition is on (for the current ignition cycle only). Use the information display to do so. See **Information Displays** (page 87).
- During the countdown before engine shutdown, you are prompted to press OK or RESET (depending on your type of information display) to temporarily switch the feature off (for the current ignition cycle only).

## Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Stationary

### Vehicles with an Ignition Key

1. Move the transmission selector lever to position **P**.
2. Turn the key to position **O**.
3. Apply the parking brake.

### Vehicles with Keyless Start

1. Move the transmission selector lever to position **P**.
2. Press the button once.
3. Apply the parking brake.

**Note:** This switches off the ignition, all electrical circuits, warning lamps and indicators.

## Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Moving

### WARNING



Switching off the engine when the vehicle is still moving will result in a loss of brake and steering assistance.

The steering will not lock, but higher effort will be required. When the ignition is switched off, some electrical circuits, including air bags, warning lamps and indicators may also be off. If the ignition was turned off accidentally, you can shift into neutral (N) and re-start the engine.

### Vehicles with an Ignition Key

1. Move the transmission selector lever to position **N** and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop.
2. When your vehicle has stopped, move the transmission selector lever to position **P** and turn the key to position **O**.
3. Apply the parking brake.

### Vehicles with Keyless Start

1. Move the transmission selector lever to position **N** and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop.
2. When your vehicle has stopped, move the transmission selector lever to position **P**.
3. Press and hold the button for one second, or press it three times within two seconds.
4. Apply the parking brake.

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

## Guarding Against Exhaust Fumes

### WARNING



If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle checked by your authorized dealer immediately. Do not drive your vehicle if you smell exhaust fumes. Carbon monoxide is present in exhaust fumes. Take precautions to avoid its dangerous effects.

## Important Ventilating Information

If you stop your vehicle and leave the engine idling for long periods of time, we recommend that you do one of the following:

- Open the windows at least 1 inch (2.5 centimeters)
- Set your climate control to outside air.

## ENGINE BLOCK HEATER (if

Equipped)

### WARNINGS



Failure to follow engine block heater instructions could result in property damage or serious personal injury.



Do not use your heater with ungrounded electrical systems or two-pronged adapters. There is a risk of electrical shock.



Do not fully close the hood, or allow it to drop under its own weight when using the engine block heater. This could damage the power cable and may cause an electrical short resulting in fire, injury and property damage.

**Note:** The heater is most effective when outdoor temperatures are below 0°F (-18°C).

The heater acts as a starting aid by warming the engine coolant. This allows the climate control system to respond quickly. The equipment includes a heater element (installed in the engine block) and a wire harness. You can connect the system to a grounded 120-volt AC electrical source.

We recommend that you do the following for a safe and correct operation:

- Use a 16-gauge outdoor extension cord that is product certified by Underwriter's Laboratory (UL) or Canadian Standards Association (CSA). This extension cord must be suitable for use outdoors, in cold temperatures, and be clearly marked Suitable for Use with Outdoor Appliances. Do not use an indoor extension cord outdoors. This could result in an electric shock or become a fire hazard.
- Use as short an extension cord as possible.
- Do not use multiple extension cords.
- Make sure that when in operation, the extension cord plug and heater cord plug connections are free and clear of water. This could cause an electric shock or fire.
- Make sure your vehicle is parked in a clean area, clear of combustibles.
- Make sure the heater, heater cord and extension cord are firmly connected.
- Check for heat anywhere in the electrical hookup once the system has been operating for approximately 30 minutes.

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

---

- Make sure the system is unplugged and properly stowed before starting and driving your vehicle. Make sure the protective cover seals the prongs of the block heater cord plug when not in use.
- Make sure the heater system is checked for proper operation before winter.

## Using the Engine Block Heater

Make sure the receptacle terminals are clean and dry prior to use. Clean them with a dry cloth if necessary.

The heater uses 0.4 to 1.0 kilowatt-hours of energy per hour of use. The system does not have a thermostat. It achieves maximum temperature after approximately three hours of operation. Using the heater longer than three hours does not improve system performance and unnecessarily uses electricity.

# Fuel and Refueling

## SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

### WARNINGS



Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.



The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler inlet, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.



Fuels can cause serious injury or death if misused or mishandled.



Flow of fuel through a fuel pump nozzle can produce static electricity. This can cause a fire if you are filling an ungrounded fuel container.



Fuel may contain benzene, which is a cancer-causing agent.



When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.

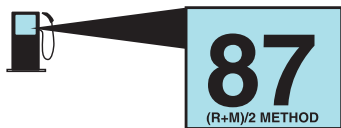
Observe the following guidelines when handling automotive fuel:

- Extinguish all smoking materials and any open flames before refueling your vehicle.
- Always turn off the vehicle before refueling.
- Automotive fuels can be harmful or fatal if swallowed. Fuel such as gasoline is highly toxic and if swallowed can cause death or permanent injury. If fuel is swallowed, call a physician immediately, even if no symptoms are immediately apparent. The toxic effects of fuel may not be visible for hours.
- Avoid inhaling fuel vapors. Inhaling too much fuel vapor of any kind can lead to eye and respiratory tract irritation. In severe cases, excessive or prolonged breathing of fuel vapor can cause serious illness and permanent injury.
- Avoid getting fuel liquid in your eyes. If fuel is splashed in the eyes, remove contact lenses (if worn), flush with water for 15 minutes and seek medical attention. Failure to seek proper medical attention could lead to permanent injury.
- Fuels can also be harmful if absorbed through the skin. If fuel is splashed on the skin, clothing or both, promptly remove contaminated clothing and wash skin thoroughly with soap and water. Repeated or prolonged skin contact with fuel liquid or vapor causes skin irritation.
- Be particularly careful if you are taking Antabuse or other forms of Disulfiram for the treatment of alcoholism. Breathing gasoline vapors could cause an adverse reaction, serious personal injury or sickness. If fuel is splashed on the skin, wash the affected areas immediately with plenty of soap and water. Consult a physician immediately if you experience any adverse reactions.

# Fuel and Refueling

## FUEL QUALITY

### Choosing the Right Fuel



E161513

We recommend regular unleaded gasoline with a minimum pump (R+M)/2 octane rating of 87. Some fuel stations offer fuels posted as regular unleaded gasoline with an octane rating below 87, particularly in high altitude areas. We do not recommend fuels with an octane rating below 87.

For vehicles with EcoBoost engines, to provide improved performance, we recommend premium fuel for severe duty usage such as trailer tow.

Do not use any fuel other than those recommended because they could lead to engine damage that may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

**Note:** *Use of any fuel other than those recommended can impair the emission control system and cause a loss of vehicle performance.*

Do not use:

- Diesel fuel.
- Fuels containing kerosene or paraffin.
- Fuel containing more than 15% ethanol or E85 fuel.
- Fuels containing methanol.
- Fuels containing metallic-based additives, including manganese-based compounds.

- Fuels containing the octane booster additive, methylcyclopentadienyl manganese tricarbonyl (MMT).
- Leaded fuel (using leaded fuel is prohibited by law).

The use of fuels with metallic compounds such as methylcyclopentadienyl manganese tricarbonyl (commonly known as MMT), which is a manganese-based fuel additive, will impair engine performance and affect the emission control system.

Do not be concerned if the engine sometimes knocks lightly. However, if the engine knocks heavily while using fuel with the recommended octane rating, contact an authorized dealer to prevent any engine damage.

## FUEL FILLER FUNNEL LOCATION

The fuel filler funnel is located in the spare wheel storage tray.

## RUNNING OUT OF FUEL

Running out of fuel can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

If your vehicle runs out of fuel:

- Add a minimum of 1.3 gal (5 L) of fuel to restart the engine. If your vehicle is out of fuel and on a steep slope, more fuel may be required.
- You may need to switch the ignition from off to on several times after refueling to allow the fuel system to pump the fuel from the tank to the engine. When restarting, cranking time takes a few seconds longer than normal.

# Fuel and Refueling


## Filling a Portable Fuel Container


Use the following guidelines to avoid electrostatic charge build-up when filling an ungrounded fuel container:


- Only use an approved fuel container to transfer fuel to your vehicle. Place the container on the ground when filling it.
- Do not fill a fuel container when it is inside your vehicle (including the cargo area).
- Keep the fuel pump nozzle in contact with the fuel container when filling it.
- Do not use a device that holds the fuel pump nozzle lever in the fill position.

## Adding Fuel From a Portable Fuel Container

### WARNINGS

 Do not insert the nozzle of a fuel container or an aftermarket funnel into the fuel system filler neck. This may damage the fuel system filler neck or its seal and cause fuel to run onto the ground.

 Do not try to pry open or push open the capless fuel system with foreign objects. This could damage the fuel system and its seal and cause injury to you or others.

 Do not dispose of fuel in the household refuse or the public sewage system. Use an authorized waste disposal facility.

When refueling the vehicle fuel tank from a fuel container, use the plastic funnel included with your vehicle. See **Fuel Filler Funnel Location** (page 130).

**Note:** *Do not use aftermarket funnels as they will not work with the capless fuel system and can damage it.*

When refueling the vehicle fuel tank from a fuel container, do the following:

1. Fully open the fuel tank filler door until it engages and remove the fuel tank filler cap.

**Note:** *Capless fuel systems do not have a fuel tank filler cap.*

2. Fully insert the plastic funnel into the fuel tank filler pipe opening.




E157452

3. Add fuel to your vehicle from the fuel container.
4. Remove the plastic funnel from the fuel tank filler pipe opening.
5. Replace the fuel tank filler cap and close the fuel tank filler door.
6. Clean the plastic funnel and place it back in your vehicle or properly dispose of it.

**Note:** *Extra funnels can be purchased from an authorized dealer if you choose to dispose of the funnel.*

## REFUELING


### WARNINGS


 Fuel vapor burns violently and a fuel fire can cause severe injuries.

 Read and follow all the instructions on the pump island.


# Fuel and Refueling


## WARNINGS


 When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.

 Stay outside your vehicle and do not leave the fuel pump unattended when refueling your vehicle. This is against the law in some places.

 Keep children away from the fuel pump; never let children pump fuel.

 Wait at least 10 seconds before removing the fuel pump nozzle to allow any residual fuel to drain into the fuel tank.

 Stop refueling when the fuel pump nozzle automatically shuts off for the first time. Failure to follow this will fill the expansion space in the fuel tank and could lead to fuel overflowing.


 Do not remove the fuel pump nozzle from its fully inserted position when refueling.

Use the following guidelines to avoid electrostatic charge build-up, which can produce a spark, when filling an ungrounded fuel container:

- Place approved fuel container on the ground.
- Do not fill a fuel container while it is in the vehicle (including the cargo area).
- Keep the fuel pump nozzle in contact with the fuel container while filling.
- Do not use a device that would hold the fuel pump handle in the fill position.

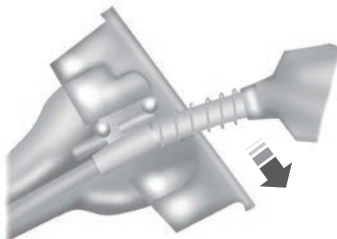
## Easy Fuel™ Capless Fuel System

### WARNING

 The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler door, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.

When fueling your vehicle:

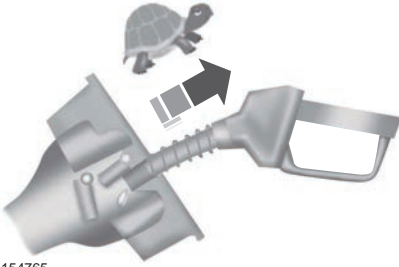
1. When your vehicle has stopped, shift into park (P) and switch the ignition off.
2. Fully open the fuel tank filler door until it engages.



E156032

3. Insert the fuel pump nozzle up to the first notch on the nozzle. Hold handle higher during insertion for easier access. Leave the fuel pump nozzle fully inserted until you are done pumping.

# Fuel and Refueling



E154765

4. Remove the fuel filler nozzle and fully close the fuel tank filler door.

**Note:** A fuel spillage concern may occur if overfilling the fuel tank. Do not overfill the tank. The fill pipe is equipped with a drain hole. Excess fuel due to overfill may drain through the drain hole and drip onto the ground.

If the fuel fill inlet was not properly closed, a service engine warning lamp may appear on the instrument cluster.

At the next opportunity, do the following:

1. Stop your vehicle as soon as safely possible and shift the transmission into park (P).
2. Switch the ignition off.
3. Open the fuel filler door and remove any visible debris from the fuel fill opening.
4. Insert either the fuel fill nozzle or the fuel fill funnel provided with the vehicle several times to allow the inlet to close properly. This will dislodge any debris preventing the inlet from sealing.

If this action corrects the problem, the message may not reset immediately. It may take several driving cycles for the message to turn off. A driving cycle consists of an engine start-up (after 4 or more hours with the engine off) followed by city or highway driving. Continuing to drive with the message on may cause the service engine soon lamp to turn on as well.

## FUEL CONSUMPTION

**Note:** The amount of usable fuel in the empty reserve varies and should not be relied upon to increase driving range. When refueling your vehicle after the fuel gauge indicates empty, you might not be able to refuel the full amount of the advertised capacity of the fuel tank due to the empty reserve still present in the tank.

Empty reserve is the amount of fuel remaining in the tank after the fuel gauge indicates empty. Do not rely on this fuel for driving. The usable capacity of the fuel tank is the amount of fuel that can be put into the tank after the gauge indicates empty. The advertised capacity is the total fuel tank size – it is the combined usable capacity plus the empty reserve.

## Filling the Tank

For consistent results when filling the fuel tank:

- Turn the ignition off before fueling; an inaccurate reading results if the engine is left running.
- Use the same fill rate (low-medium-high) each time the tank is filled.
- Allow no more than two automatic click-offs when filling.

Results are most accurate when the filling method is consistent.



# Fuel and Refueling

## Calculating Fuel Economy

Do not measure fuel economy during the first 1000 miles (1600 kilometers) of driving (this is your engine's break-in period); a more accurate measurement is obtained after 2000 miles - 3000 miles (3200 kilometers - 4800 kilometers). Also, fuel expense, frequency of fill ups or fuel gauge readings are not accurate ways to measure fuel economy.

1. Fill the fuel tank completely and record the initial odometer reading.
2. Each time you fill the tank, record the amount of fuel added.
3. After at least three to five tank fill ups, fill the fuel tank and record the current odometer reading.
4. Subtract your initial odometer reading from the current odometer reading.
5. Calculate fuel economy by dividing miles traveled by gallons used (For Metric: Multiply liters used by 100, then divide by kilometers traveled).

Keep a record for at least one month and record the type of driving (city or highway). This provides an accurate estimate of the vehicle's fuel economy under current driving conditions. Additionally, keeping records during summer and winter show how temperature impacts fuel economy. In general, lower temperatures mean lower fuel economy.

## EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM

### WARNINGS



Do not park, idle, or drive your vehicle in dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, which can start a fire.

### WARNINGS



Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment. If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your dealer inspect your vehicle immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

Your vehicle is equipped with various emission control components and a catalytic converter that will enable your vehicle to comply with applicable exhaust emission standards. To make sure that the catalytic converter and other emission control components continue to work properly:

- Use only the specified fuel listed.
- Avoid running out of fuel.
- Do not turn off the ignition while your vehicle is moving, especially at high speeds.
- Have the items listed in scheduled maintenance information performed according to the specified schedule.

The scheduled maintenance items listed in scheduled maintenance information are essential to the life and performance of your vehicle and to its emissions system. See **Scheduled Maintenance** (page 344).

If you use parts other than Ford, Motorcraft or Ford-authorized parts for maintenance replacements, or for service of components affecting emission control, such non-Ford parts should be the equivalent to genuine Ford Motor Company parts in performance and durability.

Illumination of the service engine soon indicator, charging system warning light or the temperature warning light, fluid leaks, strange odors, smoke or loss of engine power could indicate that the emission control system is not working properly.

# Fuel and Refueling

An improperly operating or damaged exhaust system may allow exhaust to enter the vehicle. Have a damaged or improperly operating exhaust system inspected and repaired immediately.

Do not make any unauthorized changes to your vehicle or engine. By law, vehicle owners and anyone who manufactures, repairs, services, sells, leases, trades vehicles, or supervises a fleet of vehicles are not permitted to intentionally remove an emission control device or prevent it from working. Information about your vehicle's emission system is on the Vehicle Emission Control Information Decal located on or near the engine. This decal also lists engine displacement

Please consult your warranty information for complete details.

## On-Board Diagnostics (OBD-II)

Your vehicle has a computer known as the on-board diagnostics system (OBD-II) that monitors the engine's emission control system. The system protects the environment by making sure that your vehicle continues to meet government emission standards. The OBD-II system also assists a service technician in properly servicing your vehicle.



When the service engine soon indicator illuminates, the OBD-II system has detected a malfunction. Temporary malfunctions may cause the service engine soon indicator to illuminate.

Examples of temporary malfunctions are:

- the vehicle has run out of fuel—the engine may misfire or run poorly
- poor fuel quality or water in the fuel—the engine may misfire or run poorly

- the fuel fill inlet may not have closed properly. See **Refueling** (page 131).
- driving through deep water—the electrical system may be wet.

You can correct these temporary malfunctions by filling the fuel tank with good quality fuel, properly closing the fuel fill inlet or letting the electrical system dry out. After three driving cycles without these or any other temporary malfunctions present, the service engine soon indicator should stay off the next time you start the engine. A driving cycle consists of a cold engine startup followed by mixed city/highway driving. No additional vehicle service is required.

If the service engine soon indicator remains on, have your vehicle serviced at the first available opportunity. Although some malfunctions detected by the OBD-II may not have symptoms that are apparent, continued driving with the service engine soon indicator on can result in increased emissions, lower fuel economy, reduced engine and transmission smoothness, and lead to more costly repairs.

## Readiness for Inspection/Maintenance (I/M) Testing

Some state/provincial and local governments may have Inspection/Maintenance (I/M) programs to inspect the emission control equipment on your vehicle. Failure to pass this inspection could prevent you from getting a vehicle registration.



If the service engine soon indicator is on or the bulb does not work, you may need to have the vehicle serviced. See On-Board Diagnostics (OBD-II).

# Fuel and Refueling

---

Your vehicle may not pass the I/M test if the service engine soon indicator is on or not working properly (bulb is burned out), or if the OBD-II system has determined that some of the emission control systems have not been properly checked. In this case, your vehicle is not ready for I/M testing.

If the vehicle's engine or transmission has just been serviced, or the battery has recently run down or been replaced, the OBD-II system may indicate that the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing. To determine if the vehicle is ready for I/M testing, turn the ignition key to the on position for 15 seconds without cranking the engine. If the service engine soon indicator blinks eight times, it means that the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing; if the service engine soon indicator stays on solid, it means that the vehicle is ready for I/M testing.

The OBD-II system monitors the emission control system during normal driving. A complete check may take several days. If the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing, you may need to perform the following driving cycle consisting of mixed city and highway driving:


Drive on an expressway or highway for a steady 15 minutes, followed by 20 minutes of stop-and-go driving with at least four 30-second idle periods.


Allow the vehicle to sit for at least eight hours without starting the engine. Then, start the engine and complete the above driving cycle. The engine must warm up to its normal operating temperature. Once started, do not turn off the engine until the above driving cycle is complete. If the vehicle is still not ready for I/M testing, you will have to repeat the above driving cycle.

# Transmission

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

### WARNINGS

 Always set the parking brake fully and make sure the gearshift is latched in park (P). Turn the ignition to the off position and remove the key whenever you leave your vehicle.

 Do not apply the brake pedal and accelerator pedal simultaneously. Applying both pedals simultaneously for more than three seconds will limit engine rpm, which may result in difficulty maintaining speed in traffic and could lead to serious injury.

## Understanding the Positions of Your Automatic Transmission

### Putting your vehicle in gear:

1. Fully press down the brake pedal.
2. Press and hold the button on the front of the gearshift lever.
3. Move the gearshift lever into the desired gear.
4. Release the button and your transmission will remain in the selected gear.



E142629

### Park (P)

This position locks the transmission and prevents the wheels from turning.

### Reverse (R)

With the gearshift lever in reverse (R), your vehicle will move backward. Always come to a complete stop before shifting into and out of reverse (R).

### Neutral (N)

With the gearshift lever in neutral (N), your vehicle can be started and is free to roll. Hold the brake pedal down while in this position.

### Drive (D)

Drive (D) is the normal driving position for the best fuel economy. The overdrive function allows automatic upshifts and downshifts through gears one through six.

### Sport (S)

Moving the gearshift lever to sport (S):

- Provides additional grade (engine) braking and extends lower gear operation to enhance performance for uphill climbs, hilly terrain or mountainous areas. This will increase engine RPM during engine braking.
- Provides additional lower gear operation through the automatic transmission shift strategy.
- Gears are selected more quickly and at higher engine speeds.

## SelectShift Automatic™ Transmission

Your SelectShift automatic transmission gives you the ability to manually change gears.

# Transmission

To use SelectShift, move the gearshift lever into sport (S). Use the +/- buttons on the side of your gearshift lever to manually change gears.

- Press the (+) button to upshift.
- Press the (-) button to downshift.

**Note:** After you have assumed manual control with SelectShift your vehicle will remain in this mode until you return the gearshift lever from sport (S), back to drive (D).

Upshift to the recommended shift speeds according to the following chart:

<b>Upshifts when accelerating (recommended for best fuel economy)</b>	
Shift from:	
1 - 2	15 mph (24 km/h)
2 - 3	25 mph (40 km/h)
3 - 4	40 mph (64 km/h)
4 - 5	45 mph (72 km/h)
5 - 6	50 mph (80 km/h)


The instrument cluster will display the selected gear that you are currently in and a shift indicator arrow to assist in optimizing shifting.

SelectShift will automatically make some shifts for you in the event that your engine speed is running at too high, or too low an RPM.


**Note:** Engine damage may occur if excessive engine revving is held without shifting.


## Brake-Shift Interlock

### WARNINGS

 Do not drive your vehicle until you verify that the brake lamps are working.

### WARNINGS

 When doing this procedure, you will be taking the vehicle out of park which means the vehicle can roll freely. To avoid unwanted vehicle movement, always fully set the parking brake prior to doing this procedure. Use wheel chocks if appropriate.

 If the parking brake is fully released, but the brake warning lamp remains illuminated, the brakes may not be working properly. See your authorized dealer.

Use the brake shift interlock lever to move the gearshift lever from the park position in the event of an electrical malfunction or if your vehicle has a dead battery.

Apply the parking brake and turn the ignition off before performing this procedure.

1. Insert a screwdriver (or similar tool) between the shifter bezel and the top finish panel.
2. Use the tool to unsnap the shifter bezel from the finish panel.



E142627

3. Locate the white lever located on the left side of the shifter.
4. Using the tool move the white lever towards the rear of the shifter.

# Transmission

---

5. While holding the white lever in the rear position, move the shifter from the park position.
6. Press the shifter bezel back into the top finish panel until it snaps back into position.
7. Apply the brake pedal, start the vehicle and release the parking brake.

**Note:** See your authorized dealer as soon as possible if this procedure is used.

## **If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck In Mud or Snow**

**Note:** Do not rock the vehicle if the engine is not at normal operating temperature or damage to the transmission may occur.

**Note:** Do not rock the vehicle for more than a minute or damage to the transmission and tires may occur, or the engine may overheat.

If your vehicle gets stuck in mud or snow, it may be rocked out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts in a steady pattern. Press lightly on the accelerator in each gear.

## Four-Wheel Drive (If Equipped)

### PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

This system is a proactive system. It has the ability to anticipate wheel slip and transfer torque to the rear wheels before slip occurs. Even when wheel slip is not present, the system is continuously making adjustments to the torque distribution, in an attempt to improve straight line and cornering behavior, both on and off road.

The system automatically turns on every time you switch the ignition on.

All components of the system are sealed and do not require maintenance.

### USING FOUR-WHEEL DRIVE

**Note:** When a system malfunction is present, a warning message will be displayed in the information display. See (page 87). This means the system is not functioning correctly and has defaulted to front-wheel drive only. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

**Note:** A message will be displayed in the information display when the system overheats and switches to front-wheel drive. This condition may occur if you operate your vehicle in extreme high load conditions or with excessive wheel slip, (i.e. deep sand). To resume four-wheel drive function as soon as possible, stop your vehicle in a safe location and switch the ignition off. After the system cools and normal four-wheel drive functionality resumes, a message will be displayed for approximately five seconds.

**Note:** If a warning message appears in the information display when using the spare tire, it should turn off after reinstalling the repaired or replaced road tire and you switch the ignition on.

**Note:** It is recommended that you reinstall the repaired tire or replace the tire as soon as possible. Major dissimilar tire sizes between the front and rear axles could cause system damage or default the system to front-wheel drive.

The system gives your vehicle some limited off-road capabilities. Operating your vehicle in conditions other than moderate sand, snow, mud or rough roads could subject it to excessive stress and heat which could result in system damage. This will not be covered by your vehicle warranty.



E142669

A graphic will be displayed in the information display to advise you of the power distribution between the front and rear wheels. The more the area is filled the more power is being distributed to that wheel.

### Driving in Special Conditions With Four-Wheel Drive

Four-wheel drive vehicles are suitable for driving on sand, snow, mud and rough roads and have operating characteristics that are somewhat different from conventional vehicles, both on and off the freeway.

**Note:** It may be useful to switch Traction control off. This allows for more wheel spin and engine torque in certain off road conditions or if your vehicle becomes stuck.

## Four-Wheel Drive (If Equipped)

When driving at slow speeds off road under high load conditions, use a low gear when possible. Low gear operation will maximize the engine and transmission cooling capability.

Under severe operating conditions, the air conditioning may cycle on and off to prevent the engine from overheating.

### Basic Operating Principles

- Drive slower in strong crosswinds which can affect the normal steering characteristics of your vehicle.
- When driving your vehicle on surfaces made slippery by loose sand, water, gravel, snow or ice proceed with care.

### If Your Vehicle leaves the Road

If your vehicle leaves the road, reduce your vehicle speed and avoid severe braking. When your vehicle speed has been reduced ease your vehicle back onto the road. Do not turn the steering wheel sharply while returning your vehicle to the road.

It may be safer to stay on the shoulder of the road and slow down gradually before returning to the road. You may lose control if you do not slow down or if you turn the steering wheel too sharply or abruptly.

It may be less risky to strike small objects, such as freeway reflectors, with minor damage to your vehicle rather than attempt a sudden return to the road which could cause your vehicle to slide sideways out of control or roll over. Remember, your safety and the safety of others should be your primary concern.

### Emergency Maneuvers

In an unavoidable emergency situation where a sudden sharp turn must be made, remember to avoid over-driving your vehicle (i.e. turn the steering wheel only as rapidly and as far as required to avoid the emergency). Excessive steering can result

in loss of vehicle control. Apply smooth pressure to the accelerator pedal or brake pedal when changes in vehicle speed are required. Avoid abrupt steering, acceleration and braking. This could result in an increased risk of vehicle roll over, loss of vehicle control and personal injury. Use all available road surface to bring your vehicle to a safe direction of travel.

In the event of an emergency stop, avoid skidding the tires and do not attempt any sharp steering wheel movements.

If your vehicle goes from one type of surface to another (i.e. from concrete to gravel) there will be a change in the way your vehicle responds to a maneuver (i.e. steering, acceleration or braking).

### Sand

When driving over sand, try to keep all four wheels on the most solid area of the trail. Avoid reducing the tire pressures but shift to a lower gear and drive steadily through the terrain. Apply the accelerator slowly and avoid excessive wheel slip.

Do not drive your vehicle in deep sand for an extended period of time. This will cause the system to overheat. A message will be displayed in the information display. See (page 87).

To resume operation, switch the ignition off and allow the system to cool down for a minimum of 15 minutes. After the system has cooled down, a message will be displayed briefly in the information display. See (page 87).

When driving at slow speeds in deep sand under high outside temperatures, use a low gear when possible. Low gear operation will maximize the engine and transmission cooling capability.



## Four-Wheel Drive (If Equipped)

Avoid driving at excessive speeds, this causes vehicle momentum to work against you and your vehicle could become stuck to the point that assistance may be required from another vehicle. Remember, you may be able to back out the way you came if you proceed with caution.

### Mud and Water

#### Mud

Be cautious of sudden changes in vehicle speed or direction when you are driving in mud. Even four-wheel drive vehicles can lose traction in slick mud. If your vehicle does slide, steer in the direction of the slide until you regain control of your vehicle.

After driving through mud, clean off residue stuck to rotating driveshafts and tires. Excess mud stuck on tires and rotating driveshafts can cause an imbalance that could damage drive components.

#### Water

If you must drive through high water, drive slowly. Traction or brake capability may be limited.

When driving through water, determine the depth and avoid water higher than the bottom of the wheel rims. If the ignition system gets wet, your vehicle may stall.

Once through water, always try the brakes. Wet brakes do not stop your vehicle as effectively as dry brakes. Drying can be improved by applying light pressure to the brake pedal while moving slowly.

**Note:** *Driving through deep water may damage the transmission. If the front or rear axle is submerged in water, the axle lubricant and power transfer unit lubricant should be checked and changed if necessary.*

### Driving on Hilly or Sloping Terrain

Although natural obstacles may make it necessary to travel diagonally up or down a hill or steep incline, you should always try to drive straight up or straight down.

**Note:** *Avoid turning on steep slopes or hills. A danger lies in losing traction, slipping sideways and possible vehicle roll over. Whenever driving on a hill, determine beforehand the route you will use. Do not drive over the crest of a hill without seeing what conditions are on the other side. Do not drive in reverse over a hill without the aid of an observer.*

When climbing a steep slope or hill, start in a lower gear rather than downshifting to a lower gear from a higher gear once the ascent has started. This reduces strain on the engine and the possibility of stalling.

If your vehicle stalls, do not try to turn around because this could cause vehicle roll over. It is better to reverse back to a safe location.

Apply just enough power to the wheels to climb the hill. Too much power will cause the tires to slip, spin or lose traction, resulting in loss of vehicle control.



E143949

## Four-Wheel Drive (If Equipped)

Descend a hill in the same gear you would use to climb up the hill to avoid excessive brake application and brake overheating. Do not descend in neutral. Disengage overdrive or move the transmission selector lever to a lower gear. When descending a steep hill, avoid sudden hard braking as you could lose control. The front wheels have to be turning in order to steer your vehicle.

Your vehicle has anti-lock brakes, therefore apply the brakes steadily. Do not pump the brake pedal.

### Driving on Snow and Ice

#### WARNING



If you are driving in slippery conditions that require tire chains or cables, then it is critical that you drive cautiously. Keep speeds down, allow for longer stopping distances and avoid aggressive steering to reduce the chances of a loss of vehicle control which can lead to serious injury or death. If the rear end of your vehicle slides while cornering, steer in the direction of the slide until you regain control of your vehicle.

**Note:** Excessive tire slippage can cause transmission damage.

Four-wheel drive vehicles have advantages over two-wheel drive vehicles in snow and ice but can skid like any other vehicle. Should you start to slide while driving on snowy or icy roads, turn the steering wheel in the direction of the slide until you regain control.

Avoid sudden applications of power and quick changes of direction on snow and ice. Apply the accelerator slowly and steadily when starting from a full stop.

Avoid sudden braking. Although a four-wheel drive vehicle may accelerate better than a two-wheel drive vehicle in snow and ice, it will not stop any faster as braking occurs at all four wheels. Do not become overconfident as to road conditions.

Make sure you allow sufficient distance between you and other vehicles for stopping. Drive slower than usual and consider using one of the lower gears. In emergency stopping situations, apply the brake steadily. As your vehicle has a four wheel anti-lock brake system, do not pump the brake pedal. See **Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes** (page 145).

### If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck In Mud or Snow

If your vehicle gets stuck in mud or snow, it may be rocked out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts in a steady pattern. Press lightly on the accelerator in each gear.

**Note:** Do not rock your vehicle if the engine is not at normal operating temperature, damage to the transmission may occur.

**Note:** Do not rock your vehicle for more than a minute, damage to the transmission and tires may occur or the engine may overheat.

### Maintenance and Modifications

The suspension and steering systems on your vehicle have been designed and tested to provide predictable performance whether loaded or empty. For this reason, we strongly recommend that you do not make modifications such as adding or removing parts (i.e. lift kits or stabilizer bars) or by using replacement parts not equivalent to the original factory equipment.

## **Four-Wheel Drive (If Equipped)**

---

We recommend that you use caution when your vehicle has either a high load or device (i.e. ladder or luggage racks). Any modifications to your vehicle that raise the center of gravity may cause your vehicle to roll over when there is a loss of vehicle control.

Failure to maintain your vehicle correctly may void the warranty, increase your repair cost, reduce vehicle performance and operational capabilities and adversely affect you and your passenger's safety. We recommend you frequently inspect your vehicle's chassis components when your vehicle is subject to off road usage.

# Brakes

## GENERAL INFORMATION

**Note:** Occasional brake noise is normal. If a metal-to-metal, continuous grinding or continuous squeal sound is present, the brake linings may be worn-out and an authorized dealer should check them. If the vehicle has continuous vibration or shudder in the steering wheel while braking, an authorized dealer should check your vehicle.

**Note:** Brake dust may accumulate on the wheels, even under normal driving conditions. Some dust is inevitable as the brakes wear and does not contribute to brake noise. See **Cleaning the Alloy Wheels** (page 239).



See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 84).

Wet brakes result in reduced braking efficiency. Gently press the brake pedal a few times when driving from a car wash or standing water to dry the brakes.

## Brake Over Accelerator

In the event the accelerator pedal becomes stuck or entrapped, apply steady and firm pressure to the brake pedal to slow the vehicle and reduce engine power. If you experience this condition, apply the brakes and bring your vehicle to a safe stop. Switch the engine off, move the transmission to park (P) and apply the parking brake. Inspect the accelerator pedal and the area around it for any items or debris that may be obstructing its movement. If none are found and the condition persists, have your vehicle towed to the nearest authorized dealer.

## Emergency Brake Assist

Emergency brake assist detects when you brake heavily by measuring the rate at which you press the brake pedal. It provides maximum braking efficiency as long as you press the pedal. Emergency brake assist can reduce stopping distances in critical situations.

## Anti-lock Brake System

This system helps you maintain steering control during emergency stops by keeping the brakes from locking.



This lamp momentarily illuminates when you switch the ignition on. If the light does not illuminate during start up, remains on or flashes, the anti-lock braking system may be disabled. Have the system checked by an authorized dealer. If the anti-lock brake system is disabled, normal braking is still effective.



If the brake warning lamp illuminates with the parking brake released, have your brake system serviced immediately.

## HINTS ON DRIVING WITH ANTI-LOCK BRAKES

**Note:** When the system is operating, the brake pedal may pulse and may travel further. Maintain pressure on the brake pedal. You may also hear a noise from the system. This is normal.

The anti-lock braking system will not eliminate the risks when:

- You drive too closely to the vehicle in front of you.
- Your vehicle is hydroplaning.
- You take corners too fast.
- The road surface is poor.

# Brakes

## PARKING BRAKE

### WARNING



Always set the parking brake fully and make sure you shift the gearshift lever to park (P). Switch the ignition off and remove the key whenever you leave your vehicle.

**Note:** Do not press the release button while pulling the lever up.

To apply the parking brake:

1. Press the foot brake pedal firmly.
2. Pull the parking brake lever up to its fullest extent.

**Note:** If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing uphill, shift the gearshift lever to park (P) and turn the steering wheel away from the curb.

**Note:** If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing downhill, shift the gearshift lever to park (P) and turn the steering wheel toward the curb.

To release the parking brake:

1. Press the brake pedal firmly.
2. Pull the lever up slightly.
3. Press the release button and push the lever down.

## HILL START ASSIST

### WARNINGS



The system does not replace the parking brake. When you leave your vehicle, always apply the parking brake and shift the transmission into park (P) (automatic transmission) or first gear (1) (manual transmission).



You must remain in your vehicle once you have activated the system.

### WARNINGS



During all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required.



If the engine is revved excessively, or if a malfunction is detected, the system will be deactivated.

The system makes it easier to pull away when your vehicle is on a slope without the need to use the parking brake.

When the system is active, your vehicle will remain stationary on the slope for two to three seconds after you release the brake pedal. This allows you time to move your foot from the brake to the accelerator pedal. The brakes release automatically when the engine has sufficient torque to prevent your vehicle from rolling down the grade. This is an advantage when pulling away on a slope, for example from a car park ramp, traffic lights or when reversing uphill into a parking space.

The system will activate automatically on any slope that will cause significant vehicle rollback. For vehicles with a manual transmission, you can switch this feature off using the information display. See **Information Displays** (page 87). The system will remain on or off depending on how it was last set.

**Note:** There is no warning lamp to indicate the system is either on or off.

**Note:** If your vehicle is equipped with Auto Hold, Hill Start Assist will not be available while Auto Hold is active.

### Using Hill Start Assist

1. Bring your vehicle to a complete standstill. Keep the brake pedal pressed and select an uphill gear (for example, first (1) when facing uphill or reverse (R) when facing downhill).

# Brakes

---

2. If the sensors detect that your vehicle is on a slope, the system will activate automatically.
3. When you remove your foot from the brake pedal, your vehicle will remain on the slope without rolling away for about two or three seconds. This hold time will automatically be extended if you are in the process of driving off.
4. Drive off in the normal manner. The brakes will release automatically.

## Switching the System On and Off

You can switch this feature on or off if your vehicle is equipped with a manual transmission and an information display. See **General Information** (page 87). The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

If your vehicle is not equipped with a manual transmission and an information display, you cannot turn the system on or off. When you switch the ignition on, the system automatically turns on.

# Traction Control

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

The traction control system helps avoid drive wheel spin and loss of traction.

If your vehicle begins to slide, the system applies the brakes to individual wheels and, when needed, reduces engine power at the same time. If the wheels spin when accelerating on slippery or loose surfaces, the system reduces engine power in order to increase traction.

## USING TRACTION CONTROL

### WARNING



The stability and traction control light illuminates steadily if the system detects a failure. Make sure you did not manually disable the traction control system using the information display controls or the switch. If the stability control and traction control light is still illuminating steadily, have the system serviced by an authorized dealer immediately. Operating your vehicle with the traction control disabled could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

The system automatically turns on each time you switch the ignition on.

If your vehicle is stuck in mud or snow, switching traction control off may be beneficial as this allows the wheels to spin.

**Note:** *When you switch traction control off, stability control remains fully active.*

## Switching the System Off

When you switch the system off or on, a message appears in the information display showing system status.

You can switch the system off by either using the information display controls or the switch.

## Using the Information Display Controls

You can switch this feature off or on in the information display. See **General Information** (page 87).

## Using a Switch (If Equipped)

Use the traction control switch on the instrument panel to switch the system off or on.

## System Indicator Lights and Messages



The stability and traction control light:

- Temporarily illuminates on engine start-up.
- Flashes when a driving condition activates either of the systems.
- Illuminates if a problem occurs in either of the systems.



The stability and traction control off light temporarily illuminates on engine start-up and stays on when you switch the traction control system off.

# Stability Control

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

### WARNINGS



Vehicle modifications involving braking system, aftermarket roof racks, suspension, steering system, tire construction and wheel and tire size may change the handling characteristics of your vehicle and may adversely affect the performance of the electronic stability control system. In addition, installing any stereo loudspeakers may interfere with and adversely affect the electronic stability control system. Install any aftermarket stereo loudspeaker as far as possible from the front center console, the tunnel, and the front seats in order to minimize the risk of interfering with the electronic stability control sensors. Reducing the effectiveness of the electronic stability control system could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.



Remember that even advanced technology cannot defy the laws of physics. It's always possible to lose control of a vehicle due to inappropriate driver input for the conditions. Aggressive driving on any road condition can cause you to lose control of your vehicle increasing the risk of personal injury or property damage. Activation of the electronic stability control system is an indication that at least some of the tires have exceeded their ability to grip the road; this could reduce the operator's ability to control the vehicle potentially resulting in a loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. If your electronic stability control system activates, SLOW DOWN.

The system automatically turns on each time you switch the ignition on.

If a fault occurs in either the stability control or the traction control system, you may experience the following conditions:

- The stability and traction control light illuminates steadily.
- The stability control and traction control systems do not enhance your vehicle's ability to maintain traction of the wheels.
- The Adaptive Steering system (if equipped) automatically changes the steering function to a fixed steering ratio. See **Steering** (page 167).

If a driving condition activates either the stability control or the traction control system you may experience the following conditions:

- The stability and traction control light flashes.
- Your vehicle slows down.
- Reduced engine power.
- A vibration in the brake pedal.
- The brake pedal is stiffer than usual.
- If the driving condition is severe and your foot is not on the brake, the brake pedal may move as the system applies higher brake force.

The stability control system has several features built into it to help you maintain control of your vehicle:

### Electronic Stability Control

The system enhances your vehicle's ability to prevent skids or lateral slides by applying brakes to one or more of the wheels individually and, if necessary, reducing engine power.



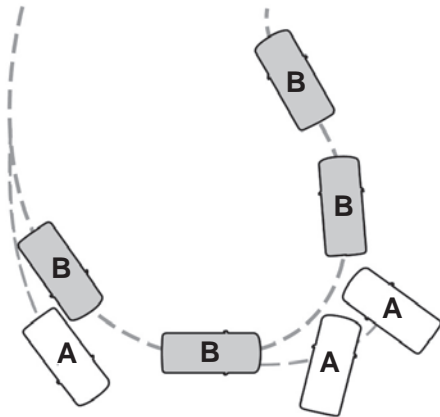
# Stability Control

## Roll Stability Control

The system enhances your vehicle's ability to prevent rollovers by detecting your vehicle's roll motion and the rate at which it changes by applying the brakes to one or more wheels individually.

## Traction Control

The system enhances your vehicle's ability to maintain traction of the wheels by detecting and controlling wheel spin. See **Using Traction Control** (page 148).



E72903

- A Vehicle without stability control skidding off its intended route.
- B Vehicle with stability control maintaining control on a slippery surface.

## USING STABILITY CONTROL

### AdvanceTrac® with Roll Stability Control™ (RSC®)

The system automatically activates when you start your vehicle. The AdvanceTrac with RSC system cannot be completely turned off, but the electronic stability control and roll stability control portions of the system are disabled when the transmission is in position **R**. You can turn off the traction control portion of the system independently. See **Using Traction Control** (page 148).

# Parking Aids

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

### WARNINGS



To help avoid personal injury, please read and understand the limitations of the system as contained in this section. Sensing is only an aid for some (generally large and fixed) objects when moving on a flat surface at parking speeds. Certain objects with surfaces that absorb ultrasonic waves, surrounding vehicle's parking aid systems, traffic control systems, fluorescent lamps, inclement weather, air brakes, and external motors and fans may also affect the function of the sensing system; this may include reduced performance or a false activation.



To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse (R) and when using the sensing system.



This system is not designed to prevent contact with small or moving objects. The system is designed to provide a warning to assist the driver in detecting large stationary objects to avoid damaging your vehicle. The system may not detect smaller objects, particularly those close to the ground.



Certain add-on devices such as large trailer hitches, bike or surfboard racks and any device that may block the normal detection zone of the system, may create false beeps.

**Note:** *Keep the sensors, located on the bumper or fascia, free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt. If the sensors are covered, the system's accuracy can be affected. Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.*

**Note:** *If your vehicle sustains damage to the bumper or fascia, leaving it misaligned or bent, the sensing zone may be altered causing inaccurate measurement of obstacles or false alarms.*

**Note:** *The sensing system cannot be turned off when a MyKey is present. See **Principle of Operation** (page 49).*

**Note:** *If you attach certain add-on devices such as a trailer or bike rack, the rear sensing system may detect that add-on device and therefore provide warnings. It is suggested that you disable the rear sensing system when you attach an add-on device to your vehicle to prevent these warnings.*

The sensing system warns the driver of obstacles within a certain range of your vehicle. The system turns on automatically whenever you switch the ignition on.

The system can be switched off through the information display menu or from the pop-up message that appears once you shift the transmission into reverse (R). See **General Information** (page 87).

If a fault is present in the system, a warning message appears in the information display. See **Information Messages** (page 90).

## REAR PARKING AID

The rear sensors are only active when the transmission is in reverse (R). As your vehicle moves closer to the obstacle, the rate of the audible warning increases. When the obstacle is less than 12 in (30 cm) away, the warning sounds continuously. If the system detects a stationary or receding object farther than 12 in (30 cm) from the corners of the bumper, the tone sounds for only three seconds. Once the system detects an object approaching, the warning sounds again.

# Parking Aids



E130178

Coverage area of up to 6 ft (1.8 m) from the rear bumper. There may be decreased coverage area at the outer corners of the bumper.

The system detects certain objects while the transmission is in reverse (R) :

- Your vehicle is moving toward a stationary object at a speed of 3 mph (5 km/h) or less.
- Your vehicle is not moving, but a moving object is approaching the rear of your vehicle at a speed of 3 mph (5 km/h) or less.
- Your vehicle is moving at a speed of less than 3 mph (5 km/h) and a moving object is approaching the rear of your vehicle at a speed of less than 3 mph (5 km/h).

The system provides audio warnings only when your vehicle is moving or when your vehicle is stationary and the detected obstacle is less than 12 in (30 cm) away from the bumper.

## Obstacle Distance Indicator (If Equipped)

The system provides obstacle distance indication through the information display. The distance indicator displays when the transmission is in reverse (R).

The indicator displays:

- As the distance to the obstacle decreases the indicator blocks illuminate and move towards the vehicle icon.
- If there is no obstacle detected, the distance indicator blocks are grayed out.

## FRONT PARKING AID (If Equipped)

The front sensors are active when the transmission is in any position other than park (P) and your vehicle is traveling at low speed.



E187330

Coverage area of up to 28 in (70 cm) from the front bumper. The coverage area decreases at the outer corners.

When your vehicle approaches an object, a warning tone sounds. When your vehicle moves closer to an object, the warning tone repeat rate increases. The warning tone sounds continuously when an object is 12 in (30 cm) or less from the front bumper.

# Parking Aids

You can switch the system off through the information display menu or from the pop-up message that appears once you shift the transmission into reverse (R). See **General Information** (page 87). If your vehicle has a parking aid button, you can switch the system off by pressing the button.

## Obstacle Distance Indicator (If Equipped)

The system provides obstacle distance indication through the information display.

The indicator displays:

- As the distance to the obstacle decreases the indicator blocks illuminate and move towards the vehicle icon.
- If there is no obstacle detected, the distance indicator blocks are grayed out.

If the transmission is in reverse (R), the front sensing system provides audio warnings when your vehicle is moving and the detected obstacle is moving towards your vehicle. Once the vehicle is stationary, the audio warning will be stopped after 2 seconds. Visual indication is always present in reverse (R).

If the transmission is in drive (D) or any other forward gear (for example, low (L), sport (S) or any forward gear in a manual transmission), the front sensing system provides audio and visual warnings when your vehicle is moving below a speed of 7 mph (12 km/h) and an obstacle is located inside the detection area. Once the vehicle is stationary, the audio warning will be stopped after 2 seconds and the visual indication stops after 4 seconds. If the obstacles detected are within 12 in (30 cm), the visual indication remains on.

If the transmission is in neutral (N), the system provides visual indication only when your vehicle is moving at 7 mph (12 km/h) or below and an obstacle is located inside the detection area. Once your vehicle is stationary, the visual indication will stop after 4 seconds.

## ACTIVE PARK ASSIST (If Equipped)

### WARNINGS



Designed to be a supplementary park aid, this system may not work in all conditions. This system cannot replace the driver's attention and judgment. The driver is responsible for avoiding hazards and maintaining a safe distance and speed, even when the system is in use.



Active Park Assist does not apply the brakes under any circumstances.

**Note:** *The driver is always responsible for controlling the vehicle, supervising the system and intervening if required.*

The system detects an available parallel parking space and automatically steers your vehicle into the space (hands-free) while you control the accelerator, gearshift and brakes. The system visually and audibly instructs you to park your vehicle.

The system may not function correctly if something passes between the front bumper and the parking space (a pedestrian or cyclist) or if the edge of the neighboring parked vehicle is high off the ground (for example, a bus, tow truck or flatbed truck).

**Note:** *The sensors may not detect objects in heavy rain or other conditions that cause disruptive reflections.*

# Parking Aids

**Note:** The sensors may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb ultrasonic waves or cause ultrasonic interference (motorcycle exhaust, truck air brakes or horns).

Do not use the system if:

- You have attached a bike rack, trailer or similar object close to the sensors on the front or rear of your vehicle.
- You have attached an overhanging object (surfboard) to the roof.
- The front bumper or side sensors are damaged or obstructed by a foreign object (front bumper cover).
- A mini-spare tire is in use.

## Using Active Park Assist



Press the button located on the center console near the gearshift lever or the right side of the center stack.

A message and a corresponding graphic appears in the display screen to indicate the system is searching for a parking space. Use the direction indicator to select which side of your vehicle you want the system to search.

**Note:** If the direction indicator is not on, the system automatically searches on your vehicle's passenger side.



E130107

When the system finds a suitable space, the touchscreen displays a message and a tone sounds. Slow down, continue moving forward and stop when another tone sounds and a message displays on the touchscreen, then follow the instructions on the touchscreen.

**Note:** You must observe that the selected space remains clear of obstructions at all times in the maneuver.

**Note:** Active park assist may not detect vehicles with overhanging loads (a bus or a truck), street furniture and other items. You must make sure the selected space is suitable for parking.

**Note:** You should drive your vehicle within 5 ft (1.5 m) of the parked vehicles while passing a parking space.

**Note:** The system always offers the last detected parking space (for example, if the vehicle detects multiple spaces while you are driving, it offers the last one).

**Note:** If driven above approximately 22 mph (35 km/h), the touchscreen shows a message to alert you to reduce your vehicle speed.

## Automatic Steering into Parking Space

**Note:** If your vehicle speed exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h), the system switches off and you need to take full control of your vehicle.

# Parking Aids

**Note:** If a maneuver is interrupted before completion, the system switches off. The steering wheel position will not indicate the actual position of the steering and you have to full take control of your vehicle.



E130108

When you think your vehicle has enough space in front and behind it, or you hear a solid tone from the parking aid (accompanied by a touchscreen display message and a chime), bring your vehicle to a complete stop.

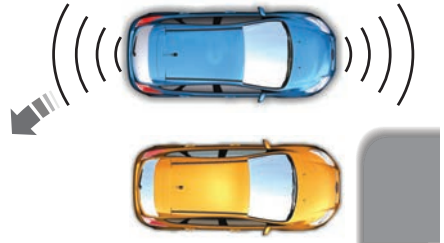
When automatic steering is finished, the touch screen displays a message and a tone sounds, indicating that the active park assist process is finished. The driver is responsible for checking the parking job and making any necessary corrections before putting the transmission in park (P).

## Deactivating the Park Assist Feature

Manually deactivate the system by:

- Pressing the active park assist button once during an active maneuver.
- Grabbing the steering wheel.

When you shift the transmission into reverse (R), with your hands off the wheel (and nothing obstructing its movement), your vehicle steers itself into the space. Instructions to move your vehicle back and forth in the space display on the touchscreen.



- Driving above approximately 22 mph (35 km/h) for 10 seconds during an active park search.
- Driving above 6 mph (10 km/h) during automatic steering.
- Turning off the traction control system.

Certain vehicle conditions can also deactivate the system, such as:

- Traction control has activated on a slippery or loose surface.
- There is an anti-lock brake system activation or failure.
- Something touches the steering wheel.

If a problem occurs with the system, a warning message is displayed, followed by a tone. Occasional system messages may occur in normal operation. For recurring or frequent system faults, contact an authorized dealer to have your vehicle serviced.

# Parking Aids

## Troubleshooting the System

### **The system does not look for a space**

The traction control system may be off.

The transmission is in reverse (R); your vehicle must be moving forward to detect a parking space.

### **The system does not offer a particular space**

Something may be contacting the front bumper or side sensors.

There is not enough room on both sides of your vehicle in order to park.

There is not enough space for the parking maneuver on the opposite side of the parking space.

Your vehicle is farther than 7 ft (2 m) from the parking space.

Your vehicle is closer than 16 in (40 cm) from neighboring parked vehicles.

The transmission is in reverse (R); your vehicle must be moving forward to detect a parking space.

Your vehicle is going faster than 22 mph (35 km/h).

### **The system does not position your vehicle where I want in the space**

Your vehicle is rolling in the opposite direction of the transmission (rolling forward when reverse [R] is selected).

An irregular curb along the parking space prevents the system from aligning your vehicle properly.

Vehicles or objects bordering the space may not be positioned correctly.

Your vehicle was pulled too far past the parking space.

The tires may not be installed or maintained correctly (not inflated correctly, improper size, or of different sizes).

A repair or alteration has changed detection capabilities.

# Parking Aids

## The system does not position your vehicle where I want in the space


A parked vehicle has a high attachment (salt sprayer, snowplow, moving truck bed, etc).


The parking space length or position of parked objects changed after your vehicle passed.


The temperature around your vehicle changes quickly (driving from a heated garage into the cold, or after leaving a car wash).


## REAR VIEW CAMERA (If Equipped)


### WARNINGS

 The rear view camera system is a reverse aid supplement device that still requires the driver to use it in conjunction with the interior and exterior mirrors for maximum coverage.

 Objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper, might not be seen on the screen due to the limited coverage of the camera system.

 Back up as slow as possible since higher speeds might limit your reaction time to stop your vehicle.

 Use caution when using the rear video camera and the luggage compartment door is ajar. If the luggage compartment door is ajar, the camera will be out of position and the video image may be incorrect. All guidelines disappear when the luggage compartment door is ajar.

 Use caution when turning camera features on or off. Make sure your vehicle is not moving.

The rear view camera system provides a video image of the area behind your vehicle.

During operation, lines appear in the display which represent your vehicle's path and proximity to objects behind your vehicle.



E142435

The camera is located on the luggage compartment door.

### Using the Rear View Camera System

The rear view camera system displays what is behind your vehicle when you place the transmission in reverse (R).

**Note:** *The reverse sensing system is not effective at speeds above 7 mph (12 km/h) and may not detect certain angular or moving objects.*



# Parking Aids

The system uses three types of guides to help you see what is behind your vehicle:

- Active guidelines: Show the intended path of your vehicle when reversing.
- Fixed guidelines: Show the actual path your vehicle is moving in while reversing in a straight line. This can be helpful when backing into a parking space or aligning your vehicle with another object behind you.
- Centerline: Helps align the center of your vehicle with an object (for example, a trailer).

**Note:** If the transmission is in reverse (R) and the luggage compartment door or liftgate is open, no rear view camera features will display.

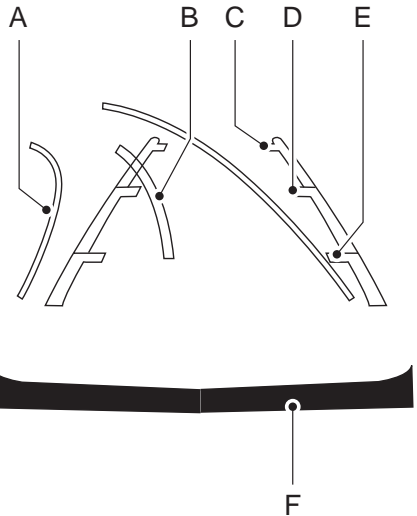
**Note:** When towing, the camera only sees what you are towing. This might not provide adequate coverage as it usually provides in normal operation and some objects might not be seen. In some vehicles, the guidelines may disappear when you connect the trailer tow connector.

The camera may not operate correctly under the following conditions:

- Nighttime or dark areas if one or both reverse lamps are not operating.
- Mud, water or debris obstructs the camera's view. Clean the lens with a soft, lint-free cloth and non-abrasive cleaner.
- The rear of your vehicle is hit or damaged, causing the camera to become misaligned.

## Camera Guidelines

**Note:** Active guidelines are only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).



E142436

- A Active guidelines
- B Centerline
- C Fixed guideline: Green zone
- D Fixed guideline: Yellow zone
- E Fixed guideline: Red zone
- F Rear bumper

Active guidelines are only shown with fixed guidelines. To use active guidelines, turn the steering wheel to point the guidelines toward an intended path. If you change the steering wheel position while reversing, your vehicle might deviate from the original intended path.

# Parking Aids

---

The fixed and active guidelines fade in and out depending on the steering wheel position. The active guidelines do not display when the steering wheel position is straight.

Always use caution while reversing. Objects in the red zone are closest to your vehicle and objects in the green zone are farther away. Objects are getting closer to your vehicle as they move from the green zone to the yellow or red zones. Use the side view mirrors and rear view mirror to get better coverage on both sides and rear of the vehicle.

## Manual Zoom

### WARNING



When manual zoom is on, the full area behind your vehicle may not show. Be aware of your surroundings when using the manual zoom feature.

**Note:** *Manual zoom is only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).*

**Note:** *When you enable manual zoom, only the centerline is shown.*

Selectable settings for this feature are Zoom in (+) and Zoom out (-). Press the symbol in the camera screen to change the view. The default setting is Zoom OFF.

This allows you to get a closer view of an object behind your vehicle. The zoomed image keeps the bumper in the image to provide a reference. The zoom is only active while the transmission is in reverse (R).

## Camera System Settings

The rear view camera system settings can be accessed in the display screen. See **General Information** (page 87).

## Enhanced Park Aids or Park Pilot

The system uses red, yellow and green highlights that appear on top of the video image when any of the sensing systems detect an object.

## Rear Camera Delay

Selectable settings for this feature are ON and OFF.

The default setting for the rear camera delay is OFF.

When shifting the transmission out of reverse (R) and into any gear other than park (P), the camera image remains in the display until:

- Your vehicle speed sufficiently increases.
- You shift your vehicle into park (P).

# Cruise Control

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

Cruise control lets you maintain a set speed without keeping your foot on the accelerator pedal. You can use cruise control when your vehicle speed is greater than 20 mph (30 km/h).

## USING CRUISE CONTROL

### WARNINGS



Do not use cruise control on winding roads, in heavy traffic or when the road surface is slippery. This could result in loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death.



When you are going downhill, your vehicle speed may increase above the set speed. The system will not apply the brakes but a warning displays. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

**Note:** Cruise control will disengage if the vehicle speed decreases more than 10 mph (16 km/h) below the set speed while driving uphill.



E142437

The cruise controls are on the steering wheel.

## Switching Cruise Control On

Press and release **ON**.



The indicator displays in the instrument cluster.

## Setting the Cruise Speed

1. Drive to desired speed.
2. Press and release **SET+**.
3. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

## Changing the Set Speed

- Press and release **SET+** or **SET-**. When you select kph as the display measurement in the information display, the set speed changes in approximately 2 kph increments. When you select mph as the display measurement in the information display, the set speed changes in approximately 1 mph increments.
- Press the accelerator or brake pedal until you reach the desired speed. Press and release **SET+**.
- Press and hold **SET+** or **SET-**. Release the control when you reach the desired speed.

## Canceling the Set Speed

Pull and release **CAN** or tap the brake pedal. The set speed does not erase.

## Resuming the Set Speed

Pull and release **RES**.

## Switching Cruise Control Off

Press and release **OFF** when the system is in stand by mode or switch the ignition off.

**Note:** You erase the set speed when you switch the system off.

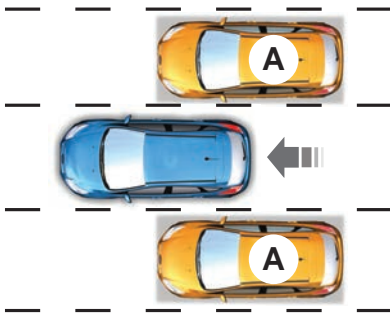
# Driving Aids

## BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM

### WARNING



To help avoid injuries, NEVER use the Blind Spot Information System as a replacement for using the interior and exterior mirrors or looking over your shoulder before changing lanes. The Blind Spot Information System is not a replacement for careful driving.



E124788

The Blind Spot Information System is designed to aid you in detecting vehicles that may have entered the blind spot zone (A). The detection area is on both sides of your vehicle, extending rearward from the exterior mirrors to approximately 13 ft (4 m) beyond the bumper. The system is designed to alert you if certain vehicles enter the blind spot zone while driving.

**Note:** *The Blind Spot Information System does not prevent contact with other vehicles or objects; nor detect parked vehicles, people, animals or infrastructure (fences, guardrails, trees). It's only designed to alert you to vehicles in the blind spot zones.*

**Note:** *When a vehicle passes quickly through the blind spot zone, typically fewer than two seconds, the system does not trigger.*

### Using the System

The Blind Spot Information System turns on when you start the engine and you drive your vehicle forward above 5 mph (8 km/h).

For automatic transmissions, the Blind Spot Information System remains on while the transmission is in drive (D). If shifted into reverse (R) or park (P) the Blind Spot Information System turns off. Once shifted back into drive (D), the Blind Spot Information System turns back on when you drive your vehicle above 5 mph (8 km/h).

For manual transmissions, the Blind Spot Information System is on for all gears except the reverse (R).

**Note:** *The Blind Spot Information System does not function in reverse (R) or park (P).*

### System Lights and Messages



E142442

## Driving Aids

The Blind Spot Information System illuminates an amber alert indicator in the outside mirror on the side of your vehicle the approaching vehicle is coming from. When the Blind Spot Information System is alerting on a vehicle and the corresponding turn signal is ON, the Blind Spot Information System alert indicator flashes as an increased warning level.

The alert indicator dims when the system detects nighttime darkness.

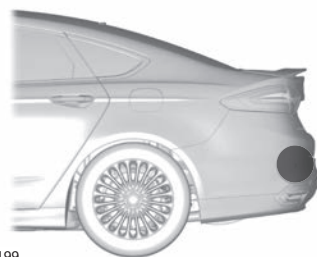
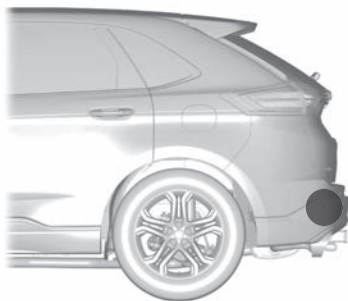
**Note:** *The alert indicator flashes in case of an alert and the turn signal is set to that side at the same time.*

### System Sensor Blockage

#### WARNING



To help avoid injuries, NEVER use the Blind Spot Information System as a replacement for using the interior and exterior mirrors or looking over your shoulder before changing lanes. The Blind Spot Information System is not a replacement for careful driving.



E205199

The system uses radar sensors that are located behind the bumper fascia on each side of your vehicle. Any dirt, mud and snow in front of the sensors and/or driving in heavy rain can cause system degradation. Also, other types of obstructions in front of the sensor can cause system degradation. This is referred to as a 'blocked' condition.

**Note:** *Do not apply bumper stickers and/or repair compound to these areas, this can cause degraded system performance.*

# Driving Aids

If the system detects a degraded performance condition, a message warning of a blocked sensor will appear in the information display. Also the BLIS alert indicators will remain ON and BLIS will no longer provide any vehicle warnings. You can clear the information display warning but the alert indicators will remain illuminated.

A "blocked" condition can be cleared in two ways:

- After the blockage in front of the sensors is removed or the rainfall/snowfall rate decreases or stops, drive for a few minutes in traffic to allow the sensors to detect passing vehicles.
- By cycling the ignition from ON to OFF and then back ON.

**Note:** *If your vehicle has a tow bar with a factory equipped trailer tow module and it is towing a trailer, the sensors will automatically turn the Blind Spot Information System off. If your vehicle has a tow bar but no factory equipped trailer tow module, it is recommended to turn the Blind Spot Information System off manually. Operating the Blind Spot Information System with a trailer attached will cause poor system performance.*

## System Errors

If the system senses a problem with the left or right sensor, the telltale will illuminate and a message will appear in the information display. See **Information Messages** (page 90).

## Switching the System Off and On

You can temporarily switch the Blind Spot Information System off in the information display. See **General Information** (page 87). When the Blind Spot Information System switches off, you will not receive alerts and the information display shows a system off message. The telltale in the cluster also illuminates. When you switch the Blind Spot Information System on or off, the alert indicators flash twice.

**Note:** *The Blind Spot Information System remembers the last selected on or off setting.*

You can also have the Blind Spot Information System switched off permanently at an authorized dealer. Once switched off permanently, the system can only be switched back on at an authorized dealer.

## CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT

### WARNING



To help avoid personal injury, NEVER use the Cross Traffic Alert system as a replacement for using the interior and exterior mirrors and looking over your shoulder before backing out of a parking space. Cross Traffic Alert is not a replacement for careful driving.

Cross Traffic Alert is designed to warn you of vehicles approaching from the sides when the transmission is in reverse (R).

## Using the System

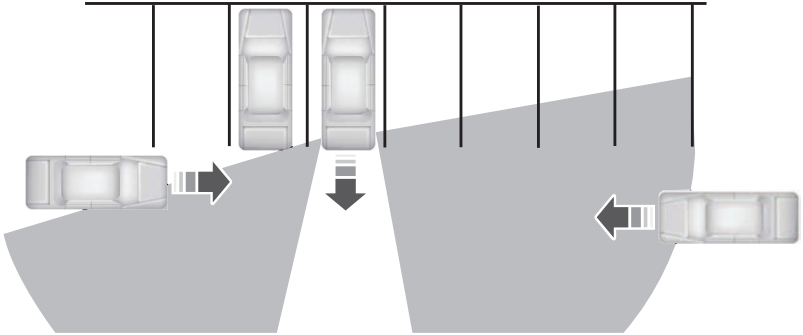
Cross Traffic Alert turns on when you start the engine and you shift into reverse (R). Once shifted out of reverse (R), Cross Traffic Alert turns off.

**Note:** *Cross Traffic Alert only functions while your transmission is in reverse (R).*

# Driving Aids

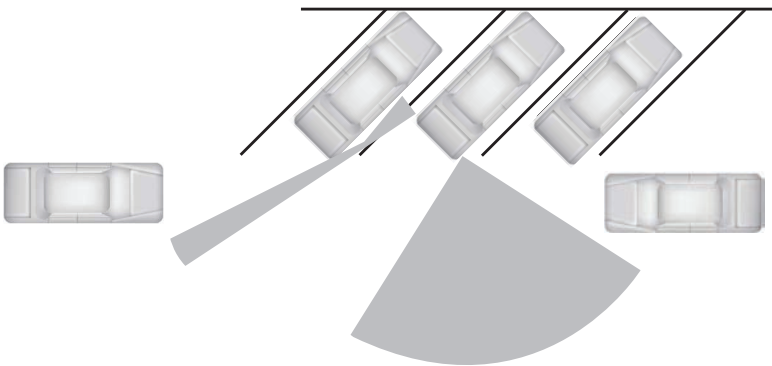
Cross Traffic Alert is designed to detect vehicles that approach with a speed up to 37 mph (60 km/h). Coverage decreases when the sensors are partially, mostly or

fully obstructed. Reversing slowly helps increase the coverage area and effectiveness.



E142440

In this first example, the left sensor is only partially obstructed; zone coverage to the right is nearly maximized.



E142441

## Driving Aids

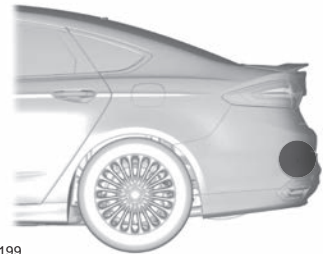
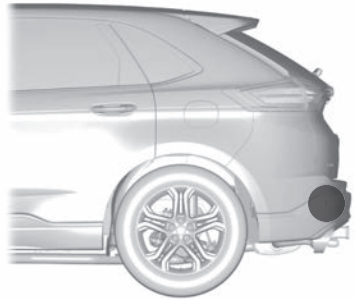
Zone coverage also decreases when parking at shallow angles. Here, the left sensor is mostly obstructed; zone coverage on that side is severely limited.

### System Lights, Messages and Audible Alerts



E142442

The Cross Traffic Alert illuminates an amber alert indicator in the outside mirror on the side of your vehicle the approaching vehicle is coming from. Cross Traffic Alert also sounds an audible alert and a message appears in the information display indicating a vehicle is coming from the right or left. Cross Traffic Alert works with the reverse sensing system that sounds its own series of tones. See **Rear Parking Aid** (page 151).



E205199

The system uses radar sensors that are located behind the bumper fascia on each side of your vehicle. Do not allow mud, snow or bumper stickers to obstruct these areas, this can cause degraded system performance. See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 161). If the Blind Spot Information System is blocked, Cross Traffic Alert is also blocked. A corresponding message appears in the information display as soon as you shift the transmission into reverse (R).

### System Limitations

Cross Traffic Alert has its limitations; situations such as severe weather conditions or debris build-up on the sensor area may limit vehicle detection.



# Driving Aids

The following are other situations that may limit the Cross Traffic Alert performance:

- Adjacently parked vehicles or objects obstructing the sensors.
- Approaching vehicles passing at speeds greater than 37 mph (60 km/h).
- Driving in reverse faster than 7 mph (12 km/h).
- Backing out of an angled parking spot.

## False Alerts

**Note:** *If your vehicle has a tow bar with a factory equipped trailer tow module and it is towing a trailer, the sensors will automatically turn the Cross Traffic Alert off. If your vehicle has a tow bar but no factory equipped trailer tow module, it is recommended to turn the Cross Traffic Alert off manually. Operating Cross Traffic Alert with a trailer attached will cause poor Cross Traffic Alert performance.*

There may be certain instances when there is a false alert by the Cross Traffic Alert system that illuminates the alert indicator with no vehicle in the coverage zone. Some amount of false alerts are normal; they are temporary and self-correct.

## System Errors

If Cross Traffic Alert senses a problem with the left or right sensor a message will appear in the information display. See **Information Messages** (page 90).

## Switching the System Off and On

You can temporarily switch Cross Traffic Alert off in the information display. See **General Information** (page 87). When you switch Cross Traffic Alert off, you will not receive alerts and the information display will display a system off message.

**Note:** *The Cross Traffic Alert switches on whenever the ignition is switched on and ready to provide appropriate alerts when the transmission is in reverse (R). Cross Traffic Alert will not remember the last selected on or off setting.*

You can also have Cross Traffic Alert switched off permanently at an authorized dealer. Once switched off permanently, the system can only be switched back on at an authorized dealer.

## ECO MODE

This system assists you in driving more efficiently by constantly monitoring characteristics of gear changing, anticipation of traffic conditions and speeds while driving.

The value of these characteristics is represented by petals shown in the display, with five petals being the most efficient. The more efficiently you drive, the better the rating, and the better your overall fuel economy.

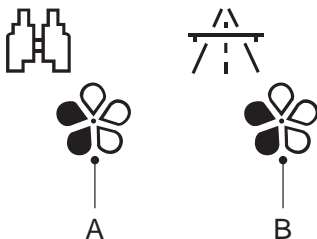
**Note:** *These efficiency values do not result in a defined fuel consumption figure. It might vary as it is not only related to these driving habits, but also influenced by many other factors such as short trips and cold starts.*

**Note:** *Frequent short trips, where the engine does not fully warm up, will also increase fuel consumption.*

The system is accessed using the information display control. See **General Information** (page 87).

# Driving Aids

## Type 1



E142444

- A Anticipation
- B Efficient speed

## Gear Shifting

Using the highest drivable gear appropriate for the road conditions will improve fuel consumption.

## Anticipation

Adjust your vehicle speed and the distance to other vehicles to avoid the need for heavy braking or acceleration to improve fuel economy.

## Efficient speed

Reduce your cruising speed on open roads to improve economy. Higher speeds use more fuel.

## Type 2 and 3

The relevant information is shown in the display.

## Resetting Eco Mode


Reset the average fuel consumption by using the information display control.


**Note:** *New values may take a short time to calculate.*


## STEERING

### Electric Power Steering

#### WARNINGS

 The electric power steering system has diagnostic checks that continuously monitor the system to ensure proper operation. When a system error is detected a steering message will appear in the information display.

 The electric power steering system has diagnostic checks that continuously monitor the system to ensure proper operation of the electronic system. When an electronic error is detected, a message will be displayed in the information display. If this happens, stop the vehicle in a safe place, and turn off the engine. After at least 10 seconds, reset the system by restarting the engine, and watch the information display for a steering message. If a steering message returns, or returns while driving, take the vehicle to your dealer to have it checked.

 Obtain immediate service if a system error is detected. You may not notice any difference in the feel of your steering, but a serious condition may exist. Failure to do so may result in loss of steering control.

Your vehicle is equipped with an electric power-assisted steering system. There is no fluid reservoir to check or fill.

If your vehicle loses electrical power while you are driving (or if the ignition is turned off), you can steer the vehicle manually, but it takes more effort. Extreme continuous steering may increase the effort it takes for you to steer. This occurs to prevent internal overheating and permanent damage to your steering

# Driving Aids

---

system. If this should occur, you will neither lose the ability to steer the vehicle manually nor will it cause permanent damage. Typical steering and driving maneuvers will allow the system to cool and steering assist will return to normal.

## **Steering Tips**

If the steering wanders or pulls, check for:

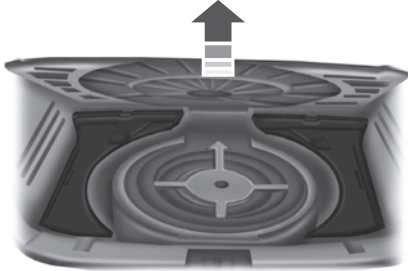
- an improperly inflated tire
- uneven tire wear
- loose or worn suspension components
- loose or worn steering components
- improper vehicle alignment

A high crown in the road or high crosswinds may also make the steering seem to wander or pull.

# Load Carrying

## REAR UNDER FLOOR STORAGE

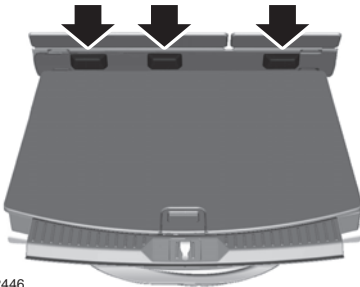
### Cargo Management System (If Equipped)



E142445

The system is located in the floor of the cargo area. Lift the handle to open.

### Adjustable Load Floor (If Equipped)





E142446

Vehicles with the standard size spare tire can adjust the load floor to two positions. The front of the load floor can be placed either on (for high position) or below (for low position) the ledges behind the rear seats. The rear of the load floor always sits on the two small shelves located on the liftgate trim.

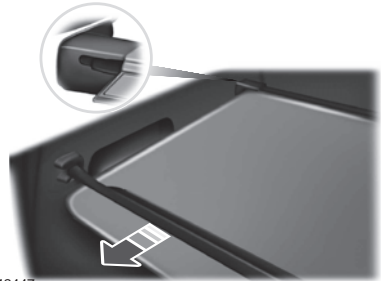
## LUGGAGE COVERS

### WARNINGS

 Make sure that the posts are properly latched in mounting features. The cover may cause injury in a sudden stop or accident if it is not securely installed.

 Do not place any objects on the cargo area shade. They may obstruct your vision or strike occupants of your vehicle in a sudden stop or crash.

Use the cargo shade to cover items in the cargo area of your vehicle.



E142447

Insert the ends of the cargo shade into the mounting features located behind the rear seat on the rear trim panels to install the cargo shade.

To operate the cargo shade:

1. Pull the rear edge of the cargo shade rearward.
2. Secure both ends of the support rod into the retention slots located on the rear quarter trim panels.

# Load Carrying

## ROOF RACKS AND LOAD CARRIERS

### WARNING



When loading the roof racks, we recommend you evenly distribute the load, as well as maintain a low center of gravity. Loaded vehicles, with higher centers of gravity, may handle differently than unloaded vehicles. Take extra precautions, such as slower speeds and increased stopping distance, when driving a heavily loaded vehicle.

The maximum recommended load, evenly distributed on the crossbars, is:

- 100 pounds (45 kilograms) for vehicles without a moonroof
- 45 pounds (20 kilograms) for vehicles with a moonroof.

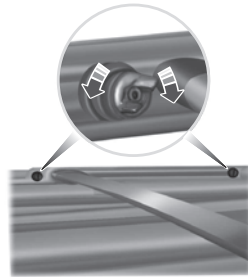
**Note:** *Never place loads directly on the roof panel. The roof panel is not designed to directly carry a load.*

For correct roof rack system function, you must place loads directly on crossbars affixed to the roof rack side rails. When using the roof rack system, we recommend you use Ford Genuine Accessory crossbars designed specifically for your vehicle.

Make sure that you securely fasten the load. Check the tightness of the load before driving and at each fuel stop.

## Adjusting the Crossbar (If Equipped)

**Note:** *For less wind noise and better aerodynamics, only install the crossbars when you need them for carrying cargo. If you prefer to keep the crossbars installed, the front crossbar has two positions. The front position is quieter for wind noise. The rear position may help to reduce wind noise from an open moonroof. Follow the steps to reposition or remove the front crossbar. You can remove the rear crossbar fasteners by unscrewing the assembly.*



E142448

1. Remove the crossbar thumbwheels at both sides of the front crossbar by turning them counterclockwise.

**Note:** *If you cannot loosen the thumbwheel with your hand, loosen the fastener head. You can also use a small screwdriver or similar tool to loosen the thumbwheel by inserting the shaft between the two paddles of the thumbwheel and rotating it loose.*

2. Remove the crossbar by sliding the ends off of the shoulder bolts in the side rails.
3. Move the crossbar to the new side rail position and slide the crossbar onto the shoulder bolt at that position.
4. Replace and tighten the thumbwheels at both sides of the crossbar by turning them clockwise until tight. You can use a small screwdriver or similar tool to tighten if necessary.

# Load Carrying

Make sure to check that the thumbwheels are tight each time you add or remove load from the roof rack, and periodically while traveling. Make sure that the load is secure before traveling.

## LOAD LIMIT

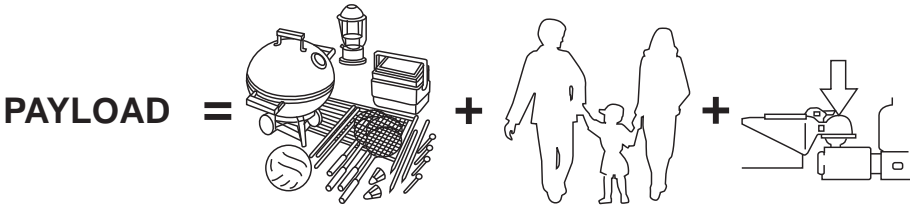
### Vehicle Loading - with and without a Trailer

This section will guide you in the proper loading of your vehicle, trailer or both, to keep your loaded vehicle weight within its design rating capability, with or without a trailer. Properly loading your vehicle will provide maximum return of vehicle design performance. Before loading your

vehicle, familiarize yourself with the following terms for determining your vehicle's weight ratings, with or without a trailer, from the vehicle's Tire Label or Safety Compliance Certification Label:

**Base Curb Weight** - is the weight of the vehicle including a full tank of fuel and all standard equipment. It does not include passengers, cargo, or optional equipment.

**Vehicle Curb Weight** - is the weight of your new vehicle when you picked it up from your authorized dealer plus any aftermarket equipment.



E143816


**Payload** - is the combined weight of cargo and passengers that the vehicle is carrying. The maximum payload for your vehicle can be found on the Tire Label on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver door (vehicles exported outside the US and Canada may not have a Tire Label). Look for **“THE COMBINED WEIGHT OF OCCUPANTS AND CARGO**

**SHOULD NEVER EXCEED XXX kg OR XXX lb.”** for maximum payload. The payload listed on the Tire Label is the maximum payload for the vehicle as built by the assembly plant. If you install any aftermarket or

# Load Carrying

authorized-dealer installed equipment on the vehicle, you must subtract the weight of the equipment from the payload listed on the Tire Label in order to determine the new payload.

## WARNING

 The appropriate loading capacity of your vehicle can be limited either by volume capacity (how much space is available) or by payload capacity (how much weight the vehicle should carry). Once you have reached the maximum payload of your vehicle, do not add more cargo, even if there is space available. Overloading or improperly loading your vehicle can contribute to loss of vehicle control and vehicle rollover.

### Example only:

TIRE AND LOADING INFORMATION				
SEATING CAPACITY		TOTAL 5	FRONT 2	REAR 3
The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed: <b>XXX kg or XXX lbs.</b>				
TIRE	SIZE	COLD TIRE PRESSURE		SEE OWNER'S MANUAL FOR ADDITIONAL INFORMATION
FRONT	LT225/75R16.5E	200 KPA, 29 PSI		
REAR	LT225/75R16.5E	200 KPA, 29 PSI		
SPARE	T145/80D16 P225/60R17	420 KPA, 60 PSI	200 KPA, 29 PSI	

E210944

TIRE AND LOADING INFORMATION				
RENSEIGNEMENTS SUR LES PNEUS ET LE CHARGEMENT				
SEATING CAPACITY		TOTAL 5	FRONT 2	REAR 3
NOMBRE DE PLACES		AVANT		ARRIERE
The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed 492 kg or 1085 lbs.				
Le poids total des occupants et du chargement ne doit jamais dépasser 492 kg ou 1085 lbs.				
TIRE PNEU	SIZE DIMENSIONS	COLD TIRE PRESSURE PRESSION DES PNEUS A FROID		SEE OWNER'S MANUAL FOR ADDITIONAL INFORMATION
FRONT AVANT	P235/70R16	240 KPA, 35 PSI		
REAR ARRIERE	P235/70R16	240 KPA, 35 PSI		
SPARE DE SECOURS	T145/90R17	415 KPA, 60 PSI		

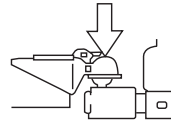
E210945

CARGO =

=



+



E143817

# Load Carrying

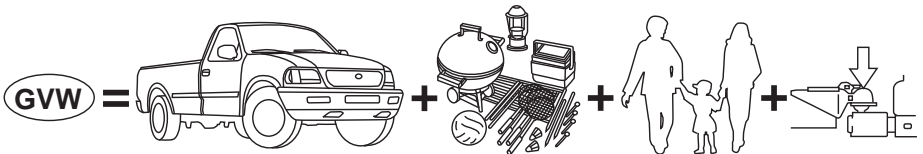
**Cargo Weight** - includes all weight added to the Base Curb Weight, including cargo and optional equipment. When towing, trailer tongue load or king pin weight is also part of cargo weight.

**GAW (Gross Axle Weight)** - is the total weight placed on each axle (front and rear) including vehicle curb weight and all payload.

**GAWR (Gross Axle Weight Rating)** - is the maximum allowable weight that can be carried by a single axle (front or rear). These numbers are shown on the Safety Compliance

Certification Label. The label shall be affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver seating position. **The total load on each axle must never exceed its Gross Axle Weight Rating.**

**Note:** For trailer towing information refer to the *RV and Trailer Towing Guide* available at an authorized dealer.



E143818

**GVW (Gross Vehicle Weight)** - is the Vehicle Curb Weight, plus cargo, plus passengers.

**GVWR (Gross Vehicle Weight Rating)** - is the maximum allowable weight of the fully loaded vehicle (including all options, equipment, passengers and cargo). It is shown on the

Safety Compliance Certification Label. The label shall be affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver seating position. **The Gross Vehicle Weight must never exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating.**



# Load Carrying


## Example only:

MFD. BY FORD MOTOR CO.

DATE: XX/XX GVWR: XXXX KG (XXXX LB)  
 FRONT GAWR: REAR GAWR:  
 XXXX KG (XXXX LB) WITH XXXX KG (XXXX LB) WITH  
 TIRES XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX TIRES  
 XXXXXXXX RIMS XXXXXXXX RIMS  
 AT XXXX kPa/ XXX PSI COLD AT XXXX kPa/ XXX PSI COLD

THIS VEHICLE CONFORMS TO ALL APPLICABLE FEDERAL MOTOR VEHICLE SAFETY AND THEFT PREVENTION STANDARDS IN EFFECT ON THE DATE OF MANUFACTURE SHOWN ABOVE.

VIN: XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX XXXXX  
 TYPE: XXXX XXXXX




EXT PNT: XX XXXXXX | RC: XX | DSO: XXXX  
 WB | INT TR | TP/PS | R | AXLE | TR | SPR | XXXX  
 XXX XX X XX X XXXX XXXX  
 XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX XXX XXXX-XXXXXXXX-XX

MFD. BY FORD MOTOR CO.

DATE: xx/xx GVWR/PNBV: xxxxx LB/xxxxx KG  
 FRONT GAWR/PNBE AV / REAR GAWR/ PNBE AR  
 xxxxx/xxxxx B / xxxxx KG/xxxxx B  
 WITH/AVEC TIRES/PNEUS  
 xxxxx/xxxxx  
 xxxxx/xxxxx  
 xxxxxx RIMS/JANTES xxxxxx

AT/A kPa/PSI/LPC xxx/xx COLD/A FROID xxx/xx  
 /JUMEELES


VIN: xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx xxxxxx  
 TYPE: xxx/xxxxx COMPLIES: xxxxx/xxx-xxx xxxxxx



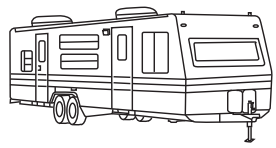
EXT PNT: U | RC: xx | DSO: xxxxxx  
 WB | INT TR | TP/PS | R | AXLE | TR | SPR | xxxxxx  
 xxx xx x xx x xxxx xxx  
 xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx xxx xxxxx-xxxxxxxx-xx

E198828

## WARNING

 Exceeding the Safety Compliance Certification Label vehicle weight rating limits could result in substandard vehicle handling or performance, engine, transmission and/or structural damage, serious damage to the vehicle, loss of control and personal injury.

GCW
=
GVW
+



E143819

# Load Carrying

---

## **GCW (Gross Combined Weight)**

- is the Gross Vehicle Weight plus the weight of the fully loaded trailer.

## **GCWR (Gross Combined Weight Rating)**

- is the maximum allowable weight of the vehicle and the loaded trailer, including all cargo and passengers, that the vehicle can handle without risking damage. (Important: The towing vehicle's braking system is rated for operation at Gross Vehicle Weight Rating, not at Gross Combined Weight Rating.)

Separate functional brakes should be used for safe control of towed vehicles and for trailers where the Gross Combined Weight of the towing vehicle plus the trailer exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating of the towing vehicle. **The Gross Combined Weight must never exceed the Gross Combined Weight Rating.**

## **Maximum Loaded Trailer Weight**

- is the highest possible weight of a fully loaded trailer the vehicle can tow. It assumes a vehicle with mandatory options, driver and front passenger weight (150 pounds [68 kilograms] each), no cargo weight (internal or external) and a tongue load of 10–15% (conventional trailer) or king pin weight of 15–25% (fifth wheel trailer). Consult an authorized dealer (or the RV and Trailer Towing Guide available at an authorized dealer) for more detailed information.

## **Tongue Load or Fifth Wheel King Pin Weight**

- refers to the amount of the weight that a trailer pushes down on a trailer hitch.

**Examples:** For a 5000 pound (2268 kilogram) conventional trailer, multiply 5000 by 0.10 and 0.15 to obtain a proper tongue load range of 500 to 750 pounds (227 to 340 kilograms). For an 11500 pound (5216 kilogram) fifth wheel trailer, multiply by 0.15 and 0.25 to obtain a proper king pin load range of 1725 to 2875 pounds (782 to 1304 kilograms).

## **WARNINGS**



Do not exceed the GVWR or the GAWR specified on the Safety Compliance Certification Label.



Do not use replacement tires with lower load carrying capacities than the original tires because they may lower the vehicle's GVWR and GAWR limitations. Replacement tires with a higher limit than the original tires do not increase the GVWR and GAWR limitations.



Exceeding any vehicle weight rating limitation could result in serious damage to the vehicle and/or personal injury.

---

## **Steps for determining the correct load limit:**

# Load Carrying

1. Locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lb." on your vehicle's placard.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lb.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the "XXX" amount equals 1,400 lb. and there will be five 150 lb. passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lb. ( $1400 - 750 (5 \times 150) = 650 \text{ lb.}$ ).
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

The following gives you a few examples on how to calculate the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity:

\*Suppose your vehicle has a 1400-pound (635-kilogram) cargo and luggage capacity. You decide to go golfing. Is there enough load capacity to carry you, four of your friends and all the golf bags? You and four friends average 220 pounds (99 kilograms) each and the golf bags weigh approximately 30 pounds (13.5 kilograms) each. The calculation would be:  $1400 - (5 \times 220) - (5 \times 30) = 1400 - 1100 - 150 = 150$  pounds. Yes, you have enough load capacity in your vehicle to transport four friends and your golf bags. In metric units, the calculation would be:  $635 \text{ kilograms} - (5 \times 99 \text{ kilograms}) - (5 \times 13.5 \text{ kilograms}) = 635 - 495 - 67.5 = 72.5$  kilograms.

\*Suppose your vehicle has a 1400-pound (635-kilogram) cargo and luggage capacity. You and one of your friends decide to pick up cement from the local home improvement store to finish that patio you have been planning for the past two years. Measuring the inside of the vehicle with the rear seat folded down, you have room for twelve 100-pound (45-kilogram) bags of cement. Do you have enough load capacity to transport the cement to your home? If you and your friend each weigh 220 pounds (99 kilograms), the calculation would be:  $1400 - (2 \times 220) - (12 \times 100) = 1400 - 440 - 1200 = -240$  pounds. No, you do not have enough cargo capacity to carry that much weight. In metric units, the calculation would

## Load Carrying

---

be:  $635 \text{ kilograms} - (2 \times 99 \text{ kilograms}) - (12 \times 45 \text{ kilograms}) = 635 - 198 - 540 = -103 \text{ kilograms}$ . You will need to reduce the load weight by at least 240 pounds (104 kilograms). If you remove three 100-pound (45-kilogram) cement bags, then the load calculation would be:  $1400 - (2 \times 220) - (9 \times 100) = 1400 - 440 - 900 = 60 \text{ pounds}$ . Now you have the load capacity to transport the cement and your friend home. In metric units, the calculation would be:  $635 \text{ kilograms} - (2 \times 99 \text{ kilograms}) - (9 \times 45 \text{ kilograms}) = 635 - 198 - 405 = 32 \text{ kilograms}$ .

The above calculations also assume that the loads are positioned in your vehicle in a manner that does not overload the Front or the Rear Gross Axle Weight Rating specified for your vehicle on the Safety Compliance Certification Label. The label shall be affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver seating position.

### Special Loading Instructions for Owners of Pick-up Trucks and Utility-type Vehicles

#### WARNING



Loaded vehicles may handle differently than unloaded vehicles. Extra precautions, such as slower speeds and increased stopping distance, should be taken when driving a heavily loaded vehicle.

---

Your vehicle can haul more cargo and people than most passenger cars. Depending upon the type and placement of the load, hauling cargo and people may raise the center of gravity of the vehicle.

# Towing

## TOWING A TRAILER

### WARNINGS



Do not exceed the GVWR or the GAWR specified on the certification label.



Towing trailers beyond the maximum recommended gross trailer weight exceeds the limit of the vehicle and could result in engine damage, transmission damage, structural damage, loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.

Your vehicle may have electrical items, such as fuses or relays, related to towing. See **Fuses** (page 202).

Your vehicle's load capacity designation is by weight, not by volume, so you cannot necessarily use all available space when loading a vehicle or trailer.

Towing a trailer places an extra load on your vehicle's engine, transmission, axle, brakes, tires and suspension. Inspect these components periodically during, and after, any towing operation.

## Load Placement

To help minimize how trailer movement affects your vehicle when driving:

- Load the heaviest items closest to the trailer floor.
- Load the heaviest items centered between the left and right side trailer tires.
- Load the heaviest items above the trailer axles or just slightly forward toward the trailer tongue. Do not allow the final trailer tongue weight to go above or below 10-15% of the loaded trailer weight.
- Select a ball mount with the correct rise or drop. When both the loaded vehicle and trailer are connected, the trailer frame should be level, or slightly angled down toward your vehicle, when viewed from the side.

When driving with a trailer or payload, a slight takeoff vibration or shudder may be present due to the increased payload weight. Additional information regarding proper trailer loading and setting your vehicle up for towing is located in another chapter of this manual. See **Load Limit** (page 171).

You can also find information in the **RV & Trailer Towing Guide** available at your authorized dealer, or online.

# Towing

## RV & Trailer Towing Guide Online

Website | <http://www.fleet.ford.com/towing-guides/>

### TRAILER SWAY CONTROL (If Equipped)

#### WARNING



Turning off trailer sway control increases the risk of loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death. Ford does not recommend disabling this feature except in situations where speed reduction may be detrimental (such as hill climbing), the driver has significant trailer towing experience, and can control trailer sway and maintain safe operation.

**Note:** This feature does not prevent trailer sway, but reduces it when it begins.

**Note:** This feature cannot stop all trailers from swaying.

**Note:** In some cases, if your vehicle speed is too high, the system may turn on multiple times, gradually reducing your vehicle speed.

The system applies the brakes to the individual wheels and reduces engine torque to aid vehicle stability. If the trailer begins to sway, the stability control warning lamp flashes and a message appears in the information display. See **Information Messages** (page 90). Slow your vehicle down, pull safely to the side of the road and check for correct load distribution.

You can switch this feature off in the information display. When you switch the ignition on, the system automatically turns on.

### RECOMMENDED TOWING WEIGHTS

**Note:** Do not exceed the trailer weight for your vehicle configuration listed in the chart below.

**Note:** Be sure to take into consideration trailer frontal area. Do not exceed 20 feet<sup>2</sup> (1.86 meters<sup>2</sup>) if your vehicle is not equipped with a towing package or 30 feet<sup>2</sup> (2.79 meters<sup>2</sup>) if your vehicle is equipped with a towing package.

**Note:** For high altitude operation, reduce the gross combined weight by 2% per 1000 feet (300 meters) starting at the 1000 foot (300 meter) elevation point.

**Note:** Certain states require electric trailer brakes for trailers over a specified weight. Be sure to check state regulations for this specified weight. The maximum trailer weights listed may be limited to this specified weight, as the vehicle's electrical system may not include the wiring connector needed to activate electric trailer brakes.

# Towing

Your vehicle may tow a trailer provided the maximum trailer weight is less than or equal to the

maximum trailer weight listed for your vehicle configuration on the following chart.

<b>Powertrain</b>	<b>Maximum GCWR</b>	<b>Maximum trailer weight<sup>1</sup></b>
2.5L 2WD	5351 lb (2427 kg)	1500 lb (681 kg)
1.6L GTDI 2WD	5862 lb (2659 kg)	2000 lb (907 kg)
2.0L GTDI 2WD <sup>2</sup>	5957 lb (2702 kg)	2000 lb (907 kg)
2.0L GTDI 2WD <sup>3</sup>	7457 lb (3382 kg)	3500 lb (1588 kg)
1.6L GTDI 4WD	6005 lb (2724 kg)	2000 lb (907 kg)
2.0L GTDI 4WD <sup>2</sup>	6091 lb (2763 kg)	2000 lb (907 kg)
2.0L GTDI 4WD <sup>3</sup>	7591 lb (3443 kg)	3500 lb (1588 kg)

<sup>1</sup>Calculated with SAE J2807 method.

<sup>2</sup>Without trailer towing package.

<sup>3</sup> With trailer towing package.

# Towing

## ESSENTIAL TOWING CHECKS

Follow these guidelines for safe towing:

- Do not tow a trailer until you drive your vehicle at least 1,000 mi (1,600 km).
- Consult your local motor vehicle laws for towing a trailer.
- See the instructions included with towing accessories for the proper installation and adjustment specifications.
- Service your vehicle more frequently if you tow a trailer. See your scheduled maintenance information.
- If you use a rental trailer, follow the instructions the rental agency gives you.

You can find information on load specification terms found on the tire label and Safety Compliance label as well as instructions on calculating your vehicle's load in the Load Carrying chapter. See **Load Limit** (page 171).

Remember to account for the trailer tongue weight as part of your vehicle load when calculating the total vehicle weight.


## Hitches

Do not use a hitch that either clamps onto the bumper or attaches to the axle.

Distribute the trailer load so 10-15% of the total trailer weight is on the tongue.

## Weight-distributing Hitches

### WARNING

 Do not adjust a weight-distributing hitch to any position where the rear bumper of the vehicle is higher than it was before attaching the trailer. Doing so will defeat the function of the weight-distributing hitch, which may cause unpredictable handling, and could result in serious personal injury.

When hooking-up a trailer using a weight-distributing hitch, always use the following procedure:

1. Park the loaded vehicle, without the trailer, on a level surface.
2. Measure the height to the top of your vehicle's front wheel opening on the fender. This is H1.
3. Attach the loaded trailer to your vehicle without the weight-distributing bars connected.
4. Measure the height to the top of your vehicle's front wheel opening on the fender a second time. This is H2.
5. Install and adjust the tension in the weight-distributing bars so that the height of your vehicle's front wheel opening on the fender is approximately half the way down from H2, toward H1.



# Towing

6. Check that the trailer is level or slightly nose down toward your vehicle. If not, adjust the ball height accordingly and repeat Steps 2-6.

When the trailer is level or slightly nose down toward the vehicle:

- Lock the bar tension adjuster in place.
- Check that the trailer tongue securely attaches and locks onto the hitch.
- Install safety chains, lighting, and trailer brake controls as required by law or the trailer manufacturer.

## Safety Chains


**Note:** *Never attach safety chains to the bumper.*

Always connect the safety chains to the hook retainers of your vehicle hitch.

To connect the trailer's safety chains, cross them under the trailer tongue and allow enough slack for turning tight corners. Do not allow the chains to drag on the ground.

## Trailer Brakes

### WARNING

 Do not connect a trailer's hydraulic brake system directly to your vehicle's brake system. Your vehicle may not have enough braking power and your chances of having a collision greatly increase.

Electric brakes and manual, automatic or surge-type trailer brakes are safe if you install them properly and adjust them to the manufacturer's specifications. The trailer brakes must meet local and federal regulations.

**The rating for the tow vehicle's braking system operation is at the gross vehicle weight rating, not the gross combined weight rating.**

**Separate functioning brake systems are required for safe control of towed vehicles and trailers weighing more than 1500 pounds (680 kilograms) when loaded.**

# Towing

## Trailer Lamps

### WARNING



Never connect any trailer lamp wiring to the vehicle's tail lamp wiring; this may damage the electrical system resulting in fire. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible for assistance in proper trailer tow wiring installation. Additional electrical equipment may be required.

Trailer lamps are required on most towed vehicles. Make sure all running lights, brake lights, turn signals and hazard lights are working.

## Before Towing a Trailer

Practice turning, stopping and backing up to get the feel of your vehicle-trailer combination before starting on a trip. When turning, make wider turns so the trailer wheels clear curbs and other obstacles.

## When Towing a Trailer

- Do not drive faster than 70 mph (113 km/h) during the first 500 mi (800 km).
- Do not make full-throttle starts.
- Check your hitch, electrical connections and trailer wheel lug nuts thoroughly after you have traveled 50 mi (80 km).
- When stopped in congested or heavy traffic during hot weather, place the gearshift in position **P** to aid engine and transmission cooling and to help A/C performance.
- Turn off the speed control with heavy loads or in hilly terrain. The speed control may turn off automatically when you are towing on long, steep grades.
- Shift to a lower gear when driving down a long or steep hill. Do not apply the brakes continuously, as they may overheat and become less effective.
- If your transmission is equipped with a Grade Assist or Tow/Haul feature, use this feature when towing. This provides engine braking and helps eliminate excessive transmission shifting for optimum fuel economy and transmission cooling.
- Allow more distance for stopping with a trailer attached. Anticipate stops and brake gradually.
- Avoid parking on a grade.
  1. Turn the steering wheel to point your vehicle tires away from traffic flow.
  2. Set your vehicle parking brake.
  3. Place the automatic transmission in position **P**.

# Towing

- Place wheel chocks in front and back of the trailer wheels. (Chocks not included with vehicle.)

## Launching or Retrieving a Boat or Personal Watercraft (PWC)

**Note:** Disconnect the wiring to the trailer **before** backing the trailer into the water.

**Note:** Reconnect the wiring to the trailer **after** removing the trailer from the water.

When backing down a ramp during boat launching or retrieval:

- Do not allow the static water level to rise above the bottom edge of the rear bumper.
- Do not allow waves to break higher than 6 in (15 cm) above the bottom edge of the rear bumper.

Exceeding these limits may allow water to enter vehicle components:

- Causing internal damage to the components.
- Affecting driveability, emissions, and reliability.

Replace the rear axle lubricant anytime the rear axle has been submerged in water. Water may have contaminated the rear axle lubricant, which is not normally checked or changed unless a leak is suspected or other axle repair is required.

## TOWING POINTS

Due to local market requirements in some countries, some vehicles may be equipped with a recovery hook.

### Recovery Hook Location

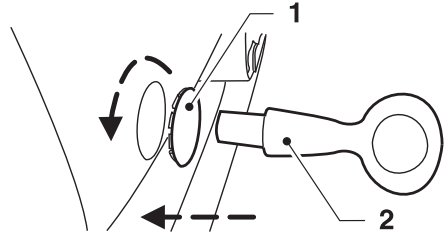
If your vehicle is equipped with a screw-in recovery hook, it is located in the luggage compartment under the floor cover.

If your vehicle is not equipped with a recovery hook, you can purchase one from your dealer.

### Installing the Recovery Hook

There is an installation point for the recovery hook located behind the fascia.

**Note:** The screw-in recovery hook has a left-hand thread. Turn it counterclockwise to install it. Make sure that the recovery hook is fully tightened.



E146284

Insert a suitable object to pry open the cover (1). Use the recessed (notched) portion of the cover. Screw in the recovery hook (2).

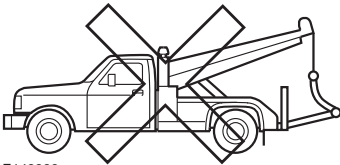
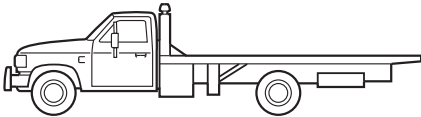
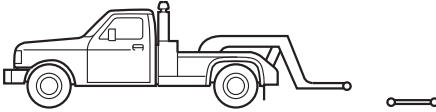
## Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels

Switch the ignition to the on position. Failure to do so results in steering lock and non-function of indicator and brake lamps.

# Towing

Braking and steering efforts are high if the engine is not running. Maintain increased stopping distances.

## TRANSPORTING THE VEHICLE



E143886

If you need to have your vehicle towed, contact a professional towing service or, if you are a member of a roadside assistance program, your roadside assistance service provider.

We recommend the use of a wheel lift and dollies or flatbed equipment to tow your vehicle. Do not tow with a slingbelt. Ford Motor Company has not approved a slingbelt towing procedure. Vehicle damage may occur if towed incorrectly, or by any other means.

Ford Motor Company produces a towing manual for all authorized tow truck operators. Have your tow truck operator refer to this manual for proper hook-up and towing procedures for your vehicle.

It is acceptable to have your front-wheel drive vehicle towed from the front if using proper wheel lift equipment to raise the front wheels off the ground. When towing in this manner, the rear wheels can remain on the ground.

Front-wheel drive vehicles must have the front wheels placed on a tow dolly when towing your vehicle from the rear using wheel lift equipment. This prevents damage to the transmission.

Towing a four-wheel drive vehicle requires that all wheels be off the ground, such as using a wheel lift and dollies or flatbed equipment. This prevents damage to the transmission, four-wheel drive system and vehicle.

## TOWING THE VEHICLE ON FOUR WHEELS

### Emergency Towing

If your vehicle becomes inoperable (without access to wheel dollies, car-hauling trailer, or flatbed transport vehicle), it can be flat-towed (all wheels on the ground, regardless of the powertrain and transmission configuration) under the following conditions:

- Your vehicle is facing forward for towing in a forward direction.
- Place the transmission in position **N**. If you cannot move the transmission into **N**, you may need to override it. See **Transmission** (page 137).
- Maximum speed is 35 mph (56 km/h).
- Maximum distance is 50 mi (80 km).

# Towing

---

## WARNING



If your vehicle has a steering wheel lock make sure the ignition is in the accessory or on position when being towed.

---

## Recreational Towing

**Note:** Put your climate control system in recirculated air mode to prevent exhaust fumes from entering the vehicle. See **Climate Control** (page 100).

Follow these guidelines if you have a need for recreational (RV) towing. An example of recreational towing would be towing your vehicle behind a motorhome. We designed these guidelines to prevent damage to your transmission.

Front-wheel drive vehicles **CANNOT** be flat-towed (all wheels on the ground) as vehicle or transmission damage may occur. You must place the front wheels on a two-wheel tow dolly. If you are using a tow dolly, follow the instructions specified by the equipment provider.

Four-wheel drive vehicles **CANNOT** be flat-towed (all wheels on the ground), as vehicle or transmission damage may occur. It is recommended to tow your vehicle with all four (4) wheels off the ground such as when using a car-hauling trailer. Otherwise, you cannot recreational tow your vehicle.

# Driving Hints

---

## BREAKING-IN

You need to break in new tires for approximately 300 miles (480 kilometers). During this time, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics.

Avoid driving too fast during the first 1000 miles (1600 kilometers). Vary your speed frequently and change up through the gears early. Do not labor the engine.

Do not tow during the first 1000 miles (1600 kilometers).

## ECONOMICAL DRIVING

Your fuel economy is affected by several things, such as how you drive, the conditions you drive under, and how you maintain your vehicle.

You may improve your fuel economy by keeping these things in mind:

- Accelerate and slow down in a smooth, moderate fashion.
- Drive at steady speeds without stopping.
- Anticipate stops; slowing down may eliminate the need to stop.
- Combine errands and minimize stop-and-go driving.
- Close the windows for high-speed driving.
- Drive at reasonable speeds (traveling at 55 mph [88 km/h] uses 15% less fuel than traveling at 65 mph [105 km/h]).
- Keep the tires properly inflated and use only the recommended size.
- Use the recommended engine oil.
- Perform all regularly scheduled maintenance.

Avoid these actions; they reduce your fuel economy:

- Sudden accelerations or hard accelerations.
- Revving the engine before turning it off.
- Idle for periods longer than one minute.
- Warm up your vehicle on cold mornings.
- Use the air conditioner or front defroster.
- Use the speed control in hilly terrain.
- Rest your foot on the brake pedal while driving.
- Drive a heavily loaded vehicle or tow a trailer.
- Carry unnecessary weight (approximately 1 mpg [0.4 km/L] is lost for every 400 lb [180 kilogram] of weight carried).
- Driving with the wheels out of alignment.

### Conditions

- Heavily loading a vehicle or towing a trailer may reduce fuel economy at any speed.
- Adding certain accessories to your vehicle (for example bug deflectors, rollbars, light bars, running boards, ski racks or luggage racks) may reduce fuel economy.
- To maximize the fuel economy, drive with the tonneau cover installed (if equipped).
- Using fuel blended with alcohol may lower fuel economy.
- Fuel economy may decrease with lower temperatures during the first 8–10 miles (12–16 kilometers) of driving.
- Driving on flat terrain offers improved fuel economy as compared to driving on hilly terrain.

# Driving Hints

- Transmissions give their best fuel economy when operated in the top cruise gear and with steady pressure on the gas pedal.
- Four-wheel-drive operation (if equipped) is less fuel efficient than two-wheel-drive operation.
- Close the windows for high-speed driving.

## DRIVING THROUGH WATER

### WARNING



Do not drive through flowing or deep water as you may lose control of your vehicle.

**Note:** *Driving through standing water can cause vehicle damage.*

**Note:** *Engine damage can occur if water enters the air filter.*

Before driving through standing water, check the depth. Never drive through water that is higher than the bottom of the front rocker area of your vehicle.



E176360

When driving through standing water, drive very slowly and do not stop your vehicle. Your brake performance and traction may be limited. After driving through water and as soon as it is safe to do so:

- Lightly press the brake pedal to dry the brakes and to check that they work.
- Check that the horn works.
- Check that the exterior lights work.
- Turn the steering wheel to check that the steering power assist works.

## FLOOR MATS

### WARNINGS



Always use floor mats that are designed to fit the foot well of your vehicle. Only use floor mats that leave the pedal area unobstructed. Only use floor mats that are firmly secured to retention posts so that they cannot slip out of position and interfere with the pedals or impair safe operation of your vehicle in other ways.



Pedals that cannot move freely can cause loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious personal injury.



Always make sure that the floor mats are properly attached to the retention posts in the carpet that are supplied with your vehicle. Floor mats must be properly secured to both retention posts to make sure mats do not shift out of position.



Never place floor mats or any other covering in the vehicle foot well that cannot be properly secured to prevent them from moving and interfering with the pedals or the ability to control the vehicle.





Never place floor mats or any other covering on top of already installed floor mats. Floor mats should always rest on top of vehicle carpeting surface and not another floor mat or other covering. Additional floor mats or any other covering will reduce the pedal clearance and potentially interfere with pedal operation.


# Driving Hints

---

## WARNINGS

 Check attachment of floor mats on a regular basis. Always properly reinstall and secure floor mats that have been removed for cleaning or replacement.

 Always make sure that objects cannot fall into the driver foot well while the vehicle is moving. Objects that are loose can become trapped under the pedals causing a loss of vehicle control.

 Failure to properly follow floor mat installation or attachment instructions can potentially cause interference with pedal operation causing a loss of vehicle control.

---



E142666

To install floor mats, position the floor mat so that the eyelet is over the retention post and press down to lock in.

To remove the floor mat, reverse the installation procedure.



# Roadside Emergencies

---

## ROADSIDE ASSISTANCE

### Vehicles Sold in the United States: Getting Roadside Assistance

To fully assist you should you have a vehicle concern, Ford Motor Company offers a complimentary roadside assistance program. This program is separate from the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. The service is available:

- 24 hours a day, seven days a week.
- For the coverage period listed on the Roadside Assistance Card included in your Owner's Manual portfolio.

Roadside Assistance covers:

- A flat tire change with a good spare, if provided with the vehicle (except vehicles supplied with a tire inflation kit).
- Battery jump start.
- Lock-out assistance (key replacement cost is the customer's responsibility).
- Fuel delivery — independent service contractors, if not prohibited by state, local or municipal law, shall deliver up to 2 gal (7.6 L) of gasoline or 5 gal (18.9 L) of diesel fuel to a disabled vehicle. Roadside Assistance limits fuel delivery service to two no-charge occurrences within a 12-month period.
- Winch out — available within 100 ft (30.5 m) of a paved or county maintained road, no recoveries.
- Towing — independent service contractors, if not prohibited by state, local or municipal law, shall tow Ford eligible vehicles to an authorized dealer within 35 mi (56 km) of the disablement location or to the nearest

authorized dealer. If a member requests a tow to an authorized dealer that is more than 35 mi (56 km) from the disablement location, the member shall be responsible for any mileage costs in excess of 35 mi (56 km).

Roadside Assistance includes up to \$200 for a towed trailer if the disabled eligible vehicle requires service at the nearest authorized dealer. If the towing vehicle is operational but the trailer is not, then the trailer does not qualify for any roadside services.

### Vehicles Sold in the United States: Using Roadside Assistance

Complete the roadside assistance identification card and place it in your wallet for quick reference. This card is in the owner's information portfolio in the glove compartment.

United States Ford vehicle customers who require Roadside Assistance, call 1-800-241-3673.

If you need to arrange roadside assistance for yourself, Ford Motor Company reimburses a reasonable amount for towing to the nearest dealership within 35 mi (56 km). To obtain reimbursement information, United States Ford vehicle customers call 1-800-241-3673. Customers need to submit their original receipts.

### Vehicles Sold in Canada: Getting Roadside Assistance

To fully assist you should you have a vehicle concern, Ford Motor Company of Canada, Limited offers a complimentary roadside assistance program. This program is eligible within Canada or the continental United States.

# Roadside Emergencies

This program is separate from the New Vehicle Limited Warranty, but the coverage is concurrent with the powertrain coverage period of your vehicle.

Canadian customers who require roadside assistance, call 1-800-665-2006.

## Vehicles Sold in Canada: Using Roadside Assistance

Complete the roadside assistance identification card and place it in your wallet for quick reference.

In Canada, this card is found in the Warranty Guide in the glove compartment of your vehicle.

## Vehicles Sold in Canada: Roadside Assistance Program Coverage

The service is available 24 hours a day, seven days a week.

Canadian roadside coverage and benefits may differ from the U.S. coverage.

For complete program coverage details you may contact your dealer, you can call us in Canada at 1-800-665-2006, or visit our website at [www.ford.ca](http://www.ford.ca).

## HAZARD WARNING FLASHERS

**Note:** *If used when the vehicle is not running, the battery will lose charge. There may be insufficient power to restart your vehicle.*



The hazard warning button is located on the instrument panel. Use it when your vehicle is creating a safety hazard for other motorists.

- Press the button to turn on the hazard warning function, and the front and rear direction indicators will flash.
- Press the button again to turn them off.

## FUEL SHUTOFF

### WARNING



Failure to inspect and, if necessary, repair fuel leaks after a collision may increase the risk of fire and serious injury. Ford Motor Company recommends that the fuel system be inspected by an authorized dealer after any collision.

In the event of a moderate to severe collision, this vehicle includes a fuel pump shutoff feature that stops the flow of fuel to the engine. Not every impact will cause a shutoff.

Should your vehicle shut off after a collision, you may restart your vehicle. For vehicles equipped with a key system:

1. Switch off the ignition.
2. Switch on the ignition.
3. Repeat Steps 1 and 2 to re-enable the fuel pump.

For vehicles equipped with a push button start system:

1. Press the **START/STOP** button to switch off the ignition.
2. Press the brake pedal and press the **START/STOP** button to switch on the ignition.
3. Remove your foot from the brake pedal and press the **START/STOP** button to switch off the ignition.
4. You can either attempt to start the engine by pressing the brake pedal and the **START/STOP** button, or switch on the ignition only by pressing the **START/STOP** button without pressing the brake pedal. Both ways re-enable the fuel system.

# Roadside Emergencies

**Note:** When you try to restart your vehicle after a fuel shutoff, the vehicle makes sure that various systems are safe to restart. Once your vehicle determines that the systems are safe, then the vehicle will allow you to restart.

**Note:** In the event that your vehicle does not restart after your third attempt, contact an authorized dealer.

## JUMP STARTING THE VEHICLE

### WARNINGS



The gases around the battery can explode if exposed to flames, sparks, or lit cigarettes. An explosion could result in personal injury or vehicle damage.



Batteries contain sulfuric acid which can burn skin, eyes and clothing, if contacted.



Use only an adequate-sized cable with insulated clamps.

## Preparing Your Vehicle

**Note:** Do not attempt to push-start your automatic transmission vehicle. Automatic transmissions do not have push-start capability. Attempting to push-start a vehicle with an automatic transmission may cause transmission damage.

**Note:** Use only a 12-volt supply to start your vehicle.

**Note:** Do not disconnect the battery of the disabled vehicle as this could damage the vehicle's electrical system.

Park the booster vehicle close to the hood of the disabled vehicle, making sure the two vehicles do not touch. Turn all accessories off.

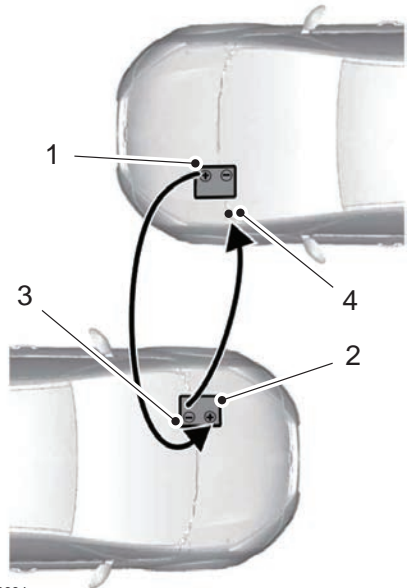
## Connecting the Jumper Cables

### WARNING



Do not attach the cables to fuel lines, engine rocker covers, the intake manifold or electrical components as grounding points. Stay clear of moving parts. To avoid reverse polarity connections, make sure that you correctly identify the positive (+) and negative (-) terminals on both the disabled and booster vehicles before connecting the cables. Battery positions may vary.

**Note:** In the illustration, the bottom vehicle represents the booster vehicle.

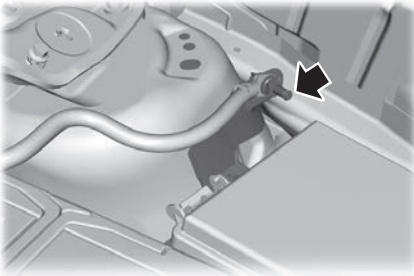


E142664

1. Connect the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal of the discharged battery.

# Roadside Emergencies

2. Connect the other end of the positive (+) cable to the positive (+) terminal of the assisting battery.
3. Connect the negative (-) cable to the negative (-) terminal of the assisting battery.



E152134

4. Make the final connection of the negative (-) cable to an exposed metal part of the stalled vehicle's engine, or connect the negative (-) cable to the ground connection point, if available.

## WARNING



Do not connect the end of the second cable to the negative (-) terminal of the battery to be jumped.

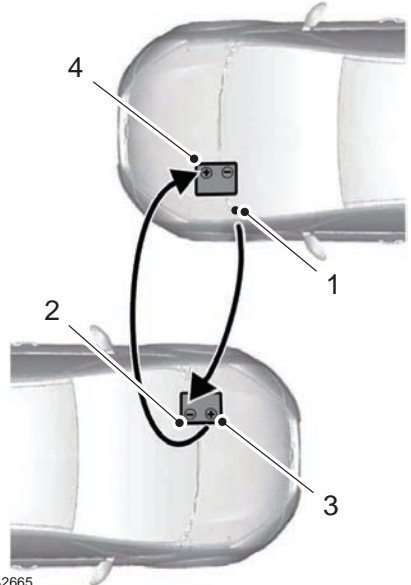
A spark may cause an explosion of the gases that surround the battery.

## Jump Starting

1. Start the engine of the booster vehicle and rev the engine moderately, or press the accelerator gently to keep your engine speed between 2000 and 3000 rpms, as shown in your tachometer.
2. Start the engine of the disabled vehicle.
3. After starting the disabled vehicle, run both vehicle engines for an additional three minutes before disconnecting the jumper cables.

## Removing the Jumper Cables

Remove the jumper cables in the reverse order that they were connected.



E142665

1. Remove the jumper cable from the ground metal surface or connecting point, if available.
2. Remove the jumper cable on the negative (-) terminal of the booster vehicle's battery.
3. Remove the jumper cable from the positive (+) terminal of the booster vehicle's battery.
4. Remove the jumper cable from the positive (+) terminal of the disabled vehicle's battery.

After starting your disabled vehicle and removing the jumper cables, allow your vehicle to idle for several minutes so the battery can recharge.

# Roadside Emergencies

---

## **POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM**

The system flashes the direction indicators and sounds the horn (intermittently) in the event of a serious impact that deploys an airbag (front, side, side curtain or Safety Canopy) or the safety belt pretensioners.

The horn and indicators will turn off when:

- You press the hazard control button.
- You press the panic button on the remote entry transmitter (if equipped).
- Your vehicle runs out of power.

# Customer Assistance

## GETTING THE SERVICES YOU NEED

Warranty repairs to your vehicle must be performed by an authorized dealer. While any authorized dealer handling your vehicle line will provide warranty service, we recommend you return to your selling authorized dealer who wants to ensure your continued satisfaction.

Please note that certain warranty repairs require special training and equipment, so not all authorized dealers are authorized to perform all warranty repairs. This means that, depending on the warranty repair needed, you may have to take your vehicle to another authorized dealer.

A reasonable time must be allowed to perform a repair after taking your vehicle to the authorized dealer. Repairs will be made using Ford or Motorcraft® parts, or remanufactured or other parts that are authorized by Ford.

### Away From Home

If you are away from home when your vehicle needs service, contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center or use the online resources listed below to find the nearest authorized dealer.

In the United States:

#### Mailing address

Ford Motor Company  
Customer Relationship Center  
P.O. Box 6248  
Dearborn, MI 48126

#### Telephone

1-800-392-3673 (FORD)  
(TDD for the hearing impaired:  
1-800-232-5952)

Additional information and resources are available online:

Website
<a href="http://www.owner.ford.com">www.owner.ford.com</a>

These are some of the items that can be found online:

- U.S. dealer locator by Dealer Name, City/State or Zip Code.
- Owner Manuals.
- Maintenance Schedules.
- Recalls.
- Ford Extended Service Plans.
- Ford Genuine Accessories.
- Service specials and promotions.

In Canada:

#### Mailing address

Customer Relationship Centre  
Ford Motor Company of Canada, Limited  
P.O. Box 2000  
Oakville, Ontario L6K 0C8

#### Telephone

1-800-565-3673 (FORD)

Website
<a href="http://www.ford.ca">www.ford.ca</a>

#### Twitter

@FordServiceCA (English Canada)  
@FordServiceQC (Quebec)

#### Additional Assistance

If you have questions or concerns, or are unsatisfied with the service you are receiving, follow these steps:

1. Contact your Sales Representative or Service Advisor at your selling or servicing authorized dealer.

# Customer Assistance

---

2. If your inquiry or concern remains unresolved, contact the Sales Manager, Service Manager or Customer Relations Manager.
3. If you require assistance or clarification on Ford Motor Company policies, please contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center.

In order to help us serve you better, please have the following information available when contacting a Customer Relationship Center:

- Vehicle Identification Number.
- Your telephone number (home and business).
- The name of the authorized dealer and city where located.
- The vehicle's current odometer reading.

In some states within the United States, you must directly notify Ford in writing before pursuing remedies under your state's warranty laws, and Ford is also allowed a final repair attempt.

Additionally, in some states within the United States, a consumer has the option of submitting a warranty dispute to the BBB Auto Line before taking action under the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act, or to the extent allowed by state law, before pursuing replacement or repurchase remedies provided by certain state laws. This dispute handling procedure is not required prior to enforcing state created rights or other rights which are independent of the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act or state replacement or repurchase laws.

## IN CALIFORNIA (U.S. ONLY)

California Civil Code Section 1793.2(d) requires that, if a manufacturer or its representative is unable to repair a motor vehicle to conform to the vehicle's applicable express warranty after a reasonable number of attempts, the manufacturer shall be required to either replace the vehicle with one substantially identical or repurchase the vehicle and reimburse the buyer in an amount equal to the actual price paid or payable by the consumer (less a reasonable allowance for consumer use). The consumer has the right to choose whether to receive a refund or replacement vehicle.

California Civil Code Section 1793.22(b) presumes that the manufacturer has had a reasonable number of attempts to conform the vehicle to its applicable express warranties if, within the first 18 months of ownership of a new vehicle or the first 18000 miles (29 000 km), whichever occurs first:

1. Two or more repair attempts are made on the same non-conformity likely to cause death or serious bodily injury OR
2. Four or more repair attempts are made on the same nonconformity (a defect or condition that substantially impairs the use, value or safety of the vehicle) OR
3. The vehicle is out of service for repair of nonconformities for a total of more than 30 calendar days (not necessarily all at one time).

In the case of 1 or 2 above, the consumer must also notify the manufacturer of the need for the repair of the nonconformity at the following address:

Ford Motor Company  
16800 Executive Plaza Drive  
Mail Drop 3NE-B  
Dearborn, MI 48126

## Customer Assistance

---

You are required to submit your warranty dispute to BBB AUTO LINE before asserting in court any rights or remedies conferred by California Civil Code Section 1793.22(b). You are also required to use BBB AUTO LINE before exercising rights or seeking remedies created by the Federal Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act, 15 U.S.C. sec. 2301 et seq. If you choose to seek redress by pursuing rights and remedies not created by California Civil Code Section 1793.22(b) or the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act, resort to BBB AUTO LINE is not required by those statutes.

### **THE BETTER BUSINESS BUREAU (BBB) AUTO LINE PROGRAM (U.S. ONLY)**

Your satisfaction is important to Ford Motor Company and to your dealer. If a warranty concern has not been resolved using the three-step procedure outlined earlier in this chapter in the Getting the Services you need section, you may be eligible to participate in the BBB AUTO LINE program.

The BBB AUTO LINE program consists of two parts – mediation and arbitration. During mediation, a representative of the BBB will contact both you and Ford Motor Company to explore options for settlement of the claim. If an agreement is not reached during mediation or you do not want to participate in mediation, and if your claim is eligible, you may participate in the arbitration process. An arbitration hearing will be scheduled so that you can present your case in an informal setting before an impartial person. The arbitrator will consider the testimony provided and make a decision after the hearing.

Disputes submitted to the BBB AUTO LINE program are usually decided within forty days after you file your claim with the BBB. You are not bound by the decision, and may reject the decision and proceed to court where all findings of the BBB Auto Line dispute, and decision, are admissible in the court action. Should you choose to accept the BBB AUTO LINE decision, Ford is then bound by the decision, and must comply with the decision within 30 days of receipt of your acceptance letter.

**BBB AUTO LINE Application:** Using the information provided below, please call or write to request a program application. You will be asked for your name and address, general information about your new vehicle, information about your warranty concerns, and any steps you have already taken to try to resolve them. A Customer Claim Form will be mailed that will need to be completed, signed and returned to the BBB along with proof of ownership. Upon receipt, the BBB will review the claim for eligibility under the Program Summary Guidelines.

**You can get more information by calling BBB AUTO LINE at 1-800-955-5100, or writing to:**

**BBB AUTO LINE  
3033 Wilson Boulevard, Suite 600  
Arlington, Virginia 22201**

BBB AUTO LINE applications can also be requested by calling the Ford Motor Company Customer Relationship Center at 1-800-392-3673.

**Note:** *Ford Motor Company reserves the right to change eligibility limitations, modify procedures, or to discontinue this process at any time without notice and without obligation.*



# Customer Assistance

---

## UTILIZING THE MEDIATION/ARBITRATION PROGRAM (CANADA ONLY)

For vehicles delivered to authorized Canadian dealers. In those cases where you continue to feel that the efforts by Ford of Canada and the authorized dealer to resolve a factory-related vehicle service concern have been unsatisfactory, Ford of Canada participates in an impartial third party mediation/arbitration program administered by the Canadian Motor Vehicle Arbitration Plan (CAMVAP).

The CAMVAP program is a straight forward and relatively speedy alternative to resolve a disagreement when all other efforts to produce a settlement have failed. This procedure is without cost to you and is designed to eliminate the need for lengthy and expensive legal proceedings.

In the CAMVAP program, impartial third-party arbitrators conduct hearings at mutually convenient times and places in an informal environment. These impartial arbitrators review the positions of the parties, make decisions and, when appropriate, render awards to resolve disputes. CAMVAP decisions are fast, fair, and final as the arbitrator's award is binding on both you and Ford of Canada.

CAMVAP services are available in all Canadian territories and provinces. For more information, without charge or obligation, call your CAMVAP Provincial Administrator directly at 1-800-207-0685 or visit [www.camvap.ca](http://www.camvap.ca).

## GETTING ASSISTANCE OUTSIDE THE U.S. AND CANADA

Before exporting your vehicle to a foreign country, contact the appropriate foreign embassy or consulate. These officials can inform you of local vehicle registration regulations and where to find unleaded fuel.

If you cannot find unleaded fuel or can only get fuel with an anti-knock index lower than is recommended for your vehicle, contact our Customer Relationship Center.

The use of leaded fuel in your vehicle without proper conversion may damage the effectiveness of your emission control system and may cause engine knocking or serious engine damage. Ford Motor Company or Ford of Canada is not responsible for any damage caused by use of improper fuel. Using leaded fuel may also result in difficulty importing your vehicle back into the United States.

If your vehicle must be serviced while you are traveling or living in Asia-Pacific Region, Sub-Saharan Africa, U.S. Virgin Islands, Central America, the Caribbean, and Israel, contact the nearest authorized dealer. If the authorized dealer cannot help you, contact:

FORD MOTOR COMPANY  
Customer Relationship Center  
1555 Fairlane Drive  
Fairlane Business Park #3  
Allen Park, Michigan 48101  
U.S.A.  
Telephone: (313) 594-4857  
Fax: (313) 390-0804  
Email: [expcac@ford.com](mailto:expcac@ford.com)

## Customer Assistance

---

For customers in Guam, the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands (CNMI), America Samoa, and the U.S. Virgin Islands, please feel free to call our Toll-Free Number: (800) 841-FORD (3673).

If your vehicle must be serviced while you are traveling or living in Puerto Rico, contact the nearest authorized dealer. If the authorized dealer cannot help you, contact:

FORD MOTOR COMPANY  
Customer Relationship Center  
1555 Fairlane Drive  
Fairlane Business Park #3  
Allen Park, Michigan 48101  
U.S.A.  
Telephone: (800) 841-FORD (3673)  
FAX: (313) 390-0804  
Email: prcac@ford.com  
www.ford.com.pr

If your vehicle must be serviced while you are traveling or living in the Middle East, contact the nearest authorized dealer. If the authorized dealer cannot help you, contact:

FORD MOTOR COMPANY  
Customer Relationship Center  
1555 Fairlane Drive  
Fairlane Business Park #3  
Allen Park, Michigan 48101  
U.S.A.

**Ford:** 80004443673  
**Lincoln:** 80004441067  
**If calling from the UAE:** 80004441066  
**If calling from the Kingdom of Saudi Arabia:** 8008443673  
**If calling from Kuwait:** 22280384

FAX: +971 4 3327266  
Email: menacac@ford.com  
www.me.ford.com

If you buy your vehicle in North America and then relocate to any of the above locations, register your vehicle identification number (VIN) and new address with Ford Motor Company Export Operations & Global Growth Initiatives by emailing **expcac@ford.com**.

If you are in another foreign country, contact the nearest authorized dealer. In the event your inquiry is unresolved, communicate your concern with the dealership's Sales Manager, Service Manager or Customer Relations Manager. If you require additional assistance or clarification, please contact the respective Customer Relationship Center as previously listed.

**Customers in the U.S. should call 1-800-392-3673.**

### ORDERING ADDITIONAL OWNER'S LITERATURE

To order the publications in this portfolio, contact Helm, Incorporated at:

HELM, INCORPORATED  
47911 Halyard Drive  
Plymouth, Michigan 48170  
Attention: Customer Service

Or to order a free publication catalog, call toll free: 1-800-782-4356

Monday-Friday 8:00 a.m. - 6:00 p.m. EST

Helm, Incorporated can also be reached by their website:

www.helminc.com

(Items in this catalog may be purchased by credit card, check or money order.)

## Customer Assistance

---

### **Obtaining a French Owner's Manual**

French Owner's Manual can be obtained from your authorized dealer or by contacting Helm, Incorporated using the contact information listed previously in this section.

### **REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS (U.S. ONLY)**



E142557

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying Ford Motor Company.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or Ford Motor Company.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to <http://www.safercar.gov>; or write to:

Administrator

1200 New Jersey Avenue,  
Southeast

Washington, D.C. 20590

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from <http://www.safercar.gov>.

### **REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS (CANADA ONLY)**

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform Transport Canada and Ford of Canada.

# Customer Assistance

---

<b>Transport Canada Contact Information</b>	
Website	<a href="http://www.tc.gc.ca/eng/motorvehiclesafety/safevehicles-defectinvestigations-index-76.htm">www.tc.gc.ca/eng/motorvehiclesafety/safevehicles-defectinvestigations-index-76.htm</a> (English)
Website	<a href="http://www.tc.gc.ca/fra/secureteautomobile/VehiculesSecuritaires-Enquetes-index-76.htm">www.tc.gc.ca/fra/secureteautomobile/VehiculesSecuritaires-Enquetes-index-76.htm</a> (French)
Phone	1-800-333-0510

<b>Ford of Canada Contact Information</b>	
Website	<a href="http://www.ford.ca">www.ford.ca</a>
Phone	1-800-565-3673

# Fuses

## FUSE SPECIFICATION CHART

### Pre-Fuse Box

The pre-fuse box is in the engine compartment attached to the positive battery post. This box contains several high current fuses. If you need to replace one of these high current fuses, see an authorized dealer.

### Power Distribution Box

#### WARNINGS



Always disconnect the battery before servicing high current fuses.

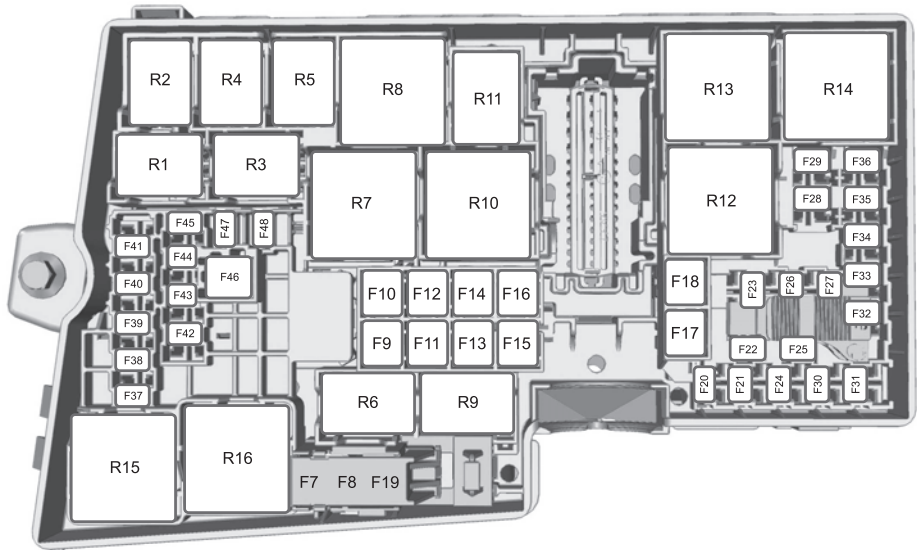
#### WARNINGS



To reduce risk of electrical shock, always replace the cover to the power distribution box before reconnecting the battery or refilling fluid reservoirs.

The power distribution box is in the engine compartment. It has high-current fuses that protect your vehicle's main electrical systems from overloads.

You will need to reset some features if you disconnect and reconnect the battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 223).



E157389

Lift the release lever at the rear of the cover to remove it.

## Fuses

<b>Fuse or relay number</b>	<b>Fuse amp rating</b>	<b>Protected components</b>
F7	50A**	Anti-lock brake system and electronic stability program pump.
F8	30A**	Electronic stability program valve.
F9	—	Not used.
F10	40A**	Heater blower motor.
F11	—	Not used.
F12	30A**	Powertrain control module relay.
F13	30A**	Starter relay.
F14	25A**	Rear power window (without door control unit).
F15	20A**	Front cigar lighter or power outlet.
F16	25A**	Front power window (without door control unit).
F17	20A**	Rear power outlet.
F18	20A**	Center power outlet.
F19	5A*	Anti-lock brake system and electronic stability program 15 feed.
F20	15A*	Horn.
F21	5A*	Stop light switch.
F22	15A*	Battery monitor system.
F23	5A*	Relay coils.
F24	5A*	Light switch module.
F25	10A*	Power exterior mirror (without door control unit).
F26	5A*	Keep-alive power
F27	15A*	Air conditioner clutch.
F28	10A*	Vehicle power - fuel injector (2.5L engine).
F29	25A*	Rear window defroster.

# Fuses

Fuse or relay number	Fuse amp rating	Protected components
F30	15A*	Heated mirror (less door control unit). Heated wiper park.
F31	—	Not used.
F32	15A*	Vehicle power.
F33	10A*	Vehicle power 2.
F34	10A*	Vehicle power 3.
F35	15A*	Vehicle power 4.
F36	5A*	Active grill shutters.
F37	10A*	Occupant classification sensor. Passenger airbag deactivation indicator.
F38	5A*	Engine control module and transmission control module ignition feed.
F39	20A*	Heated driver seat.
F40	5A*	Electronic power assist steering 15 feed.
F41	20A*	Body control module 15 feed.
F42	15A*	Rear wiper.
F43	15A*	Headlamp control module supply. Daytime running light.
F44	15A*	Front fog daytime running lamps.
F45	20A*	Heated passenger seat.
F46	40A**	Smart wiper motor modules.
F47	5A*	Heated mirror (less door control unit). Heated wiper park relay feed.
F48	5A*	Keypad.
R1	—	Not used.
R2	Micro relay	Horn.
R3	Micro relay	Heated mirror relay (less door control unit). Heated wiper park relay.
R4	Micro relay	Front fog daytime running lamps.

# Fuses

<b>Fuse or relay number</b>	<b>Fuse amp rating</b>	<b>Protected components</b>
R5	—	Not used.
R6	—	Not used.
R7	—	Not used.
R8	Power relay	Delayed accessory relay.
R9	—	Not used.
R10	Mini relay	Starter relay.
R11	Micro relay	Air conditioner clutch.
R12	Power relay	Cooling fan.
R13	Mini relay	Heater blower.
R14	Mini relay	Engine control relay.
R15	Power relay	Heated rear window.
R16	Power relay	Ignition 15.

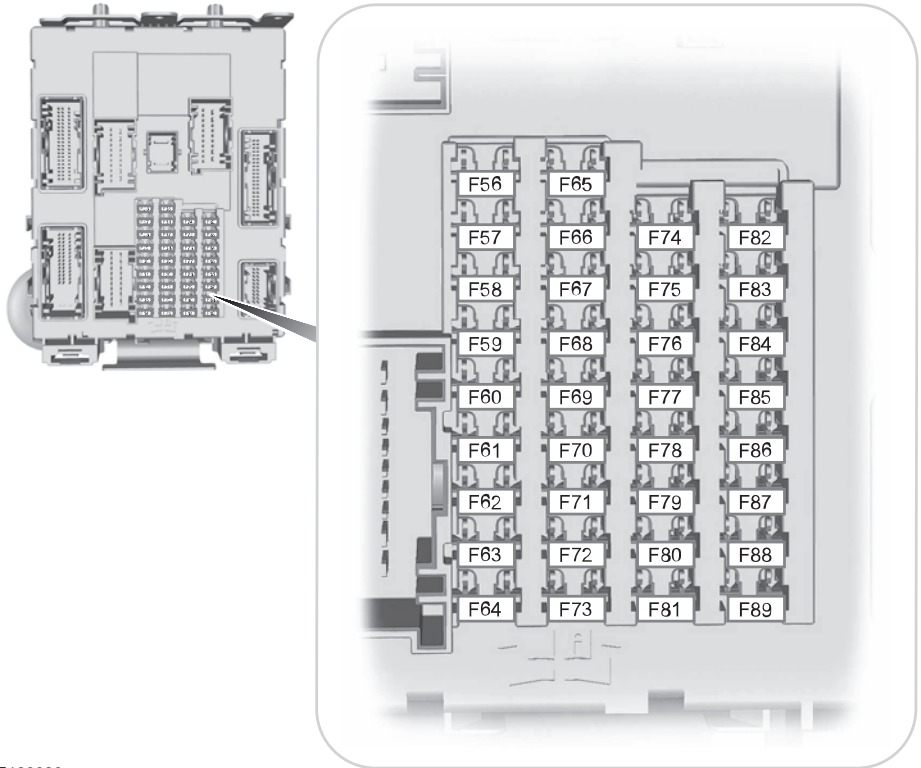
\*Mini fuses \*\*Cartridge fuses

## **Passenger Compartment Fuse Panel**

The fuse panel is on the right side below the glove box.



# Fuses



E129926

Fuse or relay number	Fuse amp rating	Protected components
F56	20A	Fuel pump supply, Air mass meter.
F57	—	Not used.
F58	5A	Not used (spare).
F59	5A	Passive anti-theft transceiver.
F60	10A	Interior light. Driver door switch pack. Glove box light. Overhead console switch bank.

## Fuses

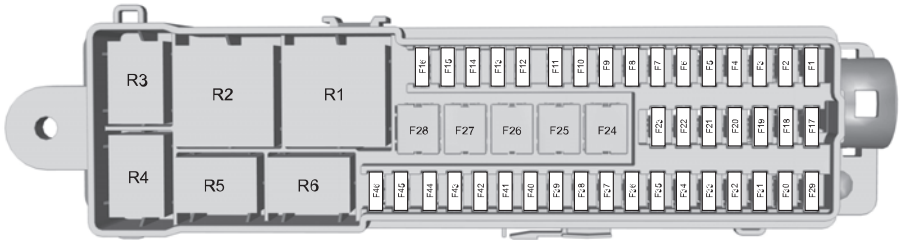
Fuse or relay number	Fuse amp rating	Protected components
F61	20A	Cigar lighter. Power point.
F62	5A	Rain sensor module. Auto-dimming mirror.
F63	10A	Not used (spare).
F64	—	Not used.
F65	10A	Liftgate release.
F66	20A	Driver door unlock.
F67	7.5A	SYNC. Multifunction display. Global positioning system module.
F68	—	Not used.
F69	5A	Instrument cluster.
F70	20A	Central lock and unlock supply.
F71	7.5A	Heating control head (manual air conditioner). Dual electronic automatic temperature control.
F72	7.5A	Steering wheel module.
F73	7.5A	Data link connector.
F74	15A	High beam headlamp supply.
F75	15A	Fog lamp.
F76	10A	Reversing lamp.
F77	20A	Washer pump.
F78	5A	Ignition switch. Start button.
F79	15A	Radio. Navigation DVD player. Touch screen. Hazard light switch. Door lock switch.
F80	20A	Moonroof supply.

# Fuses

Fuse or relay number	Fuse amp rating	Protected components
F81	5A	Radio frequency receiver.
F82	20A	Washer pump.
F83	20A	Central locking.
F84	20A	Drive door unlock.
F85	7.5A	Electronic 15 feed.
F86	10A	Air bag module. Occupant classification system. Passenger air bag deactivation indicator.
F87	15A	Not used (spare).
F88	25A	Supply for F67, F69, F71 and F79.
F89	—	Not used.

## Luggage Compartment Fuse Panel

The fuse panel is in the luggage compartment behind the passenger side wheel well. Remove the fuse panel cover to gain access to the fuses.



E129927

## Fuses

Fuse or relay number	Fuse amp rating	Protected components
F1	5A	Hands-free liftgate entry module.
F2	10A	Keyless vehicle module.
F3	5A	Keyless vehicle door handles.
F4	25A	Door control unit front left.
F5	25A	Door control unit front right.
F6	25A	Door control unit rear left.
F7	25A	Door control unit rear right.
F8	25A	Passenger seat.
F9	25A	Driver seat.
F10	5A	Driver seat memory module logic feed.
F11	5A	Rear ignition coil feed.
F12	—	Not used.
F13	—	Not used.
F14	—	Not used.
F15	—	Not used.
F16	—	Not used.
F17	—	Not used.
F18	—	Not used.
F19	—	Not used.
F20	—	Not used.
F21	—	Not used.
F22	—	Not used.
F23	25A	Audio amplifier.
F24	30A	DC/AC power converter.
F25	25A	Power liftgate.
F26	40A	Accessories, Trailer tow module 30 feed 1.

# Fuses

Fuse or relay number	Fuse amp rating	Protected components
F27	20A	Luggage compartment power outlet.
F28	—	Not used.
F29	5A	Blind spot detection system. Rear view camera with park assist.
F30	5A	Parking aid module.
F31	—	Not used.
F32	5A	DC/AC power converter.
F33	—	Not used.
F34	—	Not used.
F35	—	Not used.
F36	—	Not used.
F37	—	Not used.
F38	—	Not used.
F39	—	Not used.
F40	—	Not used.
F41	—	Not used.
F42	—	Not used.
F43	—	Not used.
F44	—	Not used.
F45	—	Not used.
F46	—	Not used.
R1	Power relay	Rear 15 relay.
R2	—	Not used.
R3	—	Not used.
R4	—	Not used.
R5	—	Not used.
R6	—	Not used.

# Fuses

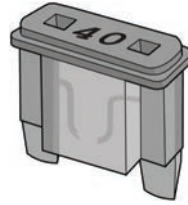
## CHANGING A FUSE

### Fuses

#### WARNING



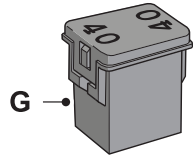
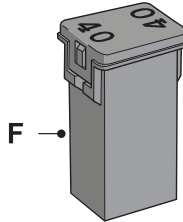
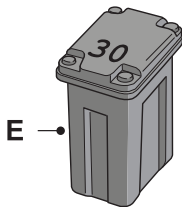
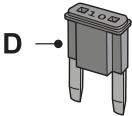
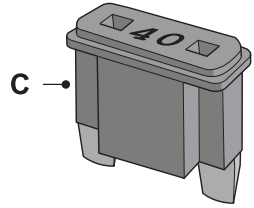
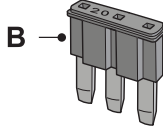
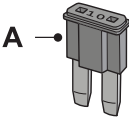
Always replace a fuse with one that has the specified amperage rating. Using a fuse with a higher amperage rating can cause severe wire damage and could start a fire.



E217331

If electrical components in the vehicle are not working, a fuse may have blown. Blown fuses are identified by a broken wire within the fuse. Check the appropriate fuses before replacing any electrical components.

### Fuse Types



E207206

Callout	Fuse Type
A	Micro 2
B	Micro 3
C	Maxi
D	Mini

# Fuses

---

<b>Callout</b>	<b>Fuse Type</b>
E	M Case
F	J Case
G	J Case Low Profile

# Maintenance

## GENERAL INFORMATION

Have your vehicle serviced regularly to help maintain its roadworthiness and resale value. There is a large network of authorized dealers that are there to help you with their professional servicing expertise. We believe that their specially trained technicians are best qualified to service your vehicle properly and expertly. They are supported by a wide range of highly specialized tools developed specifically for servicing your vehicle.

If your vehicle requires professional service, an authorized dealer can provide the necessary parts and service. Check your warranty information to find out which parts and services are covered.

Use only recommended fuels, lubricants, fluids and service parts conforming to specifications. Motorcraft® parts are designed and built to provide the best performance in your vehicle.

## Precautions

- Do not work on a hot engine.
- Make sure that nothing gets caught in moving parts.
- Do not work on a vehicle with the engine running in an enclosed space, unless you are sure you have enough ventilation.
- Keep all open flames and other burning material (such as cigarettes) away from the battery and all fuel related parts.

## Working with the Engine Off

1. Set the parking brake and shift to park (P).
2. Switch off the engine.
3. Block the wheels.

## Working with the Engine On

### WARNING



To reduce the risk of vehicle damage and/or personal burn injuries, do not start your engine with the air cleaner removed and do not remove it while the engine is running.

1. Set the parking brake and shift to park (P).
2. Block the wheels.

## OPENING AND CLOSING THE HOOD

### Opening the Hood



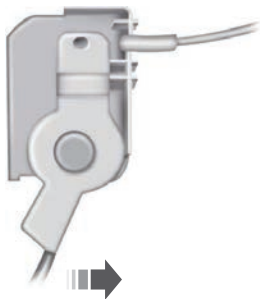
E142457

1. Pull the hood release lever.
2. Slightly lift the hood.



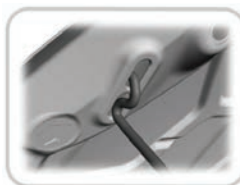
# Maintenance

---



E142458

3. Move the catch to the right to release the hood.



E87786

4. Open the hood and support it with the hood strut.

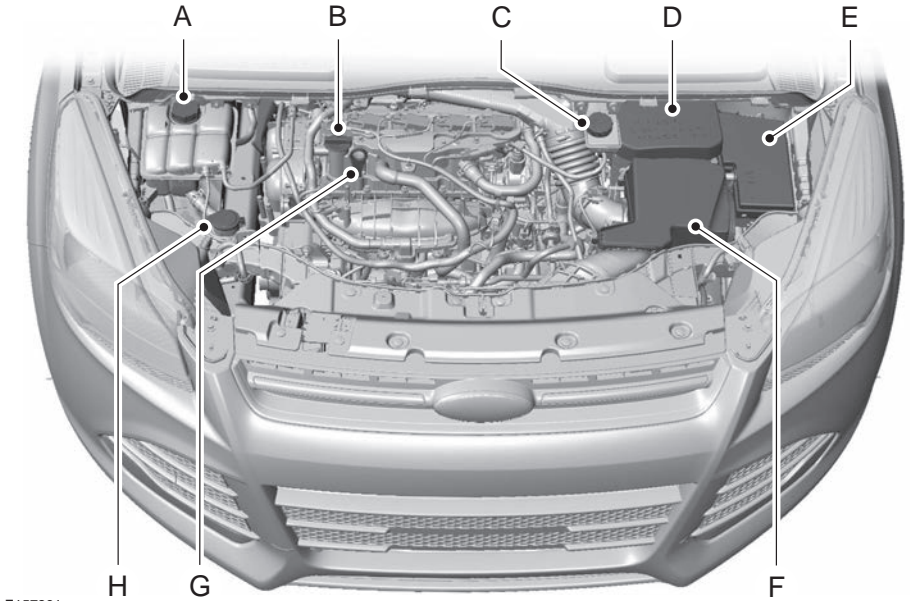
## Closing the Hood

1. Remove the hood strut from the catch and secure it correctly in the clip.
2. Lower the hood and allow it to drop under its own weight for the last 8-12 in (20-30 cm).

**Note:** Make sure that the hood is correctly closed.

# Maintenance

## UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 1.6L ECOBOOST™

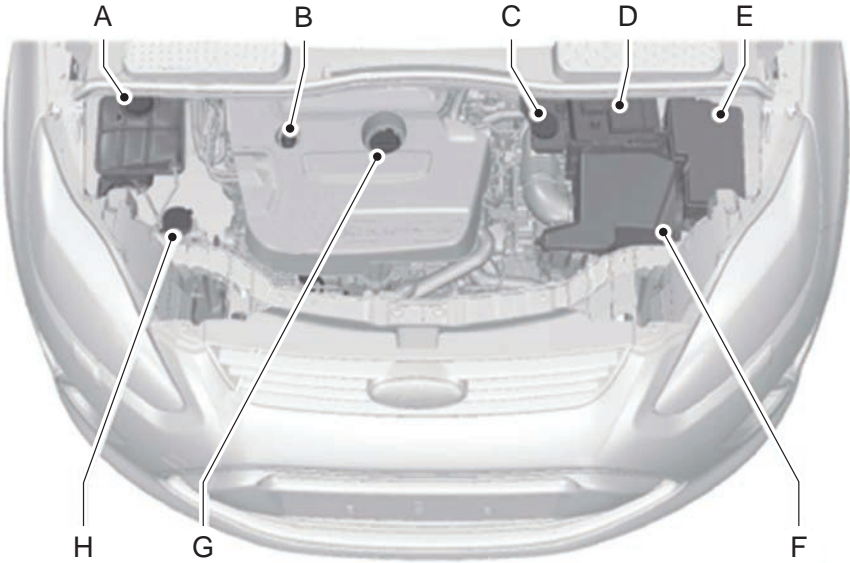


E157261

- A Engine coolant reservoir
- B Engine oil filler cap
- C Brake fluid reservoir
- D Battery
- E Power distribution box
- F Air filter assembly
- G Engine oil dipstick
- H Windshield washer fluid reservoir cap

# Maintenance

## UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 2.0L ECOBOOST™

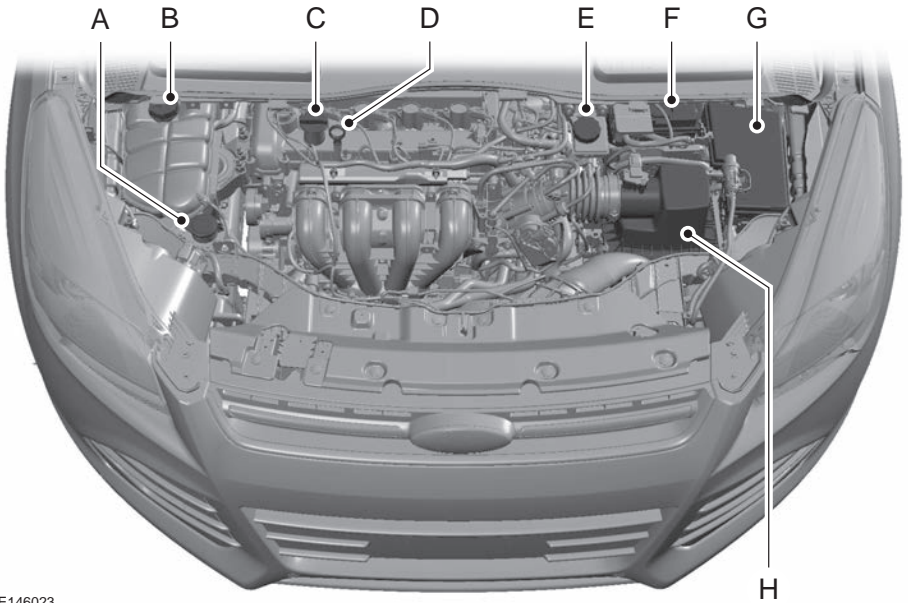


E146022

- A Engine coolant reservoir
- B Engine oil dipstick
- C Brake fluid reservoir
- D Battery
- E Power distribution box
- F Air filter assembly
- G Engine oil filler cap
- H Windshield washer fluid reservoir

# Maintenance

## UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 2.5L

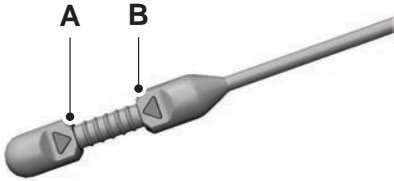


E146023

- A Windshield washer fluid reservoir
- B Engine coolant reservoir
- C Engine oil filler cap
- D Engine oil dipstick
- E Brake fluid reservoir
- F Battery
- G Power distribution box
- H Air filter assembly

# Maintenance

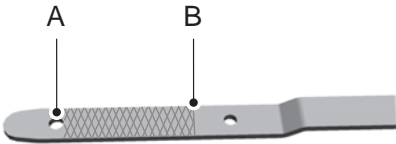
## ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK - 1.6L ECOBOOST™



E188072

- A Minimum.
- B Maximum.

## ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK - 2.0L ECOBOOST™/2.5L



E169062

- A Minimum.
- B Maximum.

## ENGINE OIL CHECK

1. Make sure that your vehicle is on level ground.

2. Check the oil level before starting the engine, or switch the engine off and wait 15 minutes for the oil to drain into the oil pan.
3. Remove the dipstick and wipe it with a clean, lint free cloth. Replace the dipstick and remove it again to check the oil level.

If the oil level is at the minimum mark, add oil immediately. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 268).

Do not use supplemental engine oil additives because they are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that may not be covered by your vehicle warranty.

**Note:** Make sure that the oil level is between the minimum and the maximum marks.

**Note:** The oil consumption of new engines reaches its normal level after approximately 3,000 mi (5,000 km).

## Adding Engine Oil



E142732

Only use oils certified for gasoline engines by the American Petroleum Institute (API). An oil with this trademark symbol conforms to the current engine and emission system protection standards and fuel economy requirements of the International Lubricants Specification Advisory Committee (ILSAC).

# Maintenance

## WARNINGS



Only add oil when the engine is cold. If the engine is hot, wait 10 minutes for the engine to cool down.



Do not remove the filler cap when the engine is running.

1. Remove the engine oil filler cap.
2. Add engine oil that meets Ford specifications. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 268).
3. Wipe off any spilled oil.
4. Replace the engine oil filler cap. Turn it clockwise until you feel a strong resistance.

**Note:** Do not add oil further than the maximum mark. Oil levels above the maximum mark may cause engine damage.

**Note:** Soak up any spillage with an absorbent cloth immediately.

## ENGINE COOLANT CHECK

### Checking the Engine Coolant

#### WARNINGS



Do not add engine coolant when the engine is hot. Steam and scalding liquids released from a hot cooling system can burn you badly. Also, you can be burned if you spill coolant on hot engine parts.



Do not put engine coolant in the windshield washer fluid container. If sprayed on the windshield, engine coolant could make it difficult to see through the windshield.

## WARNINGS



To reduce the risk of personal injury, make sure the engine is cool before unscrewing the coolant pressure relief cap. The cooling system is under pressure; steam and hot liquid can come out forcefully when the cap is loosened slightly.



Do not add coolant further than the MAX mark.

**Note:** Automotive fluids are not interchangeable. Do not use engine coolant or windshield washer fluid outside of its specified function and vehicle location.

**Note:** Do not use stop leak pellets, cooling system sealants, or additives as they can cause damage to the engine cooling or heating systems. This damage would not be covered under your vehicle's warranty.

**Note:** During normal vehicle operation, the engine coolant may change color from orange to pink or light red. As long as the engine coolant is clear and uncontaminated, this color change does not indicate the engine coolant has degraded nor does it require the engine coolant to be drained, the system to be flushed, or the engine coolant to be replaced.

When the engine is cold, check the concentration and level of the engine coolant at the intervals listed in the scheduled maintenance information. See **Scheduled Maintenance** (page 344).

**Note:** Make sure that the level is between the MIN and MAX marks on the coolant reservoir.

**Note:** Coolant expands when it is hot. The level may extend beyond the MAX mark.

**Note:** If the level is at the MIN mark, below the MIN mark, or empty, add coolant immediately. See **Adding Engine Coolant** in this chapter.

# Maintenance

---

The coolant concentration should be maintained within 48% to 50%, which equates to a freeze point between -30°F (-34°C) and -34°F (-37°C).

**Note:** For best results, coolant concentration should be tested with a refractometer such as Robinair® Coolant and Battery Refractometer 75240. We do not recommend the use of hydrometers or coolant test strips for measuring coolant concentrations.

## Adding Engine Coolant

- Do not mix different colors or types of coolant in your vehicle. Make sure the correct coolant is used. Mixing of engine coolants may harm your engine's cooling system. The use of an improper coolant may harm engine and cooling system components and may void the warranty. Use prediluted engine coolant meeting the Ford specification. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 268).
- In case of emergency, a large amount of water without engine coolant may be added in order to reach a vehicle service location. In this instance, the cooling system must be drained, chemically cleaned with Motorcraft Premium Cooling System Flush, and refilled with engine coolant as soon as possible. Water alone (without engine coolant) can cause engine damage from corrosion, overheating or freezing.
- Do not use alcohol, methanol, brine or any engine coolants mixed with alcohol or methanol antifreeze (coolant). Alcohol and other liquids can cause engine damage from overheating or freezing.
- Do not add extra inhibitors or additives to the coolant. These can be harmful and compromise the corrosion protection of the engine coolant.

Unscrew the cap slowly. Any pressure will escape as you unscrew the cap.

Add prediluted engine coolant meeting the Ford specification. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 268).

Whenever coolant has been added, the coolant level in the coolant reservoir should be checked the next few times you drive the vehicle. If necessary, add enough prediluted engine coolant to bring the coolant level to the proper level.

## Recycled Engine Coolant

We do not recommend the use of recycled engine coolant since a Ford-approved recycling process is not yet available.

Used engine coolant should be disposed of in an appropriate manner. Follow your community's regulations and standards for recycling and disposing of automotive fluids.

## Severe Climates

If you drive in extremely cold climates:

- It may be necessary to have a Ford authorized dealer increase the coolant concentration above 50%.
- A coolant concentration of 60% will provide improved freeze point protection. Engine coolant concentrations above 60% will decrease the overheat protection characteristics of the engine coolant and may cause engine damage.

# Maintenance

If you drive in extremely hot climates:

- It may be necessary to have a Ford authorized dealer decrease the coolant concentration to 40%.
- A coolant concentration of 40% will provide improved overheat protection. Engine coolant concentrations below 40% will decrease the freeze and corrosion protection characteristics of the engine coolant and may cause engine damage.

Vehicles driven year-round in non-extreme climates should use prediluted engine coolant for optimum cooling system and engine protection.

## What You Should Know About Fail-Safe Cooling

If the engine coolant supply is depleted, this feature allows the vehicle to be driven temporarily before incremental component damage is incurred. The “fail-safe” distance depends on ambient temperatures, vehicle load and terrain.

### How Fail-Safe Cooling Works

If the engine begins to overheat, the engine coolant temperature gauge will move to the red (hot) area and:



A high engine temperature message will appear in the information display.



The service engine soon indicator will light.

If the engine reaches a preset over-temperature condition, the engine will automatically switch to alternating cylinder operation. Each disabled cylinder acts as an air pump and cools the engine.

When this occurs the vehicle will still operate. However:

- The engine power will be limited.
- The air conditioning system will be disabled.

Continued operation will increase the engine temperature and the engine will completely shut down, causing steering and braking effort to increase.

Once the engine temperature cools, the engine can be re-started. Take your vehicle to an authorized dealer as soon as possible to minimize engine damage.

## When Fail-Safe Mode Is Activated

### WARNINGS



Fail-safe mode is for use during emergencies only. Operate your vehicle in fail-safe mode only as long as necessary to bring your vehicle to rest in a safe location and seek immediate repairs. When in fail-safe mode, the vehicle will have limited power, will not be able to maintain high-speed operation, and may completely shut down without warning, potentially losing engine power, power steering assist, and power brake assist, which may increase the possibility of a crash resulting in serious injury.



Never remove the coolant reservoir cap while the engine is running or hot.

You have limited engine power when in the fail-safe mode, so drive your vehicle with caution. Your vehicle will not be able to maintain high-speed operation and the engine will run rough. Remember that the engine is capable of completely shutting down automatically to prevent engine damage, therefore:

1. Pull off the road as soon as safely possible and switch the engine off.
2. Arrange for your vehicle to be taken to an authorized dealer.



# Maintenance

---

3. If this is not possible, wait a short period for the engine to cool.
4. Check the coolant level and replenish if low.
5. Re-start the engine and take your vehicle to an authorized dealer.

**Note:** *Driving your vehicle without repairing the engine problem increases the chance of engine damage. Take your vehicle to an authorized dealer as soon as possible.*

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION FLUID CHECK

The automatic transmission does not have a transmission fluid dipstick.

Have an authorized dealer check and change the transmission fluid at the correct service interval. See **Scheduled Maintenance** (page 344). Your transmission does not consume fluid. However, if the transmission slips, shifts slowly or if you notice a sign of leaking fluid, contact an authorized dealer.

Do not use supplemental transmission fluid additives, treatments or cleaning agents. The use of these materials may affect transmission operation and result in damage to internal transmission components.

## BRAKE FLUID CHECK

Fluid levels between the MIN and MAX lines are within the normal operating range; there is no need to add fluid. If the fluid levels are outside of the normal operating range, the performance of the system could be compromised; seek service from your authorized dealer immediately.

## POWER STEERING FLUID CHECK

Your vehicle is equipped with an electric power steering (EPS) system. There is no fluid reservoir to check or fill.

## WASHER FLUID CHECK

### WARNING



If you operate your vehicle in temperatures below 40°F (5°C), use washer fluid with antifreeze protection. Failure to use washer fluid with antifreeze protection in cold weather could result in impaired windshield vision and increase the risk of injury or accident.

**Note:** *The front and rear washer systems are supplied from the same reservoir.*

Add fluid to fill the reservoir if the level is low. Only use a washer fluid that meets Ford specifications. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 268).

State or local regulations on volatile organic compounds may restrict the use of methanol, a common windshield washer antifreeze additive. Washer fluids containing non-methanol antifreeze agents should be used only if they provide cold weather protection without damaging the vehicle's paint finish, wiper blades or washer system.

## FUEL FILTER

Your vehicle is equipped with a lifetime fuel filter that is integrated with the fuel tank. Regular maintenance or replacement is not needed.

# Maintenance

## CHANGING THE 12V BATTERY

### WARNINGS



Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide correct ventilation.



When lifting a plastic-cased battery, excessive pressure on the end walls could cause acid to flow through the vent caps, resulting in personal injury and damage to the vehicle or battery. Lift the battery with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners.



Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.



Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. Wash hands after handling.

Your vehicle has a Motorcraft® maintenance-free battery which normally does not require additional water during its life of service.

**Note:** *If your vehicle's battery has a cover or shield, make sure it is reinstalled after the battery has been cleaned or replaced.*

**Note:** *See an authorized dealer for low voltage battery access, testing, or replacement.*

When a low voltage battery replacement is necessary, see an authorized dealer to replace the low voltage battery with a Ford recommended replacement low voltage battery that matches the electrical requirements of the vehicle.

To ensure proper operation of the battery management system (BMS), do not allow a technician to connect any electrical device ground connection directly to the low voltage battery negative post. A connection at the low voltage battery negative post can cause inaccurate measurements of the battery condition and potential incorrect system operation.

**Note:** *If a person adds electrical or electronic accessories or components to the vehicle, the accessories or components may adversely affect the low voltage battery performance and durability and may also affect the performance of other electrical systems in the vehicle.*

For longer, trouble-free operation, keep the top of the battery clean and dry. Also, make certain the battery cables are always tightly fastened to the battery terminals.

If you see any corrosion on the battery or terminals, remove the cables from the terminals and clean with a wire brush. You can neutralize the acid with a solution of baking soda and water.

When a battery replacement is required, the battery should only be replaced with a Ford recommended replacement battery that matches the electrical requirements of the vehicle.

Because your vehicle's engine is electronically-controlled by a computer, some engine control settings are maintained by power from the low voltage battery. Some engine computer settings, like the idle trim and fuel trim strategy, optimize the driveability and performance of the engine. Some other computer settings, like the clock and radio station

# Maintenance

presets, are also maintained in memory by power from the low voltage battery. When a technician disconnects and connects the low voltage battery, these settings are erased. Complete the following procedure in order to restore the settings:

1. With the vehicle at a complete stop, set the parking brake.
2. Shift into park (P).
3. Switch off all accessories.
4. Fully press the brake pedal and start the vehicle.
5. Run the engine until it reaches normal operating temperature. While the engine is warming up, complete the following: Reset the clock. See **Audio System** (page 286). Reset the power windows bounce-back feature. See **Windows and Mirrors** (page 77). Reset the radio station presets. See **Audio System** (page 286).
6. Allow the engine to idle for at least one minute. If the engine turns off, press the accelerator pedal to start the engine.
7. While the engine is running, press the brake pedal and shift into neutral (N).
8. Allow the engine to run for at least one minute by pressing on the accelerator pedal.
9. Drive the vehicle at least 12 mi (20 km) to completely relearn the idle and fuel trim strategy.

**Note:** *If you do not allow the engine to relearn the idle and fuel trim strategy, the idle quality of your vehicle may be adversely affected until the engine computer eventually relearns the idle trim and fuel trim strategy.*

Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way. Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

## CHECKING THE WIPER BLADES



E142463

Run the tip of your fingers over the edge of the blade to check for roughness.

Clean the wiper blades with washer fluid or water applied with a soft sponge or cloth.

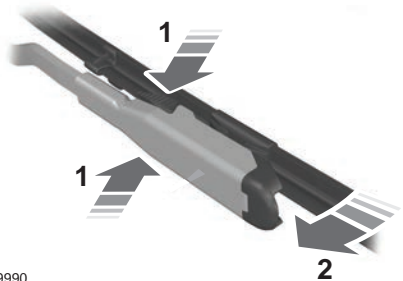
## CHANGING THE WIPER BLADES

Poor wiper quality can be improved by cleaning the wiper blades and the windshield.

Replace wiper blades annually for optimum performance.

### Front Wiper Blades

Lift the wiper arms away from the windshield.



E129990

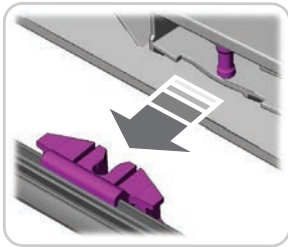
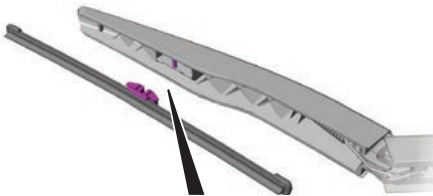
# Maintenance

1. Press the locking buttons together.
2. Remove the wiper blade.
3. Install in the reverse order.

**Note:** Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place. Lower the wiper arm and blade back to the windshield. The wiper arms will automatically return to their normal position when you switch the ignition on.

## Rear Wiper Blade

Lift the wiper arms away from the rear window.



E183236

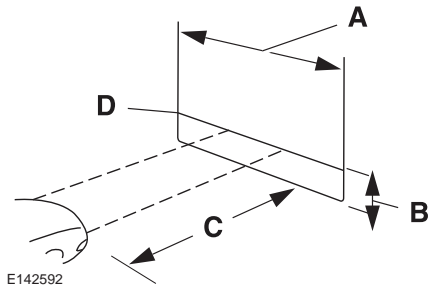
1. Remove the wiper blade.
2. Install in the reverse order.

**Note:** Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.

## ADJUSTING THE HEADLAMPS

### Vertical Aim Adjustment

The headlamps on your vehicle are properly aimed at the assembly plant. If your vehicle has been in an accident, the alignment of your headlamps should be checked by your authorized dealer.



- A 8 feet (2.4 meters)
- B Center height of lamp to ground
- C 25 feet (7.6 meters)
- D Horizontal reference line

### Vehicles With Halogen Headlamps

1. Park the vehicle directly in front of a wall or screen on a level surface, approximately 25 feet (7.6 meters) away.
2. Measure the height of the headlamp bulb center from the ground and mark an 8 foot (2.4 meter) horizontal reference line on the vertical wall or screen at this height.

**Note:** To see a clearer light pattern for adjusting, you may want to block the light from one headlamp while adjusting the other.

# Maintenance

3. Turn on the low beam headlamps to illuminate the wall or screen and open the hood.



E142465

4. On the wall or screen you will observe a flat zone of high intensity light located at the top of the right hand portion of the beam pattern. If the top edge of the high intensity light zone is not at the horizontal reference line, the headlamp will need to be adjusted.



E142467

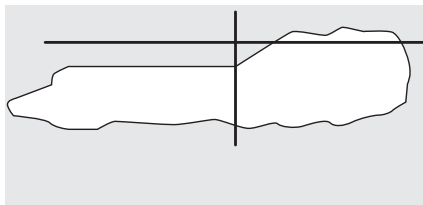
5. Locate the vertical adjuster on each headlamp. Using a Phillips #2 screwdriver, turn the adjuster either clockwise or counterclockwise in order to aim the headlamp. The horizontal edge of the brighter light should touch the horizontal reference line.
6. Close the hood and turn off the lamps.

## Vehicles With High Intensity Discharge Headlamps

1. Park the vehicle directly in front of a wall or screen on a level surface, approximately 25 feet (7.6 meters) away.
2. Measure the height of the headlamp bulb center from the ground and mark an 8 foot (2.4 meter) horizontal reference line on the vertical wall or screen at this height.

**Note:** To see a clearer light pattern for adjusting, you may want to block the light from one headlamp while adjusting the other.

3. Turn on the low beam headlamps to illuminate the wall or screen and open the hood.



E142466

4. There is a distinct cut-off (change from light to dark) in the left portion of the beam pattern. The top edge of this cut-off should be positioned two inches (5 centimeters) below the horizontal reference line.

# Maintenance



E142467

5. Locate the vertical adjuster on each headlamp. Using a Phillips #2 screwdriver, turn the adjuster either clockwise or counterclockwise in order to aim the headlamp.
6. Close the hood and turn off the lamps.

## Horizontal Aim Adjustment

Horizontal aim is not required for this vehicle and is non-adjustable.

## REMOVING A HEADLAMP



E142468

1. Switch all of the lamps and the ignition off.
2. Remove the screws that secure the lamp assembly.

3. Pull the headlamp toward the front of your vehicle to disengage it from its locating points and then lift the headlamp up.
4. Disconnect the electrical connector.

## CHANGING A BULB

### Lamp Assembly Condensation

Exterior lamps are vented to accommodate normal changes in pressure. Condensation can be a natural by-product of this design. When moist air enters the lamp assembly through the vents, there is a possibility that condensation can occur when the temperature is cold. When normal condensation occurs, a thin film of mist can form on the interior of the lens. The thin mist eventually clears and exits through the vents during normal operation. Clearing time may take as long as 48 hours under dry weather conditions.

Examples of acceptable condensation are:

- Presence of thin mist (no streaks, drip marks or droplets).
- Fine mist covers less than 50% of the lens.

Examples of unacceptable moisture (usually caused by a lamp water leak) are:

- Water puddle inside the lamp.
- Large water droplets, drip marks or streaks present on the interior of the lens.

Take your vehicle to a dealer for service if any of the above conditions of unacceptable moisture are present.

# Maintenance

## Replacing Headlamp Bulbs

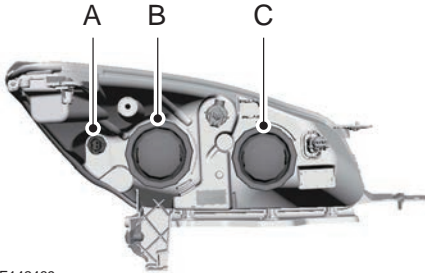
### WARNING



Handle a halogen headlamp bulb carefully and keep out of children's reach. Grasp the bulb by only its plastic base and do not touch the glass. The oil from your hand could cause the bulb to break the next time the headlamps are operated.

**Note:** If the bulb is accidentally touched, it should be cleaned with rubbing alcohol before being used.

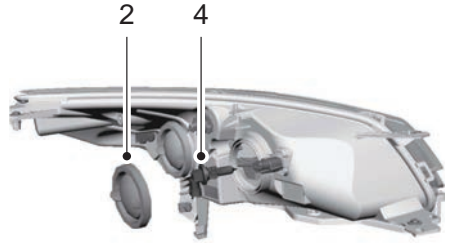
### Headlamp:



E142469

- A Side marker
- B Low beam headlamp
- C High beam headlamp

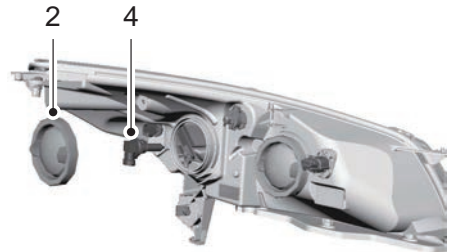
High beam headlamp:



E142470

1. Remove the headlamp.
2. Remove service cap.
3. Disconnect the electrical connector.
4. Remove bulb from the headlamp assembly by turning it counterclockwise, then pull it straight out.

Low beam headlamp:



E142471

1. Remove the headlamp.
2. Remove service cap.
3. Disconnect the electrical connector.
4. Remove bulb from the headlamp assembly by turning it counterclockwise, then pull it straight out.

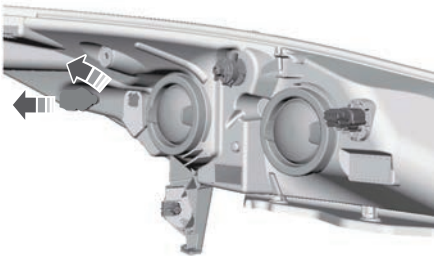
# Maintenance

Install the new bulbs in reverse order from the steps above. Be sure that the spring clip is not damaged or detached from the headlamp assembly during the replacement procedure.

## Replacing HID Headlamp Bulbs (If Equipped)

The low beam headlamps on your vehicle use a high intensity discharge source. These lamps operate at a high voltage. When the bulb is burned out, the bulb and starter capsule assembly must be replaced by your authorized dealer.

## Replacing Side Marker Bulbs

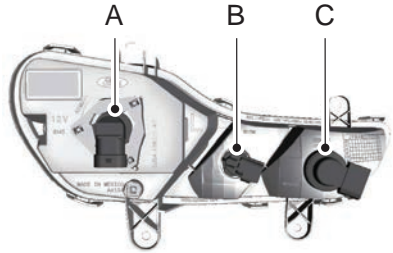


E142472

1. Remove the bulb socket from the headlamp assembly by turning it counterclockwise.
2. Remove the bulb by gently pull the bulb straight out of the socket.

Install the new bulb in reverse order.

## Replacing Fog, Park and Turn Signal Bulbs



E142797

- A Fog Lamp
- B Park Lamp
- C Turn Signal lamp



E142798

1. Remove the screws from the splash shield at the wheel well to gain access to the lamp assembly.



# Maintenance



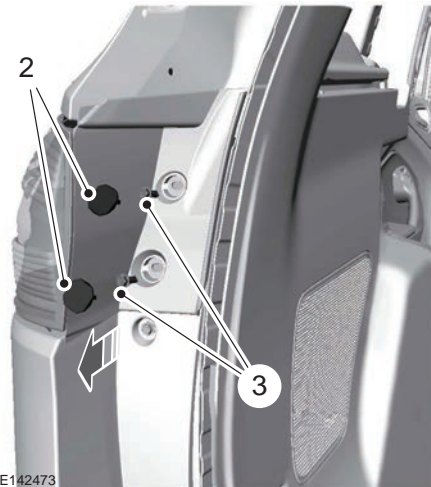
1. Make sure the headlamp control is in the off position and open the liftgate.
2. Remove the two bolt covers using a standard flat tip screwdriver.
3. Remove the two bolts from the lamp assembly.
4. Gently pull the lamp assembly away from the vehicle.

E142799

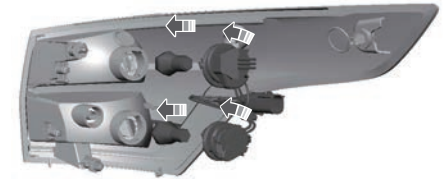
2. Remove the bulb holder from the lamp assembly by turning it counterclockwise.
3. Disconnect the electrical connector.
4. Remove the bulb from the bulb holder by pulling it straight out.

Install the new bulbs in reverse order from the steps above.

## Replacing Tail, Brake and Turn Signal Bulbs



E142473



E142475

5. Disconnect the electrical connector.
6. Remove the turn signal bulb or the tail and brake bulb by turning the bulb socket counterclockwise. Gently pull the bulb straight out of the socket.

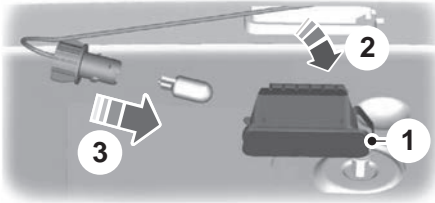
Install the new bulb in reverse order.

## Replacing Reverse Lamp Assembly

For bulb replacement, see your authorized dealer.

# Maintenance

## Replacing License Plate Lamp Bulb



E72789

1. Carefully release the spring clip.
2. Remove the lamp.
3. Remove the bulb.

Reverse steps to reinstall bulb.

## Replacing High-Mount Brake Lamp Bulb

Your vehicle is equipped with an LED center high-mount stop lamp located in the spoiler. It is designed to last the life of the vehicle. If replacement is required, see your authorized dealer.

## BULB SPECIFICATION CHART

Replacement bulbs are specified in the chart below. Headlamp bulbs must be marked with an authorized "D.O.T." for North America to ensure lamp performance, light brightness and pattern and safe visibility. The correct bulbs will not damage the lamp assembly or void the lamp assembly warranty and will provide quality bulb burn time.

Function	Trade number
Headlamps high beam (Halogen)	9005LL
* Headlamps high beam (HID)	H1
Headlamp low beam (Halogen)	H11LL
* Headlamp low beam (HID)	D3S
Sidemarkers - front	168
Park lamp - front (HI Series)	WY5W
Park lamp - front (Low Series)	194
Turn lamp - front (HI Series)	WY21W
Turn lamp - front (Low Series)	W21W
Fog lamps	H10 (9145)
Tail/brake lamp	3157K
Turn lamp - rear	T20
Backup lamp	921
License plate lamp	W5W

# Maintenance

---

<b>Function</b>	<b>Trade number</b>
* High-mount brake lamp	LED
* Interior lamps	LED

\* To replace these lamps - see your authorized dealer.

To replace all instrument panel lights - see your authorized dealer

# Maintenance

## CHANGING THE ENGINE AIR FILTER

### WARNING



To reduce the risk of vehicle damage and personal burn injuries do not start your engine with the air cleaner removed and do not remove it while the engine is running.

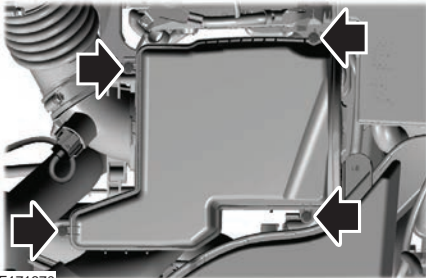
When changing the air filter element, use only the air filter element listed. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 268).

For EcoBoost equipped vehicles: When servicing the air cleaner, it is important that no foreign material enter the air induction system. The engine and turbocharger are susceptible to damage from even small particles.

Change the air filter element at the proper interval. See **Scheduled Maintenance** (page 344).

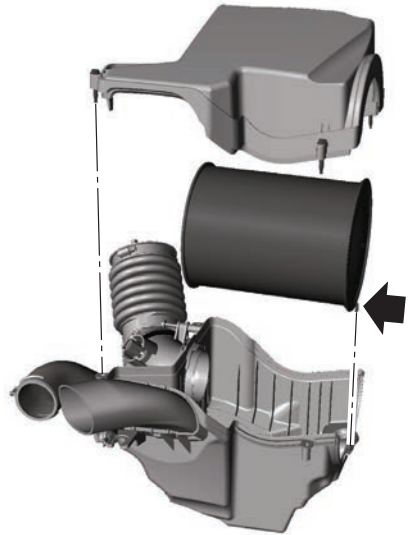
**Note:** Failure to use the correct air filter element may result in severe engine damage. The customer warranty may be void for any damage to the engine if the correct air filter element is not used.

### 1.6L and 2.0L EcoBoost Engines



E171370

1. Loosen the four fasteners and remove the air cleaner assembly lid.
2. Remove the air filter element from the air filter housing.
3. Wipe any dirt or debris from the air cleaner assembly to make sure no dirt gets in the engine and to make sure you have a good seal.



E170433

4. Install the new air filter element. Slide the open end of the air filter element in first, below the tab. Then push the closed end of the air filter into the bottom of the tray. The closed end should fit inside the groove in the tray. The tab of the closed end of the air filter should be oriented down and fit between the forks on the tray as shown at the arrow above.

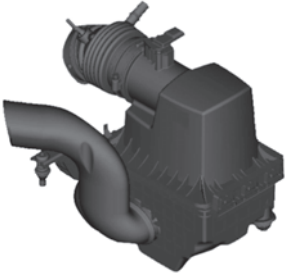
# Maintenance

---

**Note:** *Make sure you align the tab in the air filter element with the fork in the air cleaner assembly tray.*

5. Install the air cleaner assembly lid and tighten the four fasteners.

## 2.5L Engine



E142711

1. Detach the 2 clips that secure the air filter cover to the housing.
2. Carefully remove the air filter cover from the housing. Do not detach any connections or tubes from the cover.
3. Remove the air cleaner from the housing.
4. Wipe any dirt or debris from the air filter housing and cover to make sure that no dirt gets into the engine.
5. Load the air filter into the housing.
6. Replace the air filter cover and secure the clips.

# Vehicle Care

## GENERAL INFORMATION

Your Ford or Lincoln authorized dealer has many quality products available to clean your vehicle and protect its finishes.

### Materials

Name	Specification
Motorcraft Bug and Tar Remover ZC-42	-
Motorcraft Custom Bright Metal Cleaner ZC-15	-
Motorcraft® Detail Wash ZC-3-A	ESR-M14P4-A
Motorcraft Engine Shampoo and Degreaser (U.S.) ZC-20 (U.S.)	-
Engine Shampoo	-
Motorcraft Leather and Vinyl Cleaner ZC-56	-
Multi-Purpose Cleaner	-
Motorcraft® Premium Windshield Wash Concentrate with Bitterant (U.S.) ZC-32-B2 (U.S.)	WSS-M14P19-A
Professional Strength Carpet and Upholstery Cleaner ZC-54	-
Motorcraft Spot and Stain Remover (U.S.) ZC-14 (U.S.)	-
Motorcraft® Ultra-Clear Spray Glass Cleaner (U.S.) ZC-23 (U.S.)	ESR-M14P5-A
Motorcraft® Wheel and Tire Cleaner ZC-37-A	-

## CLEANING PRODUCTS

For best results, use the following products or products of equivalent quality:

## CLEANING THE EXTERIOR

Wash your vehicle regularly with cool or lukewarm water and a neutral pH shampoo, we recommend Motorcraft Detail Wash.

- Never use strong household detergents or soap, for example dish washing or laundry liquid. These products can discolor and spot painted surfaces.
- Never wash your vehicle when it is hot to the touch, or during strong or direct sunlight.
- Dry your vehicle with a chamois or soft terry cloth towel to eliminate water spotting.

# Vehicle Care

---

- Immediately remove fuel spillages, bird droppings, insect deposits and road tar. These may cause damage to your vehicle's paintwork or trim over time. We recommend Motorcraft Bug and Tar Remover.
- Remove any exterior accessories, for example antennas, before entering a car wash.

**Note:** *Suntan lotions and insect repellents can damage painted surfaces. If these substances come in contact with your vehicle, wash the affected area as soon as possible.*

## Exterior Chrome Parts

- Apply a high quality-cleaning product to bumpers and other chrome parts. Follow the manufacturer's instructions. We recommend Motorcraft Custom Bright Metal Cleaner.
- Do not apply the cleaning product to hot surfaces. Do not leave the cleaning product on chrome surfaces longer than the time recommended.
- Using other non-recommended cleaners can result in severe and permanent cosmetic damage.

**Note:** *Never use abrasive materials, for example steel wool or plastic pads as they can scratch the chrome surface.*

**Note:** *Do not use chrome cleaner, metal cleaner or polish on wheels or wheel covers.*

## Exterior Plastic Parts

For routine cleaning we recommend Motorcraft Detail Wash. If tar or grease spots are present, we recommend Motorcraft Bug and Tar Remover.

## Stripes or Graphics (If Equipped)

Hand washing your vehicle is preferred however, pressure washing may be used under the following conditions:

- Do not use water pressure higher than 2,000 psi (14,000 kPa).
- Do not use water hotter than 179°F (82°C).
- Use a spray with a 40° wide spray angle pattern.
- Keep the nozzle at a 12 in (305 mm) distance and 90° angle to your vehicle's surface.

**Note:** *Holding the pressure washer nozzle at an angle to the vehicle's surface may damage graphics and cause the edges to peel away from the vehicle's surface.*

## Underbody

Flush the complete underside of your vehicle frequently. Keep body and door drain holes free of debris or foreign material.

## WAXING

Regular waxing is necessary to protect your car's paint from the elements. We recommend that you wash and wax the painted surface once or twice a year.

When washing and waxing, park your vehicle in a shaded area out of direct sunlight. Always wash your vehicle before applying wax.

- Use a quality wax that does not contain abrasives.
- Follow the manufacturer's instructions to apply and remove the wax.
- Apply a small amount of wax in a back-and-forth motion, not in circles.

# Vehicle Care

---

- Do not allow wax to come in contact with any non-body (low-gloss black) colored trim. The wax will discolor or stain the parts over time.
  - Roof racks.
  - Bumpers.
  - Grained door handles.
  - Side moldings.
  - Mirror housings.
  - Windshield cowl area.
- Do not apply wax to glass areas.
- After waxing, your car's paint should feel smooth, and be free of streaks and smudges.
- Never wash or rinse any ignition coil, spark plug wire or spark plug well, or the area in and around these locations.
- Cover the battery, power distribution box, and air filter assembly to prevent water damage when cleaning the engine.

## CLEANING THE WINDOWS AND WIPER BLADES

Car wash chemicals and environmental fallout can result in windshield and wiper blade contamination. Dirty windshield and wipers will result in poor windshield wiper operation. Keep the windshield and wiper blades clean to maintain windshield wiper performance.

To clean the windshield and wiper blades:

- Clean the windshield with a non-abrasive glass cleaner. When cleaning the interior of the windshield, avoid getting any glass cleaner on the instrument panel or door panels. Wipe any glass cleaner off these surfaces immediately.
- For windshields contaminated with tree sap, chemicals, wax or bugs, clean the entire windshield using steel wool (no greater than 0000 grade) in a circular motion and rinse with water.
- Clean the wiper blades with isopropyl rubbing alcohol or windshield washer concentrate.

**Note:** *Do not use razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window. The vehicle warranty does not cover damage caused to the heated rear window grid lines.*

## CLEANING THE ENGINE

Engines are more efficient when they are clean because grease and dirt buildup keep the engine warmer than normal.

When washing:

- Take care when using a power washer to clean the engine. The high-pressure fluid could penetrate the sealed parts and cause damage.
- Do not spray a hot engine with cold water to avoid cracking the engine block or other engine components.
- Spray Motorcraft Engine Shampoo and Degreaser on all parts that require cleaning and pressure rinse clean. In Canada, use Motorcraft Engine Shampoo.
- Never wash or rinse the engine while it is hot or running; water in the running engine may cause internal damage.



# Vehicle Care

## CLEANING THE INTERIOR

### WARNINGS



Do not use cleaning solvents, bleach or dye on the vehicle's safety belts, as these actions may weaken the belt webbing.



On vehicles equipped with seat-mounted airbags, do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents. Such products could contaminate the side airbag system and affect performance of the side airbag in a collision.

For fabric, carpets, cloth seats, safety belts and seats equipped with side airbags:

- Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
- Remove light stains and soil with Motorcraft Professional Strength Carpet & Upholstery Cleaner.
- If grease or tar is present on the material, spot-clean the area first with Motorcraft Spot and Stain Remover. In Canada, use Motorcraft Multi-Purpose Cleaner.
- If a ring forms on the fabric after spot cleaning, clean the entire area immediately (but do not oversaturate) or the ring will set.
- Do not use household cleaning products or glass cleaners, which can stain and discolor the fabric and affect the flame retardant abilities of the seat materials.

## CLEANING THE INSTRUMENT PANEL AND INSTRUMENT CLUSTER LENS

### WARNING



Do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents when cleaning the steering wheel or instrument panel to avoid contamination of the airbag system.

**Note:** Follow the same procedure as cleaning leather seats for cleaning leather instrument panels and leather interior trim surfaces. See **Cleaning Leather Seats** (page 239).

Clean the instrument panel and cluster lens with a clean, damp and soft cloth, then use a clean, dry and soft cloth to dry these areas.

- Avoid cleaners or polishes that increase the gloss of the upper portion of the instrument panel. The dull finish in this area helps protect you from undesirable windshield reflection.
- Do not use any household cleaning products or glass cleaners as these may damage the finish of the instrument panel, interior trim and cluster lens.
- Wash or wipe your hands clean if you have been in contact with certain products such as insect repellent and suntan lotion to avoid possible damage to the interior painted surfaces.
- Do not allow air fresheners and hand sanitizers to spill onto interior surfaces. If a spill occurs, wipe off immediately. Your warranty may not cover these damages.

If a staining liquid like coffee or juice has been spilled on the instrument panel or on interior trim surfaces:

# Vehicle Care

---

1. Wipe up spilled liquid using a clean, soft cloth as quickly as possible.
2. Use Motorcraft Premium Leather and Vinyl Cleaner or a commercially available leather cleaning product for automotive interiors. Test any cleaner or stain remover on an inconspicuous area.
3. Alternatively, wipe the surface with a clean, soft cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
4. If necessary, apply more soap and water solution or cleaning product to a clean, soft cloth and press it onto the soiled area. Allow this to set at room temperature for 30 minutes.
5. Remove the soaked cloth, then with a clean, damp cloth, use a rubbing motion for 60 seconds on the soiled area.
6. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

## **CLEANING LEATHER SEATS (If Equipped)**

**Note:** *Follow the same procedure as cleaning leather seats for cleaning leather instrument panels and leather interior trim surfaces.*

For routine cleaning, wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

For cleaning and removing stains such as dye transfer, use Motorcraft Premium Leather and Vinyl Cleaner or a commercially available leather cleaning product for automotive interiors.

**Note:** *Test any cleaner or stain remover on an inconspicuous area.*

You should:

- Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
- Clean and treat spills and stains as soon as possible.

Do not use the following products as these may damage the leather:

- Oil and petroleum or silicone-based leather conditioners.
- Household cleaners.
- Alcohol solutions.
- Solvents or cleaners intended specifically for rubber, vinyl and plastics.

## **REPAIRING MINOR PAINT DAMAGE**

Authorized dealers have touch-up paint to match your vehicle's color. Your vehicle color code is printed on a sticker on the front, left-hand side door jamb. Take your color code to your authorized dealer to make sure you get the correct color.

Before repairing minor paint damage, use a cleaner such as Motorcraft Bug and Tar Remover to remove particles such as bird droppings, tree sap, insect deposits, tar spots, road salt and industrial fallout.

Always read the instructions before using cleaning products.

## **CLEANING THE ALLOY WHEELS (If Equipped)**

**Note:** *Do not apply a cleaning chemical to warm or hot wheel rims and covers.*

**Note:** *Some automatic car washes may cause damage to the finish on your wheel rims and covers.*

# Vehicle Care

---

**Note:** *Industrial-strength or heavy-duty cleaners in combination with brush agitation to remove brake dust and dirt, could wear away the clear coat finish over a period time.*

**Note:** *Do not use hydrofluoric acid-based or high caustic-based wheel cleaners, steel wool, fuels or strong household detergents.*

**Note:** *If you intend parking your vehicle for an extended period after cleaning the wheels with a wheel cleaner, drive your vehicle for a few minutes before doing so. This will reduce the risk of increased corrosion of the brake discs.*

Alloy wheels and wheel covers are coated with a clear coat paint finish. To maintain their condition we recommend that you:

- Clean the wheels weekly using Motorcraft Wheel and Tire Cleaner. Apply using manufacturer's instructions.
- Use a sponge to remove heavy deposits of dirt and brake dust accumulation.
- Rinse thoroughly with a strong stream of water when you have completed the cleaning process.
- To remove tar and grease, use Motorcraft Bug and Tar Remover.

## VEHICLE STORAGE

If you plan on storing your vehicle for 30 days or more, read the following maintenance recommendations to make sure your vehicle stays in good operating condition.

We engineer and test all motor vehicles and their components for reliable, regular driving. Under various conditions, long-term storage may lead to degraded engine performance or failure unless you use specific precautions to preserve engine components.

## General

- Store all vehicles in a dry, ventilated place.
- Protect from sunlight, if possible.
- If vehicles are stored outside, they require regular maintenance to protect against rust and damage.

## Body

- Wash your vehicle thoroughly to remove dirt, grease, oil, tar or mud from exterior surfaces, rear-wheel housing and the underside of front fenders.
- Periodically wash your vehicle if it is stored in exposed locations.
- Touch-up exposed or primed metal to prevent rust.
- Cover chrome and stainless steel parts with a thick coat of auto wax to prevent discoloration. Re-wax as necessary when you wash your vehicle.
- Lubricate all hood, door and luggage compartment hinges and latches with a light grade oil.
- Cover interior trim to prevent fading.
- Keep all rubber parts free from oil and solvents.

## Engine

- Change the engine oil and filter prior to storage because used engine oil contains contaminants which may cause engine damage.
- Start the engine every 15 days for a minimum of 15 minutes. Run at fast idle with the climate controls set to defrost until the engine reaches normal operating temperature.

# Vehicle Care

---

- With your foot on the brake, shift through all the gears while the engine is running.
- We recommend that you change the engine oil before you use your vehicle again.

## Fuel system

- Fill the fuel tank with high-quality fuel until the first automatic shutoff of the fuel pump nozzle.

## Cooling system

- Protect against freezing temperatures.
- When removing your vehicle from storage, check coolant fluid level. Confirm that there are no cooling system leaks and that fluid is at the recommended level.

## Battery

- Check and recharge as necessary. Keep connections clean.
- If storing your vehicle for more than 30 days without recharging the battery, we recommend that you disconnect the battery cables to maintain battery charge for quick starting.

**Note:** *It is necessary to reset memory features if battery cables are disconnected.*

## Brakes

- Make sure the brakes and parking brake release fully.

## Tires

- Maintain recommended air pressure.

## Miscellaneous

- Make sure all linkages, cables, levers and pins under your vehicle are covered with grease to prevent rust.
- Move vehicles at least 25 ft (7.5 m) every 15 days to lubricate working parts and prevent corrosion.

## Removing Vehicle From Storage

When your vehicle is ready to come out of storage, do the following:

- Wash your vehicle to remove any dirt or grease film build-up on window surfaces.
- Check windshield wipers for any deterioration.
- Check under the hood for any foreign material that may have collected during storage such as mice or squirrel nests.
- Check the exhaust for any foreign material that may have collected during storage.
- Check tire pressures and set tire inflation per the Tire Label.
- Check brake pedal operation. Drive your vehicle 15 ft (4.5 m) back and forth to remove rust build-up.
- Check fluid levels (including coolant, oil and gas) to make sure there are no leaks, and fluids are at recommended levels.
- If you remove the battery, clean the battery cable ends and check for damage.

Contact an authorized dealer if you have any concerns or issues.

# Wheels and Tires

## GENERAL INFORMATION

Use only approved wheel and tire sizes, using other sizes could damage your vehicle. If you change the diameter of the tires from that fitted at the factory, the speedometer may not display the correct speed. Take your vehicle to an authorized Ford dealer to have the system reprogrammed. If you intend to change the size of the wheels from that fitted by the manufacturer, you can check the suitability with an authorized dealer.

Additional information related to the functionality and maintenance of your tires can be found later in this chapter. See **Tire Care** (page 245).

The Ford recommended tire inflation pressures can be found on the Tire Label, which is located on the B-pillar or the edge of the driver's door. This information can also be found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door last post; next to the driver's seating position).

Ford strongly recommends maintaining these tire pressures at all times. Failure to follow the tire pressure recommendations can cause uneven treadwear patterns, reduced fuel economy, and adversely affect the way your vehicle handles.


**Note:** Check and set the tire pressure at the ambient temperature in which you are intending to drive your vehicle and when the tires are cold.


**Note:** Check your tire pressures at least once per month.


Set the pressure for your spare tire to the highest value given for your vehicle and tire size combination (if equipped).

## Notice to utility vehicle and truck owners

### WARNINGS

 Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles. To reduce the risk of serious injury or death from a rollover or other crash you must avoid sharp turns and abrupt maneuvers, drive at safe speeds for the conditions, keep tires inflated to Ford recommended pressures, never overload or improperly load your vehicle, and make sure every passenger is properly restrained.

 In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seat belt. All occupants must wear seat belts and children/infants must use appropriate restraints to minimize the risk of injury or ejection.

 Do not become overconfident in the ability of four-wheel drive vehicles. Although a four-wheel drive vehicle may accelerate better than a two-wheel drive vehicle in low traction situations, it won't stop any faster than two-wheel drive vehicles. Always drive at a safe speed.



E145298

# Wheels and Tires

Utility vehicles and trucks handle differently than passenger cars in the various driving conditions that are encountered on streets, highways and off-road. Utility vehicles and trucks are not designed for cornering at speeds as high as passenger cars any more than low-slung sports cars are designed to perform satisfactorily under off-road conditions.

Study your owner's manual and any supplements for specific information about equipment features, instructions for safe driving and additional precautions to reduce the risk of an accident or serious injury.

## Four-wheel drive system (If Equipped)

### WARNING



Do not become overconfident in the ability of four-wheel drive vehicles.

Although a four-wheel drive vehicle may accelerate better than a two-wheel drive vehicle in low traction situations, it won't stop any faster than two-wheel drive vehicles. Always drive at a safe speed.

A vehicle equipped with four-wheel drive (when selected) has the ability to use all four wheels to power itself. This increases traction which may enable you to safely drive over terrain and road conditions that a conventional two-wheel drive vehicle cannot.

Power is supplied to all four wheels through a transfer case or power transfer unit. Four-wheel drive vehicles allow you to select different modes as necessary. For information on transfer case operation and shifting procedures, See **Four-Wheel Drive** (page 140). For information on transfer case maintenance, See **Maintenance** (page 213). You should become thoroughly familiar with this information before you operate your vehicle.

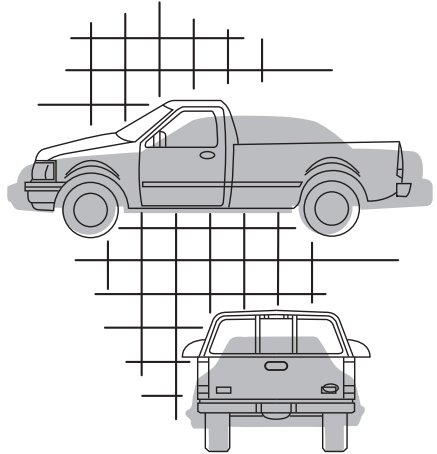
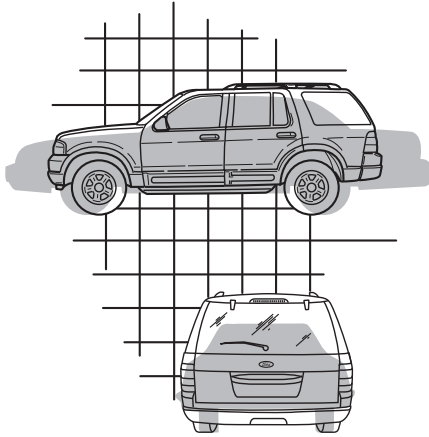
On some four-wheel drive vehicles, the initial shift from two-wheel to four-wheel drive while the vehicle is moving can cause a momentary clunk and ratcheting sound. These sounds are normal and are not cause for concern.

For four-wheel drive vehicles, a spare tire of a different size other than the tire provided should never be used. A dissimilar spare tire size (other than the spare tire provided) or major dissimilar tire sized between the front and rear axles could cause the four-wheel drive system to stop functioning and default to front-wheel drive. See **Principle of Operation** (page 140).

## How your vehicle differs from other vehicles

Sport utility vehicles and trucks can differ from some other vehicles in a few noticeable ways. Your vehicle may be:

# Wheels and Tires



E145299

- Higher - to allow higher load carrying capacity and to allow it to travel over rough terrain without getting hung up or damaging underbody components.
- Shorter - to give it the capability to approach inclines and drive over the crest of a hill without getting hung up or damaging underbody components. All other things held equal, a shorter wheelbase may make your vehicle quicker to respond to steering inputs than a vehicle with a longer wheelbase.
- Narrower - to provide greater maneuverability in tight spaces, particularly in off-road use.

E168583

As a result of the above dimensional differences, Sport utility vehicles and trucks often will have a higher center of gravity and a greater difference in center of gravity between the loaded and unloaded condition. These differences that make your vehicle so versatile also make it handle differently than an ordinary passenger car.

# Wheels and Tires

## TIRE CARE

### Information About Uniform Tire Quality Grading



E142542

Tire Quality Grades apply to new pneumatic passenger car tires. The Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width. For example: **Treadwear 200 Traction AA Temperature A.**

These Tire Quality Grades are determined by standards that the United States Department of Transportation has set.

Tire Quality Grades apply to new pneumatic passenger car tires. They do not apply to deep tread, winter-type snow tires, space-saver or temporary use spare tires, light truck or LT type tires, tires with nominal rim diameters of 10 to 12 inches or limited production tires as defined in Title 49 Code of Federal Regulations Part 575.104 (c)(2).

## U.S. Department of Transportation Tire quality grades:

The U.S. Department of Transportation requires Ford Motor Company to give you the following information about tire grades exactly as the government has written it.

### Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear 1½ times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices, and differences in road characteristics and climate.

### Traction AA A B C

#### WARNING



The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning or peak traction characteristics.



# Wheels and Tires

The traction grades, from highest to lowest are AA, A, B, and C. The grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

## Temperature A B C

### WARNING



The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the

Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 139. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

## Glossary of Tire Terminology

\***Tire label:** A label showing the original equipment tire sizes, recommended inflation pressure and the maximum weight the vehicle can carry.

\***Tire Identification Number (TIN):** A number on the sidewall of each tire providing information about the tire brand and manufacturing plant, tire size and date of manufacture. Also referred to as DOT code.

\***Inflation pressure:** A measure of the amount of air in a tire.

\***Standard load:** A class of P-metric or Metric tires designed to carry a maximum load at set pressure. For example: For P-metric tires 35 psi (2.4 bar) or 36 psi (2.5 bar) depending on tires size and for Metric tires 36 psi (2.5 bar). Increasing the inflation pressure beyond this pressure will not increase the tire's load carrying capability.

\***Extra load:** A class of P-metric or Metric tires designed to carry a heavier maximum load at 42 psi (2.9 bar). Increasing the inflation pressure beyond this pressure will not increase the tire's load carrying capability.

# Wheels and Tires

\***kPa:** Kilopascal, a metric unit of air pressure.

\***PSI:** Pounds per square inch, a standard unit of air pressure.

\***Cold tire pressure:** The tire pressure when the vehicle has been stationary and out of direct sunlight for an hour or more and prior to the vehicle being driven for 1 mi (1.6 km).

\***Recommended inflation pressure:** The cold inflation pressure found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), or Tire Label located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver door.

\***B-pillar:** The structural member at the side of the vehicle behind the front door.

\***Bead area of the tire:** Area of the tire next to the rim.

\***Sidewall of the tire:** Area between the bead area and the tread.

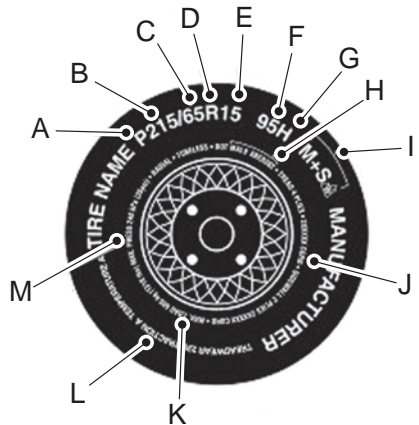
\***Tread area of the tire:** Area of the perimeter of the tire that contacts the road when mounted on the vehicle.

\***Rim:** The metal support (wheel) for a tire or a tire and tube assembly upon which the tire beads are seated.

## Information Contained on the Tire Sidewall

Both United States and Canada Federal regulations require tire manufacturers to place standardized information on the sidewall of all tires. This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics of the tire and also provides a U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number for safety standard certification and in case of a recall.

## Information on P Type Tires



E142543

P215/65R15 95H is an example of a tire size, load index and speed rating. The definitions of these items are listed below. (Note that the tire size, load index and speed rating for your vehicle may be different from this example.)

# Wheels and Tires

A. **P:** Indicates a tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association, that may be used for service on cars, sport utility vehicles, minivans and light trucks. **Note:** If your tire size does not begin with a letter this may mean it is designated by either the European Tire and Rim Technical Organization or the Japan Tire Manufacturing Association.

B. **215:** Indicates the nominal width of the tire in millimeters from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. In general, the larger the number, the wider the tire.

C. **65:** Indicates the aspect ratio which gives the tire's ratio of height to width.

D. **R:** Indicates a radial type tire.

E. **15:** Indicates the wheel or rim diameter in inches. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new wheel diameter.

F. **95:** Indicates the tire's load index. It is an index that relates to how much weight a tire can carry. You may find this information in your owner's manual. If not, contact a local tire dealer.

**Note:** *You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by federal law.*

G. **H:** Indicates the tire's speed rating. The speed rating denotes the speed at which a tire is designed to be driven for extended periods of time under a standard condition of load and inflation pressure. The tires on your vehicle may operate at different conditions for load and inflation pressure. These speed ratings may need to be adjusted for the difference in conditions. The ratings range from 81 mph (130 km/h) to 186 mph (299 km/h). These ratings are listed in the following chart.

**Note:** *You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by federal law.*

Letter rating	Speed rating
M	81 mph (130 km/h)
N	87 mph (140 km/h)
Q	99 mph (159 km/h)
R	106 mph (171 km/h)
S	112 mph (180 km/h)
T	118 mph (190 km/h)
U	124 mph (200 km/h)
H	130 mph (210 km/h)
V	149 mph (240 km/h)

## Wheels and Tires

Letter rating	Speed rating
W	168 mph (270 km/h)
Y	186 mph (299 km/h)

**Note:** For tires with a maximum speed capability over 149 mph (240 km/h), tire manufacturers sometimes use the letters ZR. For those with a maximum speed capability over 186 mph (299 km/h), tire manufacturers always use the letters ZR.

**H. U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number (TIN):** This begins with the letters DOT and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters are the plant code designating where it was manufactured, the next two are the tire size code and the last four numbers represent the week and year the tire was built. For example, the numbers 317 mean the 31st week of 1997. After 2000, the numbers go to four digits. For example, 2501 means the 25th week of 2001. The numbers in between are identification codes used for traceability. This information is used to contact customers if a tire defect requires a recall.

**I. M+S or M/S:** Mud and Snow, or  
**AT:** All Terrain, or  
**AS:** All Season.

**J. Tire Ply Composition and Material Used:** Indicates the number of plies or the number of layers of rubber-coated fabric in the tire tread and sidewall. Tire manufacturers also must indicate the ply materials in the tire and the sidewall, which include steel, nylon, polyester, and others.

**K. Maximum Load:** Indicates the maximum load in kilograms and pounds that can be carried by the tire. See the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), for the correct tire pressure for your vehicle.

**L. Treadwear, Traction and Temperature Grades:**

**\*Treadwear** The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100.

# Wheels and Tires

**\*Traction:** The traction grades, from highest to lowest are AA, A, B, and C. The grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

**\*Temperature:** The temperature grades are A (the highest), B and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

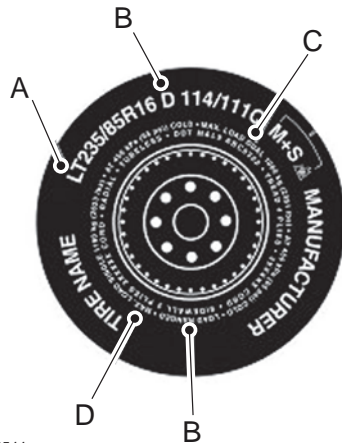
## M. Maximum Inflation Pressure:

Indicates the tire manufacturers' maximum permissible pressure or the pressure at which the maximum load can be carried by the tire. This pressure is normally higher than the vehicle manufacturer's recommended cold inflation pressure which can be found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), or Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. The cold inflation pressure should never be set lower than the recommended pressure on the vehicle label.

The tire suppliers may have additional markings, notes or warnings such as standard load or radial tubeless.

## Additional Information Contained on the Tire Sidewall for LT Type Tires

**Note:** *Tire Quality Grades do not apply to this type of tire.*



E142544

LT type tires have some additional information beyond those of P type tires; these differences are described below.

**A. LT:** Indicates a tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association, that is intended for service on light trucks.

**B. Load Range and Load Inflation Limits:** Indicates the tire's load-carrying capabilities and its inflation limits.

# Wheels and Tires

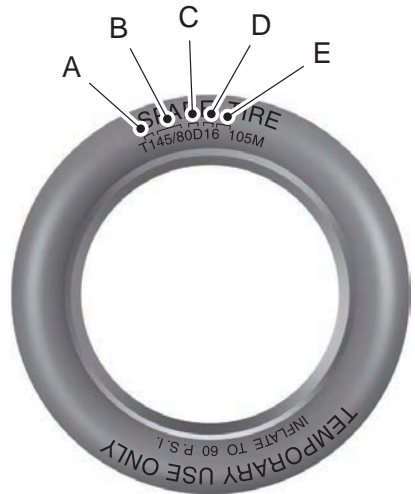
**C. Maximum Load Dual lb (kg) at psi (kPa) cold:** Indicates the maximum load and tire pressure when the tire is used as a dual, defined as four tires on the rear axle (a total of six or more tires on the vehicle).

**D. Maximum Load Single lb (kg) at psi (kPa) cold:** Indicates the maximum load and tire pressure when the tire is used as a single, defined as two tires (total) on the rear axle.

### Information on T Type Tires

T145/80D16 is an example of a tire size.

**Note:** *The temporary tire size for your vehicle may be different from this example. Tire Quality Grades do not apply to this type of tire.*



E142545

T type tires have some additional information beyond those of P type tires; these differences are described below:

**A. T:** Indicates a type of tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association, that is intended for temporary service on cars, sport utility vehicles, minivans and light trucks.

**B. 145:** Indicates the nominal width of the tire in millimeters from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. In general, the larger the number, the wider the tire.

## Wheels and Tires

---

C. **80:** Indicates the aspect ratio which gives the tire's ratio of height to width. Numbers of 70 or lower indicate a short sidewall.

D. **D:** Indicates a diagonal type tire.

**R:** Indicates a radial type tire.

E. **16:** Indicates the wheel or rim diameter in inches. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new wheel diameter.

### Recommended Tire Pressures and Inflating Your Tires

Safe operation of your vehicle requires that your tires are properly inflated. Remember that a tire can lose up to half of its air pressure without appearing flat. Every day before you drive, check your tires. If one looks lower than the others, use a tire gauge to check the pressure of all tires and adjust if required.

At least once a month and before long trips, inspect each tire and check the tire pressure with a tire gauge (including spare, if equipped). Inflate all tires to the inflation pressure recommended by Ford Motor Company.

### WARNING



Under-inflation is the most common cause of tire failures and may result in severe tire cracking, tread separation, or blowout, with unexpected loss of vehicle control and increased risk of injury. Under-inflation increase sidewall flexing and rolling resistance, resulting in heat build-up and internal damage to the tire. It also may result in unnecessary tire stress, irregular wear, loss of vehicle control, and accidents. A tire can lose up to half of its air pressure and not appear flat.

---

You are strongly urged to buy a reliable tire pressure gauge, as automatic service station gauges may be inaccurate. Ford recommends the use of a digital or dial-type tire pressure gauge rather than a stick-type tire pressure gauge. Use the recommended cold inflation pressure for optimum tire performance and wear. Under-inflation or over-inflation may cause uneven treadwear patterns.

# Wheels and Tires

Always inflate your tires to the Ford recommended inflation pressure even if it is less than the maximum inflation pressure information found on the tire. You will find a Tire Label containing the Ford recommended tire inflation pressure by the tire size and other important information located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door.

The Ford recommended tire inflation pressure is also found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch on the B-pillar, or on the edge of the driver's door.

Failure to follow the tire pressure recommendations can cause uneven treadwear patterns and adversely affect the way your vehicle handles.

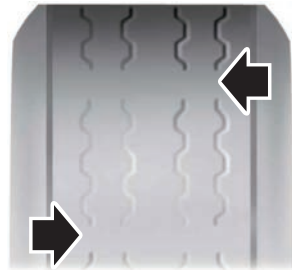
## Inspecting Your Tires and Wheel Valve Stems

Periodically inspect the tire treads for uneven or excessive wear and remove objects such as stones, nails or glass that may be wedged in the tread grooves. Check the tire and valve stems for holes, cracks, or cuts that may permit air leakage and repair or replace the tire and replace the valve stem. Inspect the tire sidewalls for cracking, cuts, bruises and other signs of damage or excessive wear. If internal damage to the tire

is suspected, have the tire demounted and inspected in case it needs to be repaired or replaced. For your safety, tires that are damaged or show signs of excessive wear should not be used because they are more likely to blow out or fail.

Improper or inadequate vehicle maintenance can cause tires to wear abnormally. Inspect all your tires, including the spare, frequently, and replace them if one or more of the following conditions exist:

## Tire Wear



E142546

When the tread is worn down to one sixteenth of an inch (2 mm), tires must be replaced to help prevent your vehicle from skidding and hydroplaning. Built-in treadwear indicators, or wear bars, which look like narrow strips of smooth rubber across the tread will appear on the tire when the tread is worn down to one sixteenth of an inch (2 mm).



# Wheels and Tires

---


When the tire tread wears down to the same height as these wear bars, the tire is worn out and must be replaced.

## Damage

Periodically inspect the tire treads and sidewalls for damage (such as bulges in the tread or sidewalls, cracks in the tread groove and separation in the tread or sidewall). If damage is observed or suspected, have the tire inspected by a tire professional. Tires can be damaged during off-road use, so inspection after off-road use is also recommended.

## Age

### WARNING

 Tires degrade over time depending on many factors such as weather, storage conditions, and conditions of use (load, speed, inflation pressure) the tires experience throughout their lives.

In general, tires should be replaced after six years regardless of tread wear. However, heat caused by hot climates or frequent high loading conditions can accelerate the aging process and may require tires to be replaced more frequently.

You should replace your spare tire when you replace the road tires or after six years due to aging even if it has not been used.

---

## U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number

Both United States and Canada Federal regulations require tire manufacturers to place standardized information on the sidewall of all tires. This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics of the tire and also provides a U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number for safety standard certification and in case of a recall.


# Wheels and Tires

This begins with the letters DOT and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters are the plant code designating where it was manufactured, the next two are the tire size code and the last four numbers represent the week and year the tire was built. For example, the numbers 317 mean the 31st week of 1997. After 2000, the numbers go to four digits. For example, 2501 means the 25th week of 2001. The numbers in between are identification codes used for traceability. This information is used to contact customers if a tire defect requires a recall.

## Tire Replacement Requirements


Your vehicle is equipped with tires designed to provide a safe ride and handling capability.

### WARNINGS

 Only use replacement tires and wheels that are the same size, load index, speed rating and type (such as P-metric versus LT-metric or all-season versus all-terrain) as those originally provided by Ford. The recommended tire and wheel size may be found on either the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), or the Tire Label which

### WARNINGS

is located on the B-Pillar or edge of the driver's door. If this information is not found on these labels then you should contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended by Ford can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. Additionally the use of non-recommended tires and wheels could cause steering, suspension, axle, transfer case or power transfer unit failure. If you have questions regarding tire replacement, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

 To reduce the risk of serious injury, when mounting replacement tires and wheels, you should not exceed the maximum pressure indicated on the sidewall of the tire to set the beads without additional precautions listed below. If the beads do not seat at the maximum pressure indicated, re-lubricate and try again.

When inflating the tire for mounting pressures up to 20 psi (1.38 bar) greater than the maximum pressure on the tire sidewall, the following precautions must be taken to protect the person mounting the tire:

# Wheels and Tires

---

## WARNINGS

1. Make sure that you have the correct tire and wheel size.
2. Lubricate the tire bead and wheel bead seat area again.
3. Stand at a minimum of 12 feet (3.66 meters) away from the wheel and tire assembly.
4. Use both eye and ear protection.

For a mounting pressure more than 20 psi (1.38 bar) greater than the maximum pressure, a Ford dealer or other tire service professional should do the mounting.

Always inflate steel carcass tires with a remote air fill with the person inflating standing at a minimum of 12 feet (3.66 meters) away from the wheel and tire assembly.

**Important:** Remember to replace the wheel valve stems when the road tires are replaced on your vehicle.

It is recommended that the two front tires or two rear tires generally be replaced as a pair.


The tire pressure sensors mounted in the wheels (originally installed on your vehicle) are not designed to be used in aftermarket wheels.


The use of wheels or tires not recommended by Ford Motor Company may affect the operation of your tire pressure monitoring system.

If the tire pressure monitoring system indicator is flashing, your system is malfunctioning. Your replacement tire might be incompatible with your tire pressure monitoring system, or some component of the system may be damaged.

## Safety Practices

### WARNINGS

 If your vehicle is stuck in snow, mud, or sand, do not rapidly spin the tires. Spinning the tires can tear the tire and cause an explosion. A tire can explode in as little as three to five seconds.

 Do not spin the wheels at over 35 mph (56 km/h). The tires may fail and injure a passenger or bystander.

**Driving habits have a great deal to do with your tire mileage and safety.**

- \*Observe posted speed limits
- \*Avoid fast starts, stops and turns
- \*Avoid potholes and objects on the road
- \*Do not run over curbs or hit the tire against a curb when parking

# Wheels and Tires

---

## Highway Hazards

No matter how carefully you drive, there is always the possibility that you may eventually have a flat tire on the highway. Drive slowly to the closest safe area out of traffic. This may further damage the flat tire, but your safety is more important.

If you feel a sudden vibration or ride disturbance while driving, or you suspect your tire or vehicle has been damaged, immediately reduce your speed. Drive with caution until you can safely pull off the road. Stop and inspect the tires for damage. If a tire is under-inflated or damaged, deflate it, remove wheel and replace it with your spare tire and wheel. If you cannot detect a cause, have the vehicle towed to the nearest repair facility or tire dealer to have the vehicle inspected.

## Tire and Wheel Alignment

A bad jolt from hitting a curb or pothole can cause the front end of your vehicle to become misaligned or cause damage to your tires. If your vehicle seems to pull to one side when you are driving, the wheels may be out of alignment. Have an authorized dealer check the wheel alignment periodically.

Wheel misalignment in the front or the rear can cause uneven and rapid treadwear of your tires and should be corrected by an authorized dealer. Front-wheel drive vehicles and those with an independent rear suspension (if equipped) may require alignment of all four wheels.

The tires should also be balanced periodically. An unbalanced tire and wheel assembly may result in irregular tire wear.

## Tire Rotation

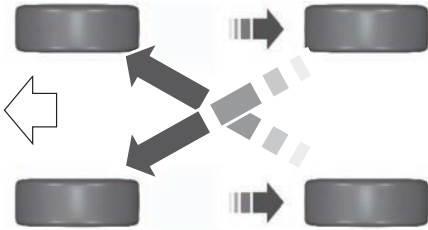
**Note:** *If your tires show uneven wear, ask an authorized dealer to check for and correct any wheel misalignment, tire imbalance or mechanical problem involved before tire rotation.*

**Note:** *Your vehicle may be equipped with a dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly. A dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly is defined as a spare wheel and tire assembly that is different in brand, size or appearance from the road tires and wheels. If you have a dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly, it is intended for temporary use only and should not be used in a tire rotation.*

**Note:** *After having your tires rotated, inflation pressure must be checked and adjusted to the vehicle requirements.*

# Wheels and Tires

Rotating your tires at the recommended interval (as indicated in the Scheduled Maintenance chapter) will help your tires wear more evenly, providing better tire performance and longer tire life. Sometimes irregular tire wear can be corrected by rotating the tires.



E142547

## USING SNOW CHAINS

### WARNING



Snow tires must be the same size, load index, speed rating as those originally provided by Ford. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended by Ford can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. Additionally, the use of non-recommended tires and wheels could cause steering, suspension, axle, transfer case or power transfer unit failure.

The tires on your vehicle have all-weather treads to provide traction in rain and snow. However, in some climates, you may need to use snow tires and cables. If you need to use cables, it is recommended that steel wheels (of the same size and specifications) be used, as cables may chip aluminum wheels.

Follow these guidelines when using snow tires and traction devices

- If possible, avoid fully loading your vehicle
- Purchase chains or cables from a manufacturer that clearly labels body to tire dimension restrictions.
- Use 10 mm cables or chains only on front axle with 235/55R17 tires.
- Not all S-class snow chains or cables meet these restrictions. Chains of this size restriction will include a tensioning device.
- The snow chains or cables must be mounted in pairs on the front axle.
- Do not use chains or cables on 235/50R18 and 235/45R19 tires.
- Install cables securely, verifying that the cables do not touch any wiring, brake lines or fuel lines.
- When driving with tire cables do not exceed 30 mph (48 km/h) or the maximum speed recommended by the chain manufacturer, whichever is less.
- Drive cautiously. If you hear the cables rub or bang against the vehicle, stop and retighten them. If this does not work, remove the cables to prevent vehicle damage.
- Remove the cables when they are no longer needed. Do not use cables on dry roads.

If you have any questions regarding snow chains or cables, please contact your authorized dealer.

# Wheels and Tires

## TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM

### WARNING



The tire pressure monitoring system is not a substitute for manually checking tire pressure. The tire pressure should be checked periodically (at least monthly) using a tire gauge, see *Inflating your tires* in this chapter. Failure to properly maintain your tire pressure could increase the risk of tire failure, loss of control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.



Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

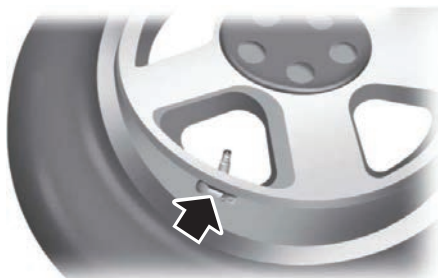
Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

The tire pressure monitoring system complies with part 15 of the FCC rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

# Wheels and Tires

## Changing Tires With a Tire Pressure Monitoring System



E142549

**Note:** Each road tire is equipped with a tire pressure sensor located inside the wheel and tire assembly cavity. The pressure sensor is attached to the valve stem. The pressure sensor is covered by the tire and is not visible unless the tire is removed. Take care when changing the tire to avoid damaging the sensor

You should always have your tires serviced by an authorized dealer.

Check the tire pressure periodically (at least monthly) using an accurate tire gauge. See *Inflating Your Tires* in this chapter.

## Understanding Your Tire Pressure Monitoring System

The tire pressure monitoring system measures pressure in your four road tires and sends the tire pressure readings to your vehicle. The low tire pressure warning light will turn on if the tire pressure is significantly low. Once the light is illuminated, your tires are under-inflated and need to be inflated to the manufacturer's recommended tire pressure. Even if the light turns on and a short time later turns off, your tire pressure still needs to be checked.

### When Your Temporary Spare Tire is Installed

When one of your road tires needs to be replaced with the temporary spare, the system will continue to identify an issue to remind you that the damaged road wheel and tire assembly needs to be repaired and put back on your vehicle.

To restore the full function of the tire pressure monitoring system, have the damaged road wheel and tire assembly repaired and remounted on your vehicle.

### When You Believe Your System is Not Operating Properly

The main function of the tire pressure monitoring system is to warn you when your tires need air. It can also warn you in the event the system is no longer capable of functioning as intended. See the following chart for information concerning your tire pressure monitoring system:

# Wheels and Tires

Low tire pressure warning light	Possible cause	Customer action required
Solid warning light	Tire(s) under-inflated	Make sure tires are at the proper pressure. See <b>Inflating your tires</b> in this chapter. After inflating your tires to the manufacturer's recommended pressure as shown on the Tire Label (located on the edge of driver's door or the B-Pillar), the vehicle must be driven for at least two minutes over 20 mph (32 km/h) before the light turns off.
	Spare tire in use	Repair the damaged road wheel and tire assembly and reinstall it on the vehicle to restore system function. For a description on how the system functions, see <b>When your temporary spare tire is installed</b> in this section.
	TPMS malfunction	If the tires are properly inflated and the spare tire is not in use but the light remains on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Flashing warning light	Spare tire in use	Repair the damaged road wheel and tire assembly and reinstall it on the vehicle to restore system function. For a description on how the system functions, see <b>When your temporary spare tire is installed</b> in this section.
	TPMS malfunction	If the tires are properly inflated and the spare tire is not in use but the light remains on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

## When Inflating Your Tires

When putting air into your tires (such as at a gas station or in your garage), the tire pressure monitoring system may not respond immediately to the air added to your tires.

It may take up to two minutes of driving over 20 mph (32 km/h) for the light to turn off after you have filled your tires to the recommended inflation pressure



# Wheels and Tires

## How Temperature Affects Your Tire Pressure

The tire pressure monitoring system monitors tire pressure in each pneumatic tire. While driving in a normal manner, a typical passenger tire inflation pressure may increase about 2 to 4 psi (14 to 28 kPa) from a cold start situation. If the vehicle is stationary overnight with the outside temperature significantly lower than the daytime temperature, the tire pressure may decrease about 3 psi (21 kPa) for a drop of 30°F (17°C) in ambient temperature. This lower pressure value may be detected by the tire pressure monitoring system as being significantly lower than the recommended inflation pressure and activate the system warning light for low tire pressure. If the low tire pressure warning light is on, visually check each tire to verify that no tire is flat. If one or more tires are flat, repair as necessary. Check the air pressure in the road tires. If any tire is under-inflated, carefully drive the vehicle to the nearest location where air can be added to the tires. Inflate all the tires to the recommended inflation pressure.

## CHANGING A ROAD WHEEL

### WARNINGS



The use of tire sealant may damage your tire pressure monitoring system and should only be used in roadside emergencies. If you must use a sealant, the Ford Tire Mobility Kit sealant should be used. The tire pressure monitoring system sensor and valve stem on the wheel must be replaced by an authorized dealer after use of the sealant.



See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System** (page 259). If the tire pressure monitor sensor becomes damaged, it will no longer function.

**Note:** *The tire pressure monitoring system indicator light will illuminate when the spare tire is in use. To restore the full function of the monitoring system, all road wheels equipped with tire pressure monitoring sensors must be mounted on the vehicle.*

If you get a flat tire while driving, do not apply the brake heavily. Instead, gradually decrease your speed. Hold the steering wheel firmly and slowly move to a safe place on the side of the road.

Have a flat serviced by an authorized dealer in order to prevent damage to the tire pressure monitoring system sensors. See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System** (page 259). Replace the spare tire with a road tire as soon as possible. During repairing or replacing of the flat tire, have the authorized dealer inspect the tire pressure monitoring system sensor for damage.

## Dissimilar Spare Wheel and Tire Assembly Information

### WARNING



Failure to follow these guidelines could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, injury or death.

If you have a dissimilar spare wheel and tire, then it is intended for temporary use only. This means that if you need to use it, you should replace it as soon as possible with a road wheel and tire assembly that is the same size and type as the road tires and wheels that were originally provided by Ford. If the dissimilar spare tire or wheel is damaged, it should be replaced rather than repaired.

A dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly is defined as a spare wheel and tire assembly that is different in brand, size or appearance from the road tires and wheels and can be one of three types:

# Wheels and Tires

**1. T-type mini-spare:** This spare tire begins with the letter T for tire size and may have Temporary Use Only molded in the sidewall.

**2. Full-size dissimilar spare with label on wheel:** This spare tire has a label on the wheel that states: THIS WHEEL AND TIRE ASSEMBLY FOR TEMPORARY USE ONLY.

When driving with one of the dissimilar spare tires listed above, do not:

- Exceed 50 mph (80 km/h).
- Load the vehicle beyond maximum vehicle load rating listed on the Safety Compliance Label.
- Tow a trailer.
- Use snow chains on the end of the vehicle with the dissimilar spare tire.
- Use more than one dissimilar spare tire at a time.
- Use commercial car washing equipment.
- Try to repair the dissimilar spare tire.

Use of one of the dissimilar spare tires listed above at any one wheel location can lead to impairment of the following:

- Handling, stability and braking performance.
- Comfort and noise.
- Ground clearance and parking at curbs.
- Winter weather driving capability.
- Wet weather driving capability.
- All-wheel driving capability

**3. Full-size dissimilar spare without label on wheel**

When driving with the full-size dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly, do not:

- Exceed 70 mph (113 km/h).
- Use more than one dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly at a time.

- Use commercial car washing equipment.
- Use snow chains on the end of the vehicle with the dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly.

The usage of a full-size dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly can lead to impairment of the following:

- Handling, stability and braking performance.
- Comfort and noise.
- Ground clearance and parking at curbs.
- Winter weather driving capability.
- Wet weather driving capability.
- All-wheel driving capability

When driving with the full-size dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly additional caution should be given to:

- Towing a trailer.
- Driving vehicles equipped with a camper body.
- Driving vehicles with a load on the cargo rack.

Drive cautiously when using a full-size dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly and seek service as soon as possible.

## Tire Change Procedure

### WARNINGS



When one of the front wheels is off the ground, the transmission alone will not prevent your vehicle from moving or slipping off the jack, even if the transmission is in park (P) or neutral (N).



To help prevent your vehicle from moving when you change a tire, be sure to place the transmission in park (P) or neutral (N), set the parking brake, and block (in both directions) the wheel that is diagonally opposite (other side and end of your vehicle) to the tire being changed.

# Wheels and Tires

## WARNINGS



Never get underneath a vehicle that is supported only by a jack. If the vehicle slips off the jack, you or someone else could be seriously injured.



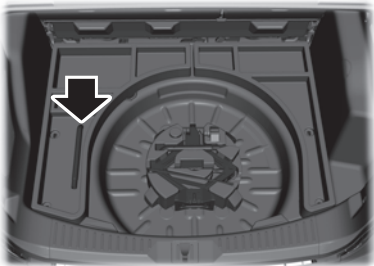
Do not attempt to change a tire on the side of the vehicle close to moving traffic. Pull far enough off the road to avoid the danger of being hit when operating the jack or changing the wheel.



Always use the jack provided as original equipment with your vehicle. If using a jack other than the one provided as original equipment with your vehicle, make sure the jack capacity is adequate for the vehicle weight, including any vehicle cargo or modifications.

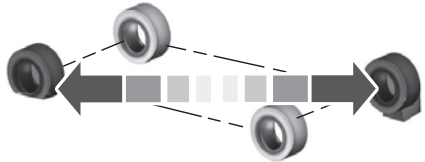
**Note:** *Passengers should not remain in your vehicle when the vehicle is being jacked.*

1. Park on a level surface, set the parking brake and activate the hazard flashers.
2. Place the transmission in park (P) and turn the engine off.
3. Remove the carpeted wheel cover.
4. Remove the wing nut that secures the spare tire by turning it counterclockwise.



E160855

5. Remove the jack from the foam holder. The lug wrench is located in the left side storage foam next to the spare tire. Remove the flat tire retainer strap from the jack base.



E142551

6. Block the diagonally opposite wheel.
7. Loosen each wheel lug nut one-half turn counterclockwise, but do not remove them until the wheel is raised off the ground.

**Note:** *Jack at the specified locations to avoid damage to the vehicle.*

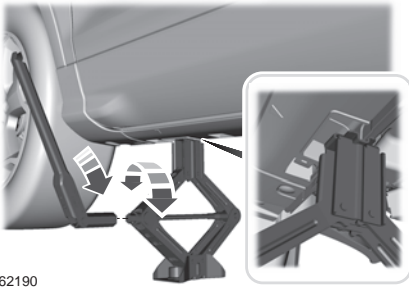
8. The vehicle jacking points are shown here, and are depicted on the warning label on the jack.



E145908

9. Small arrow-shaped marks on the sills show the location of the jacking points.

# Wheels and Tires

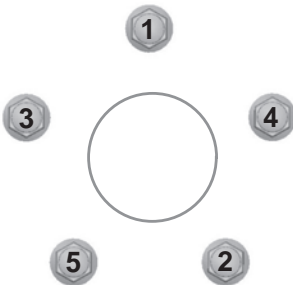


E162190

10. Remove the lug nuts with the lug wrench.

**Note:** *If equipped with full wheel covers with exposed wheel nuts, remove the wheel nuts prior to removing the wheel cover or damage to the wheel cover may occur.*

11. Replace the flat tire with the spare tire, making sure the valve stem is facing outward. Reinstall the lug nuts until the wheel is snug against the hub. Do not fully tighten the lug nuts until the wheel has been lowered.
12. Lower the wheel by turning the jack handle counterclockwise.



E75442

13. Remove the jack and fully tighten the lug nuts in the order shown. See **Technical Specifications** (page 266).

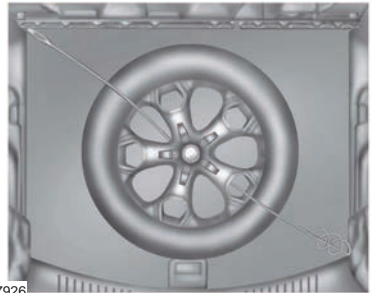
## Stowing the flat tire

1. Put the jack and lug wrench away. Make sure the jack is fastened so it does not rattle when you drive.
2. Unblock the wheels.
3. Stow the flat tire on the floor in the cargo area. Secure with the flat tire retainer strap by following the next steps:



E142906

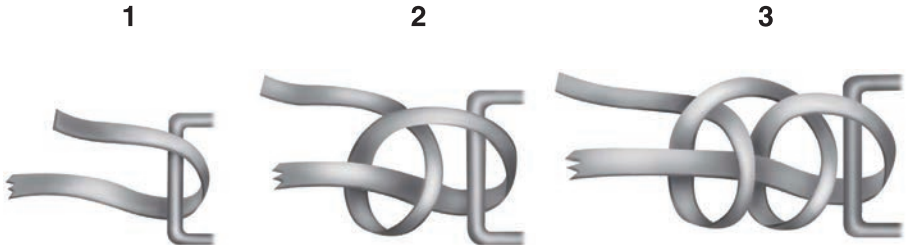
4. Locate the cargo tie-down near the seatback. Push the loop of the retainer strap through the tie-down. Thread the non-loop end through the loop.



E157926

# Wheels and Tires

5. Weave the retainer strap through the wheel openings.
6. Locate the front cargo tie-down at the opposite corner of the cargo area to the tie-down used in Step 4. Thread the retainer strap through the tie-down and pull tight.
7. Secure by tying a 2-half hitch knot.




E143746

## TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

### Wheel Lug Nut Torque Specifications

#### WARNING

 When a wheel is installed, always remove any corrosion, dirt or foreign materials present on the mounting surfaces of the wheel or the surface of the wheel hub, brake drum or brake disc that contacts the wheel. Make sure that any fasteners that attach the rotor to the hub are secured so they do not interfere with the mounting surfaces of the wheel. Installing wheels without correct metal-to-metal contact at the wheel mounting surfaces can cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the wheel to come off while your vehicle is in motion, resulting in loss of control.

Bolt size	lb-ft (Nm)*
M12 x 1.5	100 (135)

\*Torque specifications are for nut and bolt threads free of dirt and rust. Use only Ford recommended replacement fasteners.

Retighten the lug nuts to the specified torque within 100 miles (160 kilometers) after any wheel disturbance (such as tire rotation, changing a flat tire, wheel removal).

## Wheels and Tires

---



E145950

A Wheel pilot bore.

Inspect the wheel pilot bore and mounting surface prior to installation. Remove any visible corrosion or loose particles.

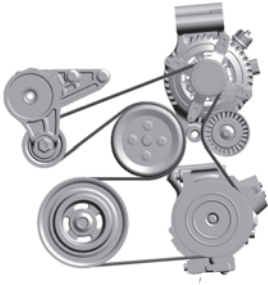
# Capacities and Specifications

## ENGINE SPECIFICATIONS - 1.6L ECOBOOST™

Engine Component	1.6L EcoBoost Engine
Cubic inches	98
Required fuel	Minimum 87 octane
Compression ratio	10.0:1
Spark plug gap	0.027 - 0.031 in. (0.70 - 0.80 mm)

### Drivebelt Routing

#### 1.6L EcoBoost engine



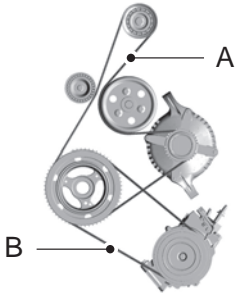
E161372

## ENGINE SPECIFICATIONS - 2.0L ECOBOOST™

Engine Component	2.0L EcoBoost Engine
Cubic inches	122
Required fuel	Minimum 87 octane
Compression ratio	9.3:1
Spark plug gap	0.027 - 0.031 in. (0.70 - 0.80 mm)

# Capacities and Specifications

## Drivebelt Routing



E161383

- A. The long drivebelt is on the first pulley groove closest to the engine.
- B. The short drivebelt is on the second pulley groove farthest from engine.

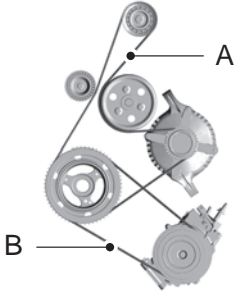
## ENGINE SPECIFICATIONS - 2.5L

Engine Component	2.5L Engine
Cubic inches	152
Required fuel	Minimum 87 octane
Compression ratio	9.7:1
Spark plug gap	0.049 - 0.053 in. (1.25 - 1.35 mm)



# Capacities and Specifications

## Drivebelt Routing



- A. The long drivebelt is on the first pulley groove closest to the engine.
- B. The short drivebelt is on the second pulley groove farthest from the engine.

## MOTORCRAFT PARTS - 1.6L ECOBOOST™

Component	1.6L EcoBoost Engine
Air filter element	FA-1908
Oil filter	FL-910-S
Battery	BXT-96R-590
Spark plugs	SP-532
Cabin air filter	FP-70
Windshield wiper blade	WW-2750 (driver side) WW-2705 (passenger side) WW-1106 (rear window)

We recommend Motorcraft replacement parts available at your Ford dealer or at [fordparts.com](http://fordparts.com) for scheduled maintenance. These parts meet or exceed Ford Motor Company's specifications and are engineered for your vehicle. Use of other parts may impact vehicle performance, emissions and durability. Your warranty may be void for any damage related to use of other parts.

If a Motorcraft oil filter is not available, use an oil filter that meets industry performance specification SAE/USCAR-36.

For spark plug replacement, contact an authorized dealer. Replace the spark plugs at the appropriate intervals.

# Capacities and Specifications

---

## MOTORCRAFT PARTS - 2.0L ECOBOOST™

<b>Component</b>	<b>2.0L EcoBoost Engine</b>
Air filter element	FA-1908
Oil filter	FL-910-S
Battery	BXT-96R-590
Spark plugs	SP-537
Cabin air filter	FP-70
Windshield wiper blade	WW-2750 (driver side) WW-2705 (passenger side) WW-1106 (rear window)

We recommend Motorcraft replacement parts available at your Ford dealer or at [fordparts.com](http://fordparts.com) for scheduled maintenance. These parts meet or exceed Ford Motor Company's specifications and are engineered for your vehicle. Use of other parts may impact vehicle performance, emissions and durability. Your warranty may be void for any damage related to use of other parts.

If a Motorcraft oil filter is not available, use an oil filter that meets industry performance specification SAE/USCAR-36.

For spark plug replacement, contact an authorized dealer. Replace the spark plugs at the appropriate intervals.

# Capacities and Specifications

---

## MOTORCRAFT PARTS - 2.5L

<b>Component</b>	<b>2.5L Engine</b>
Air filter element	FA-1910
Oil filter	FL-910-S
Battery	BXT-96R-590
Spark plugs	SP-530
Cabin air filter	FP-70
Windshield wiper blade	WW-2750 (driver side) WW-2705 (passenger side) WW-1106 (rear window)

We recommend Motorcraft replacement parts available at your Ford dealer or at [fordparts.com](http://fordparts.com) for scheduled maintenance. These parts meet or exceed Ford Motor Company's specifications and are engineered for your vehicle. Use of other parts may impact vehicle performance, emissions and durability. Your warranty may be void for any damage related to use of other parts.

If a Motorcraft oil filter is not available, use an oil filter that meets industry performance specification SAE/USCAR-36.

For spark plug replacement, contact an authorized dealer. Replace the spark plugs at the appropriate intervals.

# Capacities and Specifications

## VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER

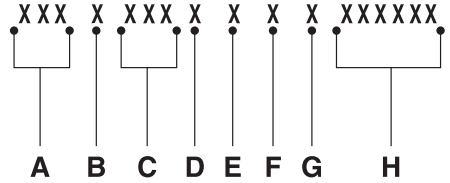
The vehicle identification number is located on the left-hand side of the instrument panel.



E142476

Please note that in the graphic, XXXX is representative of your vehicle identification number.

The Vehicle Identification Number contains the following information:



E142477

- A World manufacturer identifier
- B Brake system, Gross Vehicle Weight Rating, Restraint Devices and their locations
- C Make, vehicle line, series, body type
- D Engine type
- E Check digit
- F Model year
- G Assembly plant
- H Production sequence number

# Capacities and Specifications


## VEHICLE CERTIFICATION LABEL

MFD. BY FORD MOTOR CO.

DATE: XX/XX GVWR: XXXX KG (XXXX LB)  
 FRONT GAWR: REAR GAWR:  
 XXXX KG (XXXX LB) WITH XXXX KG (XXXX LB) WITH  
 XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX TIRES XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX TIRES  
 XXXXXXXX RIMS XXXXXXXX RIMS  
 AT XXXX kPa/ XXX PSI COLD AT XXXX kPa/ XXX PSI COLD

THIS VEHICLE CONFORMS TO ALL APPLICABLE FEDERAL MOTOR VEHICLE SAFETY AND THEFT PREVENTION STANDARDS IN EFFECT ON THE DATE OF MANUFACTURE SHOWN ABOVE.

VIN: XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX XXXXX  
 TYPE: XXXX XXXXX



EXT PNT: XX XXXXXX RC: XX DSO: XXXX  
 WB INT TR TP/PS R AXLE TR SPR XXXX  
 XXX XX XXX X XX X XXXX XXXX  
 XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX XXX XXXX-XXXXXXXX-XX

E167469

The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration Regulations require that a Safety Compliance Certification Label be affixed to a vehicle and prescribe where the Safety Compliance Certification Label may be located. The Safety Compliance Certification Label shall be affixed to either the door hinge pillar, the door latch post, or the edge of the door near the door latch, next to the driver's seating position.


## TRANSMISSION CODE DESIGNATION

MFD. BY FORD MOTOR CO.

DATE: XX/XX GVWR: XXXX KG (XXXX LB)  
 FRONT GAWR: REAR GAWR:  
 XXXX KG (XXXX LB) WITH XXXX KG (XXXX LB) WITH  
 XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX TIRES XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX TIRES  
 XXXXXXXX RIMS XXXXXXXX RIMS  
 AT XXXX kPa/ XXX PSI COLD AT XXXX kPa/ XXX PSI COLD

THIS VEHICLE CONFORMS TO ALL APPLICABLE FEDERAL MOTOR VEHICLE SAFETY AND THEFT PREVENTION STANDARDS IN EFFECT ON THE DATE OF MANUFACTURE SHOWN ABOVE.

VIN: XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX XXXXX  
 TYPE: XXXX XXXXX



EXT PNT: XX XXXXXX RC: XX DSO: XXXX  
 WB INT TR TP/PS R AXLE TR SPR XXXX  
 XXX XX XXX X XX X XXXX XXXX  
 XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX XX =XXXX-XXXXXXXX-XX

E167814

The transmission code is on the Safety Compliance Certification Label. The following table shows the transmission code along with the transmission description.

Description	Code
Six-speed automatic transmission 6F35	6

# Capacities and Specifications

## CAPACITIES AND SPECIFICATIONS - 1.6L ECOBOOST™

### Capacities

#### WARNING



The air conditioning refrigerant system contains refrigerant under high pressure. Only qualified personnel should service the air conditioning refrigerant system. Opening the air conditioning refrigerant system can cause personal injury.

Item	Capacity
Engine oil (with oil filter)	4.3 qt (4.1 L)
Engine coolant	11.1 qt (10.5 L)
Brake fluid	Between MIN/MAX on brake fluid reservoir
Rear differential fluid	2.4 pt (1.15 L)
Power Transfer Unit (PTU) fluid	17.9 fl oz (0.53 L)
Automatic transmission fluid	9.0 qt (8.5 L) *
Windshield washer fluid	Fill as required
Fuel tank	15.5 gal (58.7 L)
A/C refrigerant	24 oz (0.68 kg)
A/C refrigerant compressor oil	4.5 fl oz (133 ml)

\* Approximate dry fill capacity. Actual amount may vary during fluid changes.

### Specifications

#### Materials

Name	Specification
Recommended motor oil (U.S.): Motorcraft® SAE 5W-20 Premium Synthetic Blend Motor Oil XO-5W20-QSP	WSS-M2C945-A
Recommended motor oil (Canada): Motorcraft® SAE 5W-20 Super Premium Blend Motor Oil CXO-5W20-LSP12	WSS-M2C945-A
Recommended motor oil (Mexico):	WSS-M2C945-A

## Capacities and Specifications

Name	Specification
Motorcraft® SAE 5W-20 Synthetic Motor Oil MXO-5W20-QSP	
Optional motor oil (U.S. and Mexico): Motorcraft® SAE 5W-20 Full Synthetic Motor Oil XO-5W20-QFS	WSS-M2C945-A
Optional motor oil (Canada): Motorcraft® SAE 5W-20 Synthetic Motor Oil CXO-5W20-LFS12	WSS-M2C945-A
Engine coolant (U.S.): Motorcraft® Orange Antifreeze/Coolant Prediluted VC-3DIL-B	WSS-M97B44-D2
Engine coolant (Canada): Motorcraft® Orange Antifreeze/Coolant Prediluted CVC-3DIL-B	WSS-M97B44-D2
Engine coolant (Mexico): Motorcraft® Antifreeze/Coolant Prediluted VC-3DIL-B	WSS-M97B44-D2
Brake fluid: Motorcraft® DOT 4 Low Viscosity (LV) High Performance Motor Vehicle Brake Fluid PM-20	WSS-M6C65-A2
Rear differential fluid (U.S.): Motorcraft® SAE 80W-90 Premium Rear Axle Lubricant XY-80W90-QL	WSP-M2C197-A
Rear differential fluid (Canada): Motorcraft® SAE 80W-90 Premium Rear Axle Lubricant CXY-80W90-1L	WSP-M2C197-A
Rear differential fluid (Mexico): Motorcraft® SAE 80W-90 Premium Rear Axle Lubricant MXY-80W90-QL	WSP-M2C197-A
Power Transfer Unit (PTU) fluid (U.S. and Mexico): Motorcraft® SAE 75W-140 Synthetic Rear Axle Lubricant XY-75W140-QL	WSL-M2C192-A
Power Transfer Unit (PTU) fluid (Canada): Motorcraft® SAE 75W-140 Synthetic Rear Axle Lubricant CXY-75W140-1L	WSL-M2C192-A
Automatic transmission fluid (U.S. and Mexico):	WSS-M2C938-A

## Capacities and Specifications

Name	Specification
Motorcraft® MERCON LV Automatic Transmission Fluid XT-10-QLVC	MERCON LV
Automatic transmission fluid (Canada): Motorcraft® MERCON LV Automatic Transmission Fluid CXT-10-LV12	WSS-M2C938-A MERCON LV
Windshield washer fluid (U.S. and Mexico): Motorcraft® Premium Windshield Wash Concentrate with Bitterant ZC-32-B2	WSS-M14P19-A
Windshield washer fluid (Canada): Motorcraft® Premium Quality Windshield Washer Fluid CXC-37-(A, B, D, F)	WSS-M14P19-A
A/C refrigerant (U.S.): Motorcraft® R-134a Refrigerant YN-19	WSH-M17B19-A
A/C refrigerant (Canada): Motorcraft® R-134a Refrigerant CYN-16-R	WSH-M17B19-A
A/C refrigerant (Mexico): Motorcraft® R-134a Refrigerant MYN-19	WSH-M17B19-A
A/C refrigerant compressor oil: Motorcraft® PAG Refrigerant Compressor Oil YN-12-D	WSH-M1C231-B
Multi-purpose grease: Motorcraft® Multi-Purpose Grease Spray XL-5	ESB-MIC93-B
Lock cylinders (U.S.): Penetrating and Lock Lubricant XL-1	--
Lock cylinders (Canada): Penetrating Fluid CXC-51-A	--
Lock cylinders (Mexico): Penetrating and Lock Lubricant MXL-1	--



## Capacities and Specifications

If you use oil and fluids that do not meet the defined specification and viscosity grade, this may lead to:

- Component damage which is not covered by the vehicle warranty.
- Longer engine cranking periods.
- Increased emission levels.
- Reduced engine performance.
- Reduced fuel economy.
- Degraded brake performance.

We recommend Motorcraft® motor oil for your vehicle. If Motorcraft® oil is not available, use motor oils of the recommended viscosity grade that meet API SN requirements and display the API Certification Mark for gasoline engines. Do not use oil labeled with API SN service category unless the label also displays the API certification mark.



E142732

## CAPACITIES AND SPECIFICATIONS - 2.0L ECOBOOST™

### Capacities

#### WARNING



The air conditioning refrigerant system contains refrigerant under high pressure. Only qualified personnel should service the air conditioning refrigerant system. Opening the air conditioning refrigerant system can cause personal injury.

An oil that displays this symbol conforms to current engine, emission system and fuel economy performance standards of the International Lubricants Specification Advisory Committee (ILSAC).

Do not use supplemental engine oil additives because they are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that may not be covered by your vehicle warranty.

**Note:** *Ford recommends using DOT 4 Low Viscosity (LV) High Performance Brake Fluid or equivalent meeting WSS-M6C65-A2. Use of any fluid other than the recommended fluid may cause degraded brake performance and not meet the Ford performance standards. Keep brake fluid clean and dry. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials may result in brake system damage and possible failure.*

**Note:** *Automatic transmissions that require MERCON LV transmission fluid should only use MERCON LV transmission fluid. The use of any other fluid may cause transmission damage.*

# Capacities and Specifications

Item	Capacity
Engine oil (with oil filter)	5.7 qt (5.4 L)
Engine coolant	9.7 qt (9.2 L)
Brake fluid	Between MIN/MAX on brake fluid reservoir
Rear differential fluid	2.4 pt (1.15 L)
Power Transfer Unit (PTU) fluid	17.9 fl oz (0.53 L)
Automatic transmission fluid	9.0 qt (8.5 L) *
Windshield washer fluid	Fill as required
Fuel tank	15.5 gal (58.7 L)
A/C refrigerant	27 oz (0.76 kg)
A/C refrigerant compressor oil	4.5 fl oz (133 ml)

\* Approximate dry fill capacity. Actual amount may vary during fluid changes.

## Specifications

### Materials

Name	Specification
Recommended motor oil (U.S.): Motorcraft® SAE 5W-30 Premium Synthetic Blend Motor Oil XO-5W30-QSP	WSS-M2C946-A
Recommended motor oil (Canada): Motorcraft® SAE 5W-30 Super Premium Motor Oil CXO-5W30-LSP12	WSS-M2C946-A
Recommended motor oil (Mexico): Motorcraft® SAE 5W-30 Synthetic Motor Oil MXO-5W30-QSP	WSS-M2C946-A
Optional motor oil (U.S. and Mexico): Motorcraft® SAE 5W-30 Full Synthetic Motor Oil XO-5W30-QFS	WSS-M2C946-A
Optional motor oil (Canada): Motorcraft® SAE 5W-30 Synthetic Motor Oil CXO-5W30-LFS12	WSS-M2C946-A

## Capacities and Specifications

Name	Specification
Engine coolant (U.S.): Motorcraft® Orange Antifreeze/Coolant Prediluted VC-3DIL-B	WSS-M97B44-D2
Engine coolant (Canada): Motorcraft® Orange Antifreeze/Coolant Prediluted CVC-3DIL-B	WSS-M97B44-D2
Engine coolant (Mexico): Motorcraft® Antifreeze/Coolant Prediluted VC-3DIL-B	WSS-M97B44-D2
Brake fluid: Motorcraft® DOT 4 Low Viscosity (LV) High Performance Motor Vehicle Brake Fluid PM-20	WSS-M6C65-A2
Rear differential fluid (U.S.): Motorcraft® SAE 80W-90 Premium Rear Axle Lubricant XY-80W90-QL	WSP-M2C197-A
Rear differential fluid (Canada): Motorcraft® SAE 80W-90 Premium Rear Axle Lubricant CXY-80W90-1L	WSP-M2C197-A
Rear differential fluid (Mexico): Motorcraft® SAE 80W-90 Premium Rear Axle Lubricant MXY-80W90-QL	WSP-M2C197-A
Power Transfer Unit (PTU) fluid (U.S. and Mexico): Motorcraft® SAE 75W-140 Synthetic Rear Axle Lubricant XY-75W140-QL	WSL-M2C192-A
Power Transfer Unit (PTU) fluid (Canada): Motorcraft® SAE 75W-140 Synthetic Rear Axle Lubricant CXY-75W140-1L	WSL-M2C192-A
Automatic transmission fluid (U.S. and Mexico): Motorcraft® MERCON LV Automatic Transmission Fluid XT-10-QLVC	WSS-M2C938-A MERCON LV
Automatic transmission fluid (Canada): Motorcraft® MERCON LV Automatic Transmission Fluid CXT-10-LV12	WSS-M2C938-A MERCON LV
Windshield washer fluid (U.S. and Mexico): Motorcraft® Premium Windshield Wash Concentrate with Bitterant ZC-32-B2	WSS-M14P19-A

## Capacities and Specifications

Name	Specification
Windshield washer fluid (Canada): Motorcraft® Premium Quality Windshield Washer Fluid CXC-37-(A, B, D, F)	WSS-M14P19-A
A/C refrigerant (U.S.): Motorcraft® R-134a Refrigerant YN-19	WSH-M17B19-A
A/C refrigerant (Canada): Motorcraft® R-134a Refrigerant CYN-16-R	WSH-M17B19-A
A/C refrigerant (Mexico): Motorcraft® R-134a Refrigerant MYN-19	WSH-M17B19-A
A/C refrigerant compressor oil: Motorcraft® PAG Refrigerant Compressor Oil YN-12-D	WSH-M1C231-B
Multi-purpose grease: Motorcraft® Multi-Purpose Grease Spray XL-5	ESB-M1C93-B
Lock cylinders (U.S.): Penetrating and Lock Lubricant XL-1	--
Lock cylinders (Canada): Penetrating Fluid CXC-51-A	--
Lock cylinders (Mexico): Penetrating and Lock Lubricant MXL-1	--

If you use oil and fluids that do not meet the defined specification and viscosity grade, this may lead to:

- Component damage which is not covered by the vehicle warranty.
- Longer engine cranking periods.
- Increased emission levels.
- Reduced engine performance.
- Reduced fuel economy.
- Degraded brake performance.

We recommend Motorcraft® motor oil for your vehicle. If Motorcraft® oil is not available, use motor oils of the recommended viscosity grade that meet API SN requirements and display the API Certification Mark for gasoline engines. Do not use oil labeled with API SN service category unless the label also displays the API certification mark.

# Capacities and Specifications



E142732

An oil that displays this symbol conforms to current engine, emission system and fuel economy performance standards of the International Lubricants Specification Advisory Committee (ILSAC).

Do not use supplemental engine oil additives because they are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that may not be covered by your vehicle warranty.

**Note:** Ford recommends using DOT 4 Low Viscosity (LV) High Performance Brake Fluid or equivalent meeting WSS-M6C65-A2. Use of any fluid other than the recommended fluid may cause degraded brake performance and not meet the Ford performance standards. Keep brake fluid clean and dry. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials may result in brake system damage and possible failure.

**Note:** Automatic transmissions that require MERCON LV transmission fluid should only use MERCON LV transmission fluid. The use of any other fluid may cause transmission damage.

## CAPACITIES AND SPECIFICATIONS - 2.5L

### Capacities

#### WARNING



The air conditioning refrigerant system contains refrigerant under high pressure. Only qualified personnel should service the air conditioning refrigerant system. Opening the air conditioning refrigerant system can cause personal injury.

Item	Capacity
Engine oil (with oil filter)	5.7 qt (5.4 L)
Engine coolant	9.2 qt (8.7 L)
Brake fluid	Between MIN/MAX on brake fluid reservoir
Automatic transmission fluid	9.0 qt (8.5 L) *
Windshield washer fluid	Fill as required
Fuel tank	15.5 gal (58.7 L)

# Capacities and Specifications

Item	Capacity
A/C refrigerant	24 oz (0.68 kg)
A/C refrigerant compressor oil	4.5 fl oz (133 ml)

\* Approximate dry fill capacity. Actual amount may vary during fluid changes.

## Specifications

### Materials

Name	Specification
Recommended motor oil (U.S.): Motorcraft® SAE 5W-20 Premium Synthetic Blend Motor Oil XO-5W20-QSP	WSS-M2C945-A
Recommended motor oil (Canada): Motorcraft® SAE 5W-20 Super Premium Blend Motor Oil CXO-5W20-LSP12	WSS-M2C945-A
Recommended motor oil (Mexico): Motorcraft® SAE 5W-20 Synthetic Motor Oil MXO-5W20-QSP	WSS-M2C945-A
Optional motor oil (U.S. and Mexico): Motorcraft® SAE 5W-20 Full Synthetic Motor Oil XO-5W20-QFS	WSS-M2C945-A
Optional motor oil (Canada): Motorcraft® SAE 5W-20 Synthetic Motor Oil CXO-5W20-LFS12	WSS-M2C945-A
Engine coolant (U.S. and Mexico): Motorcraft® Orange Antifreeze/Coolant Prediluted VC-3DIL-B	WSS-M97B44-D2
Engine coolant (Canada): Motorcraft® Orange Antifreeze/Coolant Prediluted CVC-3DIL-B	WSS-M97B44-D2
Brake fluid: Motorcraft® DOT 4 Low Viscosity (LV) High Performance Motor Vehicle Brake Fluid PM-20	WSS-M6C65-A2
Automatic transmission fluid (U.S. and Mexico):	WSS-M2C938-A

## Capacities and Specifications

Name	Specification
Motorcraft® MERCON LV Automatic Transmission Fluid XT-10-QLVC	MERCON LV
Automatic transmission fluid (Canada): Motorcraft® MERCON LV Automatic Transmission Fluid CXT-10-LV12	WSS-M2C938-A MERCON LV
Windshield washer fluid (U.S. and Mexico): Motorcraft® Premium Windshield Wash Concentrate with Bitterant ZC-32-B2	WSS-M14P19-A
Windshield washer fluid (Canada): Motorcraft® Premium Quality Windshield Washer Fluid CXC-37-(A, B, D, F)	WSS-M14P19-A
A/C refrigerant (U.S.): Motorcraft® R-134a Refrigerant YN-19	WSH-M17B19-A
A/C refrigerant (Canada): Motorcraft® R-134a Refrigerant CYN-16-R	WSH-M17B19-A
A/C refrigerant (Mexico): Motorcraft® R-134a Refrigerant MYN-19	WSH-M17B19-A
A/C refrigerant compressor oil: Motorcraft® PAG Refrigerant Compressor Oil YN-12-D	WSH-M1C231-B
Multi-purpose grease: Motorcraft® Multi-Purpose Grease Spray XL-5	ESB-M1C93-B
Lock cylinders (U.S.): Penetrating and Lock Lubricant XL-1	--
Lock cylinders (Canada): Penetrating Fluid CXC-51-A	--
Lock cylinders (Mexico): Penetrating and Lock Lubricant MXL-1	--

## Capacities and Specifications

---

If you use oil and fluids that do not meet the defined specification and viscosity grade, this may lead to:

- Component damage which is not covered by the vehicle warranty.
- Longer engine cranking periods.
- Increased emission levels.
- Reduced engine performance.
- Reduced fuel economy.
- Degraded brake performance.

We recommend Motorcraft® motor oil for your vehicle. If Motorcraft® oil is not available, use motor oils of the recommended viscosity grade that meet API SN requirements and display the API Certification Mark for gasoline engines. Do not use oil labeled with API SN service category unless the label also displays the API certification mark.



E142732

An oil that displays this symbol conforms to current engine, emission system and fuel economy performance standards of the International Lubricants Specification Advisory Committee (ILSAC).

Do not use supplemental engine oil additives because they are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that may not be covered by your vehicle warranty.

**Note:** Ford recommends using DOT 4 Low Viscosity (LV) High Performance Brake Fluid or equivalent meeting WSS-M6C65-A2. Use of any fluid other than the recommended fluid may cause degraded brake performance and not meet the Ford performance standards. Keep brake fluid clean and dry. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials may result in brake system damage and possible failure.

**Note:** Automatic transmissions that require MERCON LV transmission fluid should only use MERCON LV transmission fluid. The use of any other fluid may cause transmission damage.



# Audio System

## GENERAL INFORMATION

### Radio Frequencies and Reception Factors

AM and FM frequencies are established by the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) and the Canadian Radio and Telecommunications Commission (CRTC). Those frequencies are:

- AM: 530, 540-1700, 1710 kHz
- FM: 87.9-107.7, 107.9 MHz

Radio Reception Factors	
<b>Distance and strength</b>	The further you travel from an AM or FM station, the weaker the signal and the weaker the reception.
<b>Terrain</b>	Hills, mountains, tall buildings, bridges, tunnels, freeway overpasses, parking garages, dense tree foliage and thunderstorms can interfere with the reception.
<b>Station overload</b>	When you pass a ground-based broadcast repeating tower, a stronger signal may overtake a weaker one and result in the audio system muting.

### CD and CD Player Information

**Note:** *CD units play commercially pressed 4.75-inch (12 centimeter) audio compact discs only. Due to technical incompatibility, certain recordable and re-recordable compact discs may not function correctly when used in Ford CD players.*

**Note:** *Do not insert CDs with homemade paper (adhesive) labels into the CD player as the label may peel and cause the CD to become jammed. You should use a permanent felt tip marker rather than adhesive labels on your homemade CDs. Ballpoint pens may damage CDs. Please contact an authorized dealer for further information.*

**Note:** *Do not use any irregularly shaped discs or discs with a scratch protection film attached.*

Always handle discs by their edges only. Clean the disc with an approved CD cleaner only. Wipe it from the center of the disc toward the edge. Do not clean in a circular motion.

Do not expose discs to direct sunlight or heat sources for extended periods.

### MP3 and WMA Track and Folder Structure

Audio systems capable of recognizing and playing MP3 and WMA individual tracks and folder structures work as follows:

- There are two different modes for MP3 and WMA disc playback: MP3 and WMA track mode (system default) and MP3 and WMA folder mode.
- MP3 and WMA track mode ignores any folder structure on the MP3 and WMA disc. The player numbers each MP3 and WMA track on the disc (noted by the MP3 or WMA file extension) from T001 to a maximum of T255. The maximum number of playable MP3 and WMA files may be less depending on the structure of the CD and exact model of radio present.

# Audio System

---

- MP3 and WMA folder mode represents a folder structure consisting of one level of folders. The CD player numbers all MP3 and WMA tracks on the disc (noted by the MP3 or WMA file extension) and all folders containing MP3 and WMA files, from F001 (folder) T001 (track) to F253 T255.
- Creating discs with only one level of folders helps with navigation through the disc files.

If you are burning your own MP3 and WMA discs, it is important to understand how the system reads the structures you create. While various files may be present (files with extensions other than MP3 and WMA), only files with the MP3 and WMA extension are played; other files are ignored by the system. This enables you to use the same MP3 and WMA disc for a variety of tasks on your work computer, home computer and your in-vehicle system.

In track mode, the system displays and plays the structure as if it were only one level deep (all MP3 and WMA files play, regardless of being in a specific folder). In folder mode, the system only plays the MP3 and WMA files in the current folder.

## **AUDIO UNIT - VEHICLES WITH: AM/FM/CD**

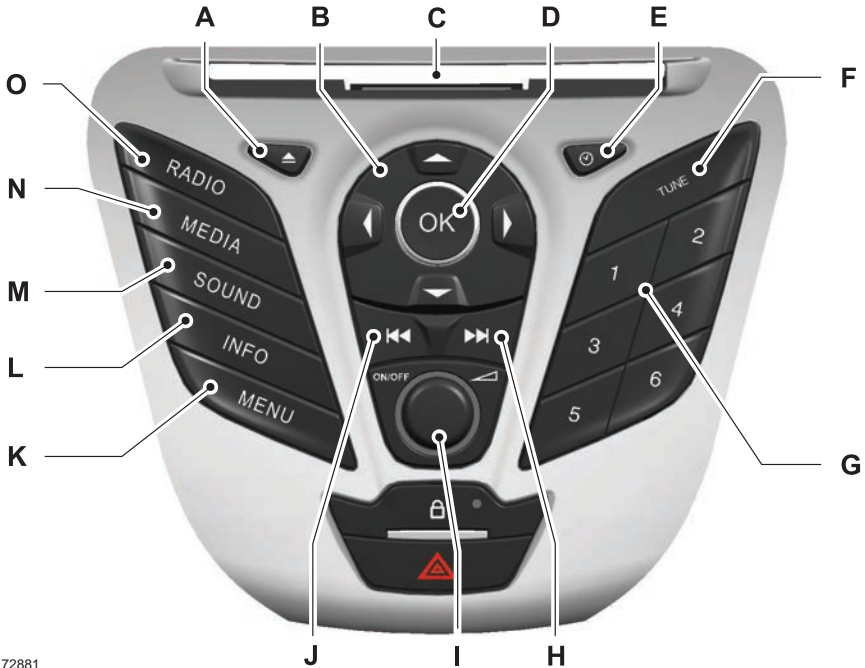
### **WARNING**



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

---

# Audio System



E172881

- A **Eject:** Press to eject a CD.
- B **Cursor arrows:** Press to scroll through on-screen audio system choices, menus or other on-screen functions.
- C **CD slot:** Insert a CD.
- D **OK:** Press to confirm menu selections.
- E **Clock:** Press to set the time. Use the cursor arrows to set the hours and minutes. Press **OK** to confirm the time. You can also set the clock by pressing **MENU** and scrolling to Clock Settings.
- F **TUNE:** Press to manually search the frequency band. Use the cursor arrows to change the frequency.
- G **Number block:** In radio mode, store your favorite radio stations. To store a radio station, tune to the station, then press and hold a preset button until sound returns. In CD mode, press one of these buttons to select a track.

# Audio System

---

- H **Seek forward:** Press and release the right side of the control to go to the next preset radio station or disc track. Press and hold this side of the control to fast forward to the next strong radio station, memory preset or through the current disc track.
- I **ON/OFF:** Press to switch the system on and off. Turn to adjust the volume.
- J **Seek reverse:** Press and release the left side of the control to go to the previous preset radio station or disc track. Press and hold this side of the control to reverse to the previous strong radio station, memory preset or disc track.
- K **MENU:** Press to access different audio system features. See **Menu Structure** later in this section.
- L **INFO** Press to access any available radio or media information.
- M **SOUND:** Press to access settings for Treble, Middle, Bass, Fade or Balance. Use the up and down arrow buttons to select the various settings. When you make your selection, press the left and right arrow buttons to change the settings. Press OK to set or press **MENU** to exit. Sound settings can be set for each audio source independently.
- N **MEDIA:** Press to access LINE IN (auxiliary input jack) mode or CD or switch between both media sources
- O **RADIO:** Press to listen to the radio or change radio frequencies.

## AUDIO UNIT - VEHICLES WITH: AM/FM/CD/SYNC

### WARNING

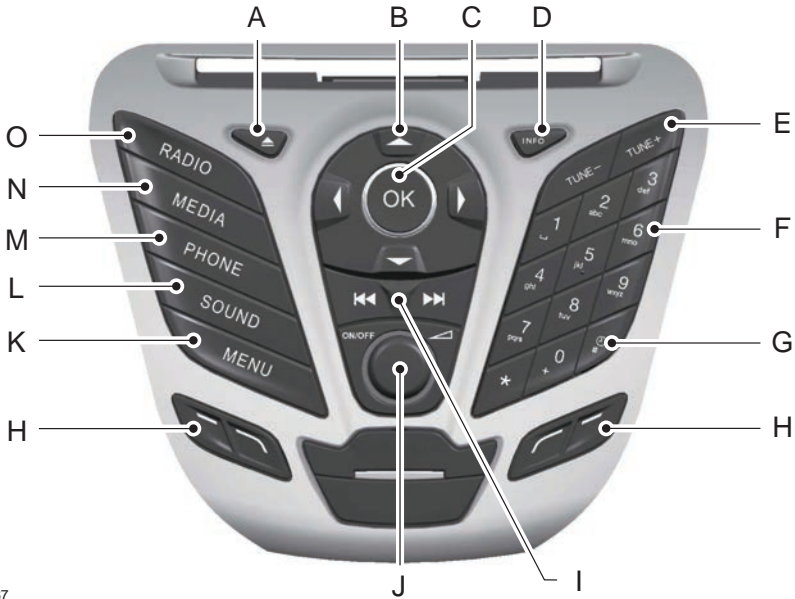


Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

---

**Note:** You can operate your audio system for up to one hour after you switch off the ignition. Press the **ON/OFF** control to operate the system with the ignition turned off. The system automatically turns off after one hour.

# Audio System



E162867

- A **Eject:** Press to eject a CD.
- B **Cursor arrows:** Press to scroll through the menu choices.
- C **OK:** Press to confirm menu selections.
- D **INFO:** Press to access more information depending upon the source selected.
- E **TUNE:** In radio mode, press to manually search through the radio frequency band.
- F **Number block:** In radio mode, store and recall your favorite radio stations. To store a radio station, tune to the station, then press and hold a preset button until sound returns. In CD mode, select a track. In phone mode, enter a phone number.
- G **CLOCK:** If not in phone mode, press to display the clock.
- H **Function buttons:** Select different functions of the audio system depending on which mode you are in (for example Radio mode or CD mode).

# Audio System

---

- I **Seek, Fast Forward and Reverse:** In radio mode, select a frequency band and press this button. The system stops at the first station it finds in that direction. In CD mode, press to select the previous or next track. Press and hold to move quickly forward through the current track.
- J **VOL and Power:** Press to switch the system on and off. Turn to adjust the volume.
- K **MENU:** Press to access different audio system features. See **Menu Structure** later in this chapter.
- L **SOUND:** Press to access settings for Treble, Midrange, Bass, Fade or Balance. Use the up and down arrow buttons to select the various settings. When you make your selection, press the left and right arrow buttons to change the settings. Press **OK** to set or press **MENU** to exit. Sound settings can be set for each audio source independently.
- M **PHONE:** Press to access the phone features of the SYNC system. See your SYNC information.
- N **MEDIA:** Press to open the media source menu. You can press this multiple times to change to CD or to a SYNC-Media device or scroll through the media sources using the arrow buttons. Press OK to select a source.
- O **RADIO:** Press this multiple times to select a radio band. Press and hold to select the autostore function. Press to return to the main screen of the active radio band.

## AUDIO UNIT - VEHICLES WITH: AM/FM/CD/SYNC/SATELLITE RADIO

### WARNING



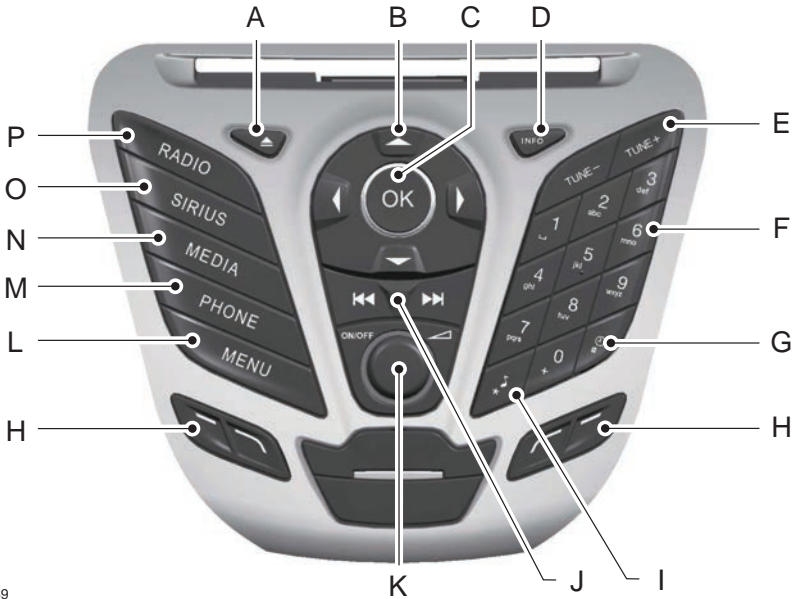
Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

---

**Note:** *You can operate your audio system for up to one hour after you switch off the ignition. Press the power control to operate the system with the ignition turned off. The system automatically turns off after one hour.*

**Note:** *Some features, such as SIRIUS satellite radio, may not be available in your location. Check with an authorized dealer.*

# Audio System



E162869

- A **Eject:** Press to eject a CD.
- B **Cursor arrows:** Press to scroll through the menu choices.
- C **OK:** Press to confirm menu selections.
- D **INFO:** Press to access more information depending upon the source selected.
- E **TUNE:** In radio mode, press to manually search through the radio frequency band.
- F **Number block:** In radio mode, store and recall your favorite radio stations. To store a radio station, tune to the station, then press and hold a preset button until sound returns. In CD mode, select a track. In phone mode, enter a phone number.
- G **Clock:** If not in phone mode, press to display the clock.
- H **Function buttons:** Select different functions of the audio system depending on which mode you are in (for example Radio mode or CD mode).

# Audio System

---

- I **Sound:** Press to access settings for Treble, Midrange, Bass, Fade or Balance. Use the up and down arrow buttons to select the various settings. When you make your selection, press the left and right arrow buttons to change the settings. Press OK to set or press MENU to exit. Sound settings can be set for each audio source independently.
- J **Seek, Fast Forward and Reverse:** In radio mode, select a frequency band and press either button. The system stops at the first station it finds in that direction. In CD mode, press to select the previous or next track. Press and hold to move quickly forward or backward through the current track.
- K **VOL and Power:** Press to switch the system on and off. Turn to adjust the volume.
- L **MENU:** Press to access different audio system features. See **Menu Structure** later in this chapter.
- M **PHONE:** Press to access the phone features of the SYNC system. See your SYNC information.
- N **MEDIA:** Press to open the media source menu. You can press this multiple times to change to CD or to a SYNC-Media device or scroll through the media sources using the arrow buttons. Press OK to select a source.
- O **SIRIUS:** Press to listen to SIRIUS satellite radio.
- P **RADIO:** Press this multiple times to select a radio band. Press and hold to select the autostore function. Press to return to the main screen of the active radio band.

## AUDIO UNIT - VEHICLES WITH: PREMIUM AM/FM/CD

### WARNING



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

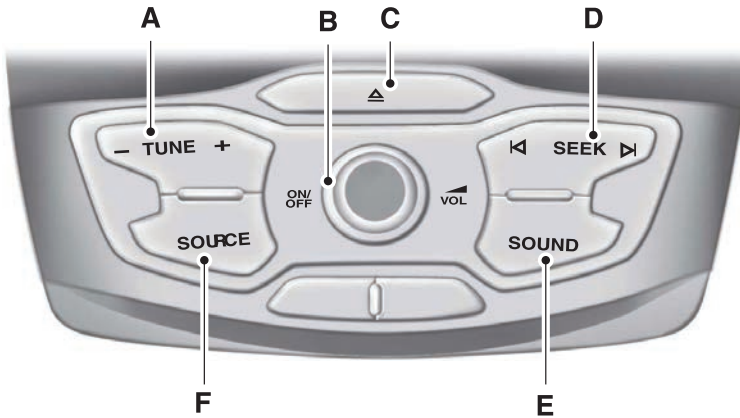
---

**Note:** *The CD slot is directly above the touchscreen.*

**Note:** *The touchscreen system controls most of the audio features. See your SYNC information.*



# Audio System



E143843

- A **TUNE:** In radio mode, press to manually search through the radio frequency band.
- B **VOL and Power:** Press to switch the system on and off. Turn to adjust the volume.
- C **Eject:** Press to eject a CD.
- D **Seek, Fast Forward and Reverse:** In radio mode, select a frequency band and press this button. The system stops at the first station it finds in that direction. In CD mode, press to select the next track. Press and hold to move quickly forward through the current track.
- E **SOUND:** Press to access settings for Treble, Midrange, Bass, Fade or Balance.
- F **SOURCE:** Press to access different audio modes, for example AM, FM and CD.

# Audio System

## AUDIO UNIT - VEHICLES WITH: SONY AM/FM/CD

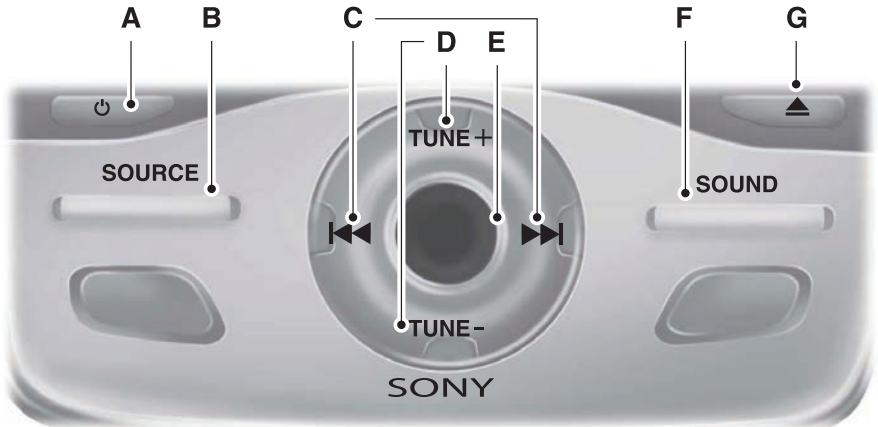
### WARNING



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

**Note:** The CD slot is directly above the touchscreen.

**Note:** The touchscreen system controls most of the audio features. See your SYNC information.



E143844

- A **Power:** Press to switch the system on and off.
- B **SOURCE:** Press to access different audio modes, for example AM, FM and CD.

# Audio System

---

- C **Seek, Fast Forward and Reverse:** In radio mode, select a frequency band and press this button. The system stops at the first station it finds in that direction. In SIRIUS mode, press to select the next or previous satellite radio station. If a specific category is selected (such as jazz, rock or news), press to find the next or previous in the selected category. In CD mode, press to select the previous or next track. Press and hold to move quickly forward through the current track.
- D **TUNE:** In radio mode, press to manually search through the radio frequency band. In SIRIUS mode, press to find the previous or next available satellite radio station.
- E **Volume:** Turn to adjust the volume.
- F **SOUND:** Press to access settings for Treble, Midrange, Bass, Fade or Balance.
- G **Eject:** Press to eject a CD.

## DIGITAL RADIO

**Note:** *HD Radio broadcasts are not available in all markets.*

HD Radio technology is the digital evolution of analog AM/FM radio. Your system has a special receiver that allows it to receive digital broadcasts (where available) in addition to the analog broadcasts, it already receives. Digital broadcasts provide a better sound quality than analog broadcasts with free, crystal-clear audio and no static or distortion. For more information, and a guide to available stations and programming, please visit [www.hdradio.com](http://www.hdradio.com).

When HD Radio is on and you tune to a station broadcasting HD Radio technology, you may notice the HD Radio logo on your screen. When this logo is available, you may also see Title and Artist fields on-screen.

The multicast indicator appears in FM mode (only) if the current station is broadcasting multiple digital broadcasts. The highlighted numbers signify available digital channels where new or different content is available. HD1 signifies the main programming status and is available in analog and digital broadcasts. Other multicast stations (HD2 through HD7) are only available digitally.

When HD Radio broadcasts are active, you can access the following functions:

- **Scan** allows you to hear a brief sampling of all available stations. This feature still works when HD Radio reception is on, although it does not scan for HD2-HD7 channels. You may see the HD logo appear if the station has a digital broadcast.
- **Memory presets** allow you to save an active channel as a memory preset. Touch and hold a memory preset slot until the sound returns. There is a brief mute while the radio saves the station. Sound returns when finished. When switching to an HD2 or HD3 memory preset, the sound mutes before the digital audio plays, because the system has to reacquire the digital signal.

# Audio System

**Note:** *As with any saved radio station, you cannot access the saved station if your vehicle is outside the station's reception area.*

## HD Radio Reception and Station Troubleshooting

Potential reception issues	
Reception area	If you are listening to a multicast station and you are on the fringe of the reception area, the station may mute due to weak signal strength.
	If you are listening to HD1, the system switches back to the analog broadcast until the digital broadcast is available again. However, if you are listening to any of the possible HD2-HD7 multicast channels, the station mutes and stays muted unless it is able to connect to the digital signal again.
Station blending	When the system first receives a station (aside from HD2-HD7 multicast stations), it first plays the station in the analog version. Once the receiver verifies the station is an HD Radio station, it shifts to the digital version. Depending on the station quality, you may hear a slight sound change when the station changes from analog to digital. Blending is the shift from analog to digital sound or digital back to analog sound.

In order to provide the best possible experience, use the contact form to report any station issues found while listening to a station broadcasting with HD Radio technology. Independent entities own and operate each station. These stations are responsible for ensuring all audio streams and data fields are accurate.

# Audio System

Potential station issues		
Issues	Cause	Action
Echo, stutter, skip or repeat in audio. Increase or decrease in audio volume.	This is poor time alignment by the radio broadcaster.	No action required. This is a broadcast issue.
Sound fading or blending in and out.	The radio is shifting between analog and digital audio.	No action required. The reception issue may clear up as you continue to drive.
There is an audio mute delay when selecting HD2 or HD3, multicast preset or <b>Direct Tune</b> .	The digital multicast is not available until the HD Radio broadcast is decoded. Once decoded, the audio is available.	No action required. This is normal behavior. Wait until the audio is available.
Cannot access HD2 or HD3 multicast channel when recalling a preset or from a direct tune.	The previously stored multicast preset or direct tune is not available in your current reception area.	No action required. The station is not available in your current location.
Text information does not match currently playing audio.	Data service issue by the radio broadcaster.	Fill out the station issue form at website listed below.*
There is no text information shown for currently selected frequency.	Data service issue by the radio broadcaster.	Fill out the station issue form at website listed below.*
HD2-HD7 stations not found when <b>Scan</b> is pressed.	Pressing <b>Scan</b> disables HD2-HD7 channel search.	No action required. This is normal behavior.

\* [http://www.ibiquity.com/automotive/report\\_radio\\_station\\_experiences](http://www.ibiquity.com/automotive/report_radio_station_experiences)

HD Radio Technology manufactured under license from iBiquity Digital Corp. U.S. and foreign patents. HD Radio and the HD and HD Radio logos are proprietary trademarks of iBiquity Digital Corp. Ford Motor Company and iBiquity Digital Corp. are not responsible for the content sent using HD Radio technology. Content may be changed, added or deleted at any time at the station owner's discretion.

## SATELLITE RADIO (If Equipped)

SIRIUS® broadcasts a variety of music, news, sports, weather, traffic and entertainment satellite radio channels. For more information and a complete list of SIRIUS satellite radio channels, visit [www.siriusxm.com](http://www.siriusxm.com) in the United States, [www.siriusxm.ca](http://www.siriusxm.ca) in Canada, or call SIRIUS at 1-888-539-7474.

# Audio System

**Note:** This receiver includes the eCos real-time operating system. eCos is published under the eCos License.

## Satellite Radio Reception Factors

Potential satellite radio reception issues	
Antenna obstructions	For optimal reception performance, keep the antenna clear of snow and ice build-up and keep luggage and other material as far away from the antenna as possible.
Terrain	Hills, mountains, tall buildings, bridges, tunnels, freeway overpasses, parking garages, dense tree foliage and thunderstorms can interfere with your reception.
Station overload	When you pass a ground-based broadcast-repeating tower, a stronger signal may overtake a weaker one and the audio system may mute.
Satellite radio signal interference	Your display may show ACQUIRING . . . to indicate the interference and the audio system may mute.

## SIRIUS® Satellite Radio Service

**Note:** SIRIUS reserves the unrestricted right to change, rearrange, add or delete programming including canceling, moving or adding particular channels, and its prices, at any time, with or without notice to you. Ford Motor Company shall not be responsible for any such programming changes.



E142593

SIRIUS satellite radio is a subscription-based satellite radio service that broadcasts a variety of music, sports, news, weather, traffic and entertainment programming. Your factory-installed SIRIUS satellite radio system includes hardware and a limited subscription term, which begins on the date of sale or lease of your vehicle. See an authorized dealer for availability.

For more information on extended subscription terms (a service fee is required), the online media player and a complete list of SIRIUS satellite radio channels, and other features, please visit [www.siriusxm.com](http://www.siriusxm.com) in the United States, [www.siriusxm.ca](http://www.siriusxm.ca) in Canada, or call SIRIUS at 1-888-539-7474.

## Satellite Radio Electronic Serial Number (ESN)

You need your ESN to activate, modify or track your satellite radio account. When in satellite radio mode, tune to channel 0.

# Audio System

## Troubleshooting

Message	Condition	Action
Acquiring...	Radio requires more than two seconds to produce audio for the selected channel.	No action required. This message should disappear shortly.
Satellite antenna fault SIRIUS system failure	There is an internal module or system failure present.	If this message does not clear shortly, or with an ignition key cycle, your receiver may have a fault. See an authorized dealer for service.
Invalid Channel	The channel is no longer available.	Tune to another channel or choose another preset.
Unsubscribed Channel	Your subscription does not include this channel.	Contact SIRIUS at 1-888-539-7474 to subscribe to the channel, or tune to another channel.
No Signal	The signal is lost from the SIRIUS satellite or SIRIUS tower to your vehicle antenna.	The signal is blocked. When you move into an open area, the signal should return.
Updating...	Update of channel programming in progress.	No action required. The process may take up to three minutes.
Questions? Call 1-888-539-7474	Your satellite service is no longer available.	Contact SIRIUS at 1-888-539-7474 to resolve subscription issues.
None found Check Channel Guide	All the channels in the selected category are either skipped or locked.	Use the channel guide to turn off the Lock or Skip function on that station.
Subscription Updated	SIRIUS has updated the channels available for your vehicle.	No action required.

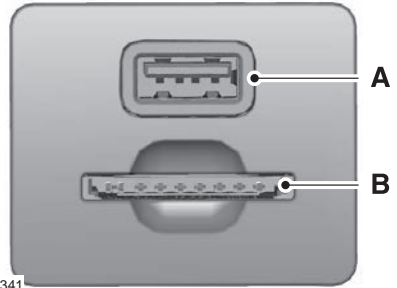
# Audio System

## USB PORT (If Equipped)

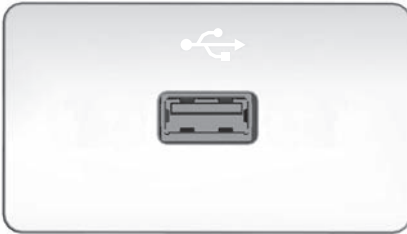
### WARNING



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.



- A USB Port
- B SD card slot



E201595

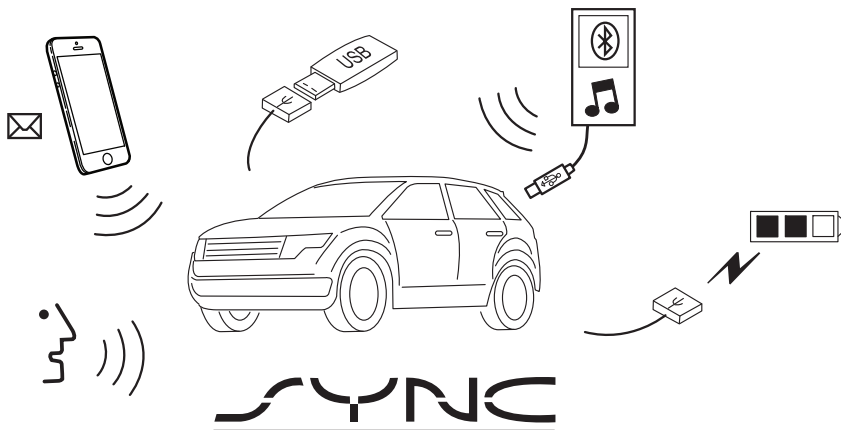
The USB port allows you to plug in media playing devices, memory sticks and charge devices (if supported). See **Using SYNC™ With Your Media Player** (page 323).

## MEDIA HUB (If Equipped)

The media hub is located in the center console or in front of the gear shift.



## GENERAL INFORMATION



E198355

SYNC is an in-vehicle communications system that works with your Bluetooth-enabled cellular phone and portable media player. This allows you to:

- Make and receive calls.
- Access and play music from your portable music player.
- Use 911 Assist and applications, such as Spotify and Glympse, via SYNC AppLink.\*
- Access phonebook contacts and music using voice commands.
- Stream music from your connected phone.
- Text message.

- Use the advanced voice recognition system.
- Charge your USB device (if your device supports this).

\*These features are not available in all markets and may require activation. Available AppLink enabled apps vary by market.

Make sure that you review your device's manual before using it with SYNC.

### Support

The SYNC support team is available to help you with any questions you cannot answer on your own.

Monday-Saturday, 8:30am-9:00pm EST.

Sunday, 10:30am-7:30pm EST.

In the United States, call 1-800-392-3673.

In Canada, call 1-800-565-3673.

Times are subject to change due to holidays.

## SYNC Owner Account

Why do I need a SYNC owner account?

- Essential for keeping up with the latest software downloads available for SYNC.
- Access to customer support for any questions you may have.

## Driving Restrictions

For your safety, certain features are speed-dependent and restricted when your vehicle is traveling over 3 mi (5 km).

## Safety Information

### WARNING



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

When using SYNC:

- Do not operate playing devices if the power cords or cables are broken, split or damaged. Place cords and cables out of the way, so they do not interfere with the operation of pedals, seats, compartments or safe driving abilities.
- Do not leave playing devices in your vehicle during extreme conditions as it could cause them damage. See your device's manual for further information.
- Do not attempt to service or repair the system. See an authorized dealer.

## Privacy Information

When a cellular phone is connected to SYNC, the system creates a profile within your vehicle that is linked to that cellular phone. This profile is created in order to offer you more cellular features and to operate more efficiently. Among other things, this profile may contain data about your cellular phone book, text messages (read and unread), and call history, including history of calls when your cellular phone was not connected to the system. In addition, if you connect a media device, the system creates and retains an index of supported media content. The system also records a short development log of approximately 10 minutes of all recent system activity. The log profile and other system data may be used to improve the system and help diagnose any problems that may occur.

The cellular profile, media device index, and development log will remain in the vehicle unless you delete them and are generally accessible only in the vehicle when the cellular phone or media player is connected. If you no longer plan to use the system or the vehicle, we recommend you perform a Master Reset to erase all stored information.

System data cannot be accessed without special equipment and access to the vehicle's SYNC module. Ford Motor Company and Ford of Canada will not access the system data for any purpose other than as described absent consent, a court order, or where required by law enforcement, other government authorities, or other third parties acting with lawful authority. Other parties may seek to access the information independently of Ford Motor Company and Ford of Canada. For further privacy information, see the section on 911 Assist. See **SYNC™ Applications and Services** (page 318).

## USING VOICE RECOGNITION

This system helps you control many features using voice commands. This allows you to keep your hands on the wheel and focus on what is around you.

### Initiating a Voice Session



Press the voice button. A list of available voice commands appears in the display.

### Global Voice Commands

These voice commands are always available. You can say them at any time.

Global voice commands	
(cancel   exit)	This command ends the voice session. You can also cancel a session by holding the voice button for two or more seconds.
help	This command provides you with hints, examples and instructions.
(main menu   start again)	This command restarts the voice session from the initial starting point.

You can say any of the voice commands that appear within open and close brackets that are separated by |. For example, where; (cancel | exit) appears you say; cancel or exit.

### Helpful Hints

- Make sure the interior of your vehicle is as quiet as possible. Wind noise from open windows and road vibrations may prevent the system from correctly recognizing spoken commands.
- Before giving a voice command, wait for the system announcement to finish, followed by a single tone. Any command spoken before this does not register with the system.
- Speak naturally, without long pauses between words.
- You can interrupt the system at any time while it is speaking by pressing the voice button. You can cancel a voice session by pressing and holding the voice button.

## System Interaction and Feedback

The system provides feedback through audible tones, prompts, questions and spoken confirmations depending on the situation and the chosen level of interaction. You can customize the voice recognition system to provide more or less instruction and feedback.

The default setting is to a higher level of interaction in order to help you learn to use the system. You can change these settings at any time.

### Adjusting the Interaction Level



Press the voice button. When prompted, say:

Voice Command	Action and Description
voice settings	
<b>Then either of the following:</b>	
interaction mode novice	Provides more detailed interaction and guidance. (Recommended for first time users.)
interaction mode advanced	Provides less audible interaction and guidance.

## Confirmation Prompts

Confirmation prompts are short questions the system asks when it is not sure of your request or when there is more than one possible response to your request.

**To adjust this setting press the voice button, when prompted say:**

Voice Command	Action and Description
voice settings	
<b>Then either of the following:</b>	
confirmation prompts off	Make a best guess from the command; you may still occasionally be asked to confirm settings.
confirmation prompts on	Clarify your voice command with a short question.

## Phone Confirmation

Using phone confirmations the system asks you to verify before placing any calls.

# SYNC™ (If Equipped)

To adjust this setting press the voice button, when prompted say:

Voice Command	Action and Description
voice settings	
<b>Then any of the following:</b>	
phone confirmation on	When enabled, this feature will prompt you to confirm any voice initiated call command prior to the call being placed.
phone confirmation off	The system will make a best guess; you may still occasionally be asked to confirm settings.

## Changing the Voice Settings

In addition to using voice commands to change the voice settings, you can also use the menu in the audio display.

To change the voice settings press the Menu button then select:

Menu Item
SYNC-Settings
Voice settings

## USING SYNC™ WITH YOUR PHONE

Hands-free calling is one of the main features of SYNC. While the system supports a variety of features, many are dependent on your cellular phone's functionality. At a minimum, most cellular phones with Bluetooth wireless technology support the following functions:

- Answering an incoming call.
- Ending a call.
- Using privacy mode.
- Dialing a number.
- Redialing.

- Call waiting notification.
- Caller ID.

Other features, such as text messaging using Bluetooth and automatic phonebook download, are phone-dependent features. To check your phone's compatibility, see your phone's manual and visit [www.SYNCMYride.com](http://www.SYNCMYride.com), [www.SYNCMYride.ca](http://www.SYNCMYride.ca) or [www.syncmaroute.ca](http://www.syncmaroute.ca).

## Pairing a Phone for the First Time

Wirelessly pairing your phone with SYNC allows you to make and receive hands-free calls.

**Note:** SYNC can support downloading up to approximately 4000 entries per Bluetooth-enabled cellular phone.

**Note:** Make sure to switch on the ignition and the radio. Shift the transmission into park (P) for automatic transmission or first gear for manual transmission.

## Using the Audio System

**Note:** To scroll through the menus, press the up and down arrows on your audio system.

# SYNC™ (If Equipped)

1. Make sure to switch on your phone's Bluetooth feature before starting the search. See your device's manual if necessary.
2. Press the **PHONE** button. When the audio display indicates there is no paired phone, select the option to add.
3. When a message to begin pairing appears in the audio display, search for SYNC on your phone to start the pairing process.
4. When prompted on your cell phone's display, confirm that the PIN provided by SYNC matches the PIN displayed on your cell phone. Your phone is now paired and the display indicates that the pairing was successful. If you are prompted to enter a PIN on your device, enter the PIN displayed on the screen. The display indicates when the pairing is successful.

Depending on your phone's capability and your market, the system may prompt you with questions, such as setting the current phone as the primary phone (the phone SYNC automatically tries to connect with first upon vehicle start-up) and downloading your phonebook.

## Using Voice Commands



Make sure to switch on your phone's Bluetooth feature before starting the search. See your device's manual if necessary.

## Press the voice and when prompted say:

Voice Command	Action and Description
(pair ([Bluetooth] device   phone   Bluetooth audio)   add phone)	Follow the instructions on the audio display.

You can say any of the voice commands that appear within open and close brackets that are separated by |. For example, where; (what's | what is) appears you say; what's or what is.

The commands that have [ ] around the word means that the word is optional.

Depending on your phone's capability and your market, the system may prompt you with questions, such as setting the current phone as the primary phone (the phone SYNC automatically tries to connect with first upon vehicle start-up) and downloading your phonebook.

## Pairing Subsequent Phones

**Note:** Make sure to switch on the ignition and the radio. Shift the transmission into park (P) for automatic transmission or first gear for manual transmission.

**Note:** To scroll through the menus, press the up and down arrows on your audio system.

1. Make sure to switch on your phone's Bluetooth feature before starting the search. See your device's manual if necessary.
2. Press the **PHONE** button.
3. Select the option for Bluetooth Devices.
4. Press the **OK** button.

# SYNC™ (If Equipped)

- Select the option to add. This starts the pairing process.
- When a message to begin pairing appears in the audio display, search for SYNC on your device.
- When prompted on your cell phone's display, confirm that the PIN provided by SYNC matches the PIN displayed on your cell phone. Your phone is now paired and the display indicates that the pairing was successful. If you are prompted to enter a PIN on your device, enter the PIN displayed on the screen. The display indicates when the pairing is successful.

SYNC may prompt you with more cell phone options. Your cell phone may also prompt you to give SYNC permission to access information. For more information on your cell phone's capability, see your cell phone's manual and visit the website.

## Phone Voice Commands



Press the voice button. When prompted, say any of the following:

Voice Command
(phone   Blackberry   iPhone)
<b>Then say any of the following:</b>
call (___)
call ___ at home
call ___ ((in at) [the] office   at work)
call ___ on (cell   mobile)
call ___ on other
dial [[a] number] <sup>1</sup>
([go to] privacy   transfer to phone   privacy on) <sup>2</sup>

Voice Command
(hold call [on]   place call on hold) <sup>2</sup>
join (calls   call) <sup>2</sup>
mute call [on] <sup>2</sup>
(mute call off   un-mute call) <sup>2</sup>
(turn ringer on   silent mode off)
(turn ringer off   silent mode [on])
[text] (messages   message) <sup>3</sup>
help

\_\_\_ is a dynamic listing that should be the name of a contact in your phonebook. For example you could say "Call Home".

<sup>1</sup> See **Dial** table below.

<sup>2</sup> These commands are only valid while in a phone call.

<sup>3</sup> See the text message table below.

## Dial Commands

Press the voice button and when prompted say any of the following commands:

Voice Commands
411 (four-one-one), 911 (nine-one-one)
700 (seven hundred)
800 (eight hundred)
900 (nine hundred)
Clear (deletes all entered digits)
Delete (deletes last set of digits entered)
Number <0-9>

# SYNC™ (If Equipped)

Voice Commands
Plus
Pound (#)
Star (*)

**Note:** To exit dial mode, press and hold the phone button or press any button on the audio system.

## To access text messages say:

Voice Command
[text] (messages   message)
<b>Then say any of the following:</b>
(listen to   read) ([text] message)
forward (text   [text] message)
reply to (text   [text] message)
call [sender]

## Phonebook Hints

To hear how the SYNC system speaks a name browse phonebook, select a contact and press:

Menu Item
Hear it

## Changing Devices Using Voice Commands

Using SYNC, you can easily access multiple phones, ipods, or USB devices. to switch devices say:

Voice Command	
(connect   device) ____	You can state the name of the desired device, such as "My iPhone"; "My Galaxy" or "My iPod". SYNC may ask you to confirm the type of device (Phone, USB, or Bluetooth Audio).

## Making Calls



**Press the voice button. When prompted, say:**

Voice Command	
call [[a] name]	
dial [[a] number]	SYNC prompts you to say the numbers that you wish to dial. After you say the numbers, the system confirms it. You can then say:

**When the system has stated the number, you say any of the following:**

Voice Command	
(dial   send)	This initiates the call.
(delete   correct)	This erases the spoken digits.

To end the call, press the end call button on the steering wheel or select the end call option in the audio display.



## Receiving Calls

### Accepting calls

When receiving a call, you can answer the call by pressing the accept call button on the steering wheel or use the screen.

### To use the screen to accept a call select:

Menu Item
Accept

### Rejecting Calls

When receiving a call, you can reject the call by pressing the reject call button on the steering wheel or use the screen.

### To use the screen to reject a call select:

Menu Item
Reject

Ignore the call by doing nothing.

### Phone Options during an Active Call

During an active call, you have more menu features that become available, such as putting a call on hold or joining calls.

To access this menu, choose one of the options available at the bottom of the audio display or select **More** to choose from the following options:

Menu Item	Description and action
Mic. off	Switch your vehicle's microphone off. To switch the microphone on, select the option again.
Privacy	Switch a call from an active hands-free environment to your cellular phone for a more private conversation. When selected, the audio display indicates the call is private.
Hold	Put an active call on hold. When selected, the audio display indicates the call is on hold.
Dial a number	Enter numbers using the audio system's numeric keypad (for example, numbers for passwords).
Join calls	Join two separate calls. The system supports a maximum of three callers on a multiparty or conference call. 1. Select the <b>More</b> option. 2. Access the desired contact through the system or use voice commands to place the second call. Once actively in the second call, select the <b>More</b> option. 3. Scroll to the option to join calls and press the <b>OK</b> button.
Phonebook	Access your phonebook contacts. 1. Select the <b>More</b> option. 2. Scroll to the option for phonebook and press the <b>OK</b> button. 3. Scroll through your phonebook contacts.

## SYNC™ (If Equipped)

Menu Item	Description and action
	<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>4. Press the <b>OK</b> button again when the desired contact appears in the audio display.</li><li>5. Press the <b>OK</b> button or dial button to call the selection.</li></ol>
Call History	<p>Access your call history log.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Select the <b>More</b> option.</li><li>2. Scroll to the option for call history and press the <b>OK</b> button.</li><li>3. Scroll through your call history options (incoming, outgoing or missed).</li><li>4. Press the <b>OK</b> button again when the desired selection appears in the audio display.</li><li>5. Press the <b>OK</b> button or dial button to call the selection.</li></ol>

### Accessing Features through the Phone Menu

You can access your call history, phonebook, sent text messages, as well as access phone and system settings.

1. Press the **PHONE** button to enter the phone menu.
2. Select one of the options available.

Display	Description and action
Dial a number	Enter numbers using the audio system's numeric keypad.
Phonebook	<p>Access your downloaded phonebook.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Press the <b>OK</b> button to confirm and enter. You can use the options at the bottom of the screen to access an alphabetical category quickly. You can also use the letters on the audio system's numeric keypad to jump in the list.</li><li>2. Scroll through your phonebook contacts.</li><li>3. Press the <b>OK</b> button again when the desired selection appears in the audio display.</li><li>4. Press the <b>OK</b> button or dial button to call the selection.</li></ol>
Call History	<p>Access any previously dialed, received or missed calls.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Press the <b>OK</b> button to select.</li><li>2. Scroll to select incoming, outgoing or missed calls. Press the <b>OK</b> button to make your selection.</li><li>3. Press the <b>OK</b> button or dial button to call the selection.</li></ol>
Speed Dial	Select 1 of 10 speed dial entries. To set a speed dial entry, go to the phonebook and then press and hold one of the numbers on the audio system's numeric keypad.

## SYNC™ (If Equipped)

Display	Description and action
Text messaging	Send, download and delete text messages.
BT Devices	Access the option for Bluetooth Device menu listings (add, connect, set as primary, on or off, delete).
Phone settings	View various settings and features on your phone.

### Text Messaging

**Note:** *This is a phone-dependent feature.*

SYNC allows you to receive, send, download and delete text messages. The system can also read incoming text messages to you so that you do not have to take your eyes off the road.

#### Receiving a Text Message

**Note:** *This is a phone-dependent feature. Your phone must support downloading text messages using Bluetooth to receive incoming text messages.*

**Note:** *This is a speed-dependent feature and is only available when your vehicle is traveling at 3.1 mph (5 km/h) or less.*

When a new message arrives, an audible tone sounds and the audio display indicates you have a new message.

#### To hear the message you can say:

Voice command	Description and action
(listen to   read) ([text] message)	Select this option to have the system read the message to you.

### Using the screen you also have the following options:

Menu Item	Description and action
Ignore	Select this option, or do nothing, and the message goes into your text message inbox.
View	Select the view option to open the text message. Once selected, you have the ability to have the message read to you, to view other messages. For additional options select:
More...	If you select this option, use the arrow button to scroll through the following options:

Menu Item	Description and action		
	Reply to sender	Press the <b>OK</b> button to access, and then scroll through a list of pre-defined messages to send.	
	Call sender	Press the <b>OK</b> button to call the sender of the message.	
	Forward msg.	Press the <b>OK</b> button to forward the message to anyone in your phonebook or call history. You can also choose to enter a number.	

## Sending, Downloading and Deleting Your Text Messages

1. Press the **PHONE** button.

2. Select the text messaging option, and then press the **OK** button.

### Choose from the following options:

Menu Item	Description and action
New	Allows you to send a new text message based on a pre-defined set of 15 messages.
View	Allows you to read the full message and, in addition, provides the option to have the system read the message to you. To go to the next message, select the <b>More</b> option. This allows you to reply to the sender, call the sender or forward the message.
Delete	Allows you to delete current text messages from the system (not your cellular phone). The audio display indicates when the system has deleted all your text messages.
More...	Allows you to delete all messages or manually trigger a download of all unread messages from your cellular phone.

## Sending a Text Message

**Note:** You can only send a text message to one recipient at a time.

1. Select the send option when the desired selection highlights in the audio display.
2. Select the confirmation option when the contact appears.

3. Press the OK button again to confirm when the system asks if you want to send the message. A pre-defined signature appears on each text message.

**Note:** You can send text messages either by choosing a contact from the phonebook and selecting the text option from the audio display or by replying to a received message in the inbox.

## Accessing Your Phone Settings

These are phone-dependent features. Your phone settings allow you to access and adjust features such as your ring tone and text message notification, modify your

phonebook, and set up automatic download.

1. Press the **PHONE** button.
2. Scroll until the phone settings option appears, and then press the **OK** button.

### Scroll to select from the following options:

Menu Item	Description and action
Set as master	If this option is checked, the system uses the cellular phone as the master when there is more than one cellular phone paired to the system. This option can be changed for all cellular phones (not only the active phone) using the Bluetooth Devices menu.
Phone status	See the cellular phone name, provider name, cellular phone number, and signal level. When done, press the left arrow buttons to return to the phone status menu.
Set ringtone	Select which ringtone sounds during an incoming call (one of the system's tones or your cellular phone's). If your phone supports in-band ringing, your phone's ringtone sounds when you choose the cellular phone ringtone option. 1. Press the <b>OK</b> button to select and scroll to hear each ringtone. 2. Press the <b>OK</b> button to select a ringtone.
Text msg notify	Have the option of hearing an audible tone to notify you when a text message arrives. Press the <b>OK</b> button to switch the audible tone off or on.
Phonebook pref.	Modify the contents of your phonebook (such as add, delete or download). Press the <b>OK</b> button to select and scroll between the choices in the phonebook preferences table below.

## SYNC™ (If Equipped)

Menu Item	Phonebook preferences	
Add contacts	Push the desired contacts on your cellular phone. See your device's manual on how to push contacts. Press the <b>OK</b> button to add more contacts from your phonebook.	
Delete	When a message asking you to delete appears, select the option to confirm. Press the <b>OK</b> button to delete the current phonebook and call history. The system takes you back to the menu for phone settings.	
Download now	Press the OK button to select and download your phonebook to the system.	
Auto-download	When automatic download is on, the system deletes any changes (additions or deletions) saved in the system since your last download.	
	When automatic download is off, the system does not download your phonebook when your cellular phone connects to SYNC.	
	You can only access your phonebook, call history and text messages when your paired cellular phone connects to the system. Check or uncheck this option to download your phonebook automatically each time your phone connects to the system. Download times are phone-dependent and quantity-dependent.	
Sorting Pref.	Enabling this feature allows you to select how your contacts are displayed. You can select:	
	<table border="1"> <tr> <td>First/Last name</td> <td>Last/First name</td> </tr> </table>	First/Last name
First/Last name	Last/First name	

### Bluetooth Devices

The Bluetooth Devices menu allows you to add, connect and delete devices as well as set a phone as primary.

1. Press the **PHONE** button.
2. Scroll until Bluetooth Devices appears, and then press the **OK** button.

### Select from the following options:

Menu Item	Description and action
Add	Pair additional phones to the system. 1. Select the option to add to start the pairing process.

## SYNC™ (If Equipped)

Menu Item	Description and action
	<p>2. When a message to begin pairing appears in the audio display, search for SYNC on your phone. See your phone's manual if necessary.</p> <p>3. When prompted on your cell phone's display, confirm that the PIN provided by SYNC matches the PIN displayed on your cell phone. Skip the next step. If you are prompted to enter a PIN on your device, it does not support Secure Simple Pairing. To pair, enter the PIN displayed on the screen. The display indicates when the pairing is successful.</p> <p>4. When the option to set the phone as primary appears, select either yes or no.</p> <p>5. SYNC may prompt you with more cell phone options. Your cell phone may also prompt you to give SYNC permission to access information. For more information on your cell phone's capability, see your cell phone's manual and visit the website.</p>
Delete	Select the delete option and confirm when the system asks to delete the selected device. After deleting a phone from the list, you have to repeat the pairing process to pair it again.
Master	The system attempts to connect with the primary cellular phone each time you switch on the ignition. When you select a cellular phone as primary, it appears first in the list, marked with an asterisk. Set a previously paired phone as master by selecting the master option and confirming it as the primary.
Conn.	Connect a previously connected phone. You can only have one phone connected at a time to use the phone's functionality. When you connect another phone, the previous phone disconnects from the telephone services. The system allows you to use different Bluetooth devices for the cellular phone functionality and the Bluetooth audio music playback feature at the same time.
Discon.	Disconnects the selected cellular phone. Select this option and confirm when asked. After disconnecting a phone, you can reconnect it again without repeating the full pairing process.

### System Settings

1. Press the **MENU** button.

2. Select the SYNC settings option, and then press the **OK** button.

**Scroll to select from the following options:**

<b>Display</b>	<b>Description and action</b>
Bluetooth on	Check or uncheck this option to switch the system's Bluetooth interface off or on. Select this option, and then press the <b>OK</b> button to change the option's status.
Set defaults	Return to the factory default settings without erasing your indexed information (such as phonebook, call history, text messages and paired devices). Select this option and confirm when prompted in the audio display.
Master reset	Completely erase all information stored in the system (such as phonebook, call history, text messages and paired devices) and return to factory default settings.
Install on SYNC	Install downloaded applications or software updates. Select this option and confirm when prompted in the audio display. There must be a valid SYNC application or update available on the USB drive in order to finish an installation successfully.
System info	Display the system's version numbers as well as its serial number. Press the <b>OK</b> button to select.
Voice settings	The voice settings submenu contains various options. See <b>Using Voice Recognition</b> (page 304).
Browse USB	Browse the actual menu structure of the connected USB device. Press the <b>OK</b> button and use the up and down arrow buttons to scroll through the folders and files. Use the left or right arrow buttons to enter or leave a folder. You can select media content for playback from this menu.



## SYNC™ APPLICATIONS AND SERVICES (If Equipped)

In order for the following features to work, your cellular phone must be compatible with SYNC. To check your phone's compatibility, visit [www.SYNCMYRide.com](http://www.SYNCMYRide.com), [www.SYNCMYRide.ca](http://www.SYNCMYRide.ca) or [www.syncmaroute.ca](http://www.syncmaroute.ca).

- 911 Assist: Can alert 911 in the event of an emergency.
- SYNC AppLink: Allows you to connect to and use certain applications such as Spotify and Glmpse (if your phone is compatible).

These features may require activation. Available AppLink enabled apps vary by market.

### 911 Assist

#### WARNINGS



Unless the 911 Assist setting is set on before a crash, the system will not dial for help which could delay response time, potentially increasing the risk of serious injury or death after a crash.



Do not wait for 911 Assist to make an emergency call if you can do it yourself. Dial emergency services immediately to avoid delayed response time which could increase the risk of serious injury or death after a crash. If you do not hear 911 Assist within five seconds of the crash, the system or phone may be damaged or non-functional.



Always place your phone in a secure location in your vehicle so it does not become a projectile or get damaged in a crash. Failure to do so may cause serious injury to someone or damage the phone which could prevent 911 Assist from working properly.

**Note:** The SYNC 911 Assist feature must be set on before the incident.

**Note:** The SYNC 911 Assist feature only operates in the U.S., Canada or in a territory in which 911 is the emergency number.

**Note:** Before setting this feature on, make sure that you read the 911 Assist Privacy Notice later in this section for important information.

**Note:** If any user switches 911 Assist to on or off, that setting applies for all paired phones. If 911 Assist is switched off, either a voice message plays or a display message or an icon comes on when your vehicle is started and after a previously paired phone connects.

**Note:** Every phone operates differently. While SYNC 911 Assist works with most cellular phones, some may have trouble using this feature.

If a crash deploys an airbag (excluding knee airbags and rear inflatable safety belts [if equipped]) or activates the fuel pump shut-off, your SYNC-equipped vehicle may be able to contact emergency services by dialing 911 through a paired and connected Bluetooth-enabled phone. You can learn more about the 911 Assist feature, visit [www.SYNCMYRide.com](http://www.SYNCMYRide.com), [www.SYNCMYRide.ca](http://www.SYNCMYRide.ca) or [www.syncmaroute.ca](http://www.syncmaroute.ca).

See **Supplementary Restraints System** (page 35). Important information about airbag deployment is in this chapter.

See **Roadside Emergencies** (page 190). Important information about the fuel pump shut-off is in this chapter.

## Setting 911 Assist On or Off

**Press the phone button to enter the phone menu and scroll to:**

Menu Item	Action and Description
911 Assist	Press the <b>OK</b> button to confirm and enter the 911 assist menu.
On Off	Press the <b>OK</b> button when the desired option appears in the radio display.

**If you choose not to activate this feature you will have the following options:**

Menu Item	Action and Description
Voice Reminder ON	Provides a display and voice reminder at phone connection at vehicle start.
Voice Reminder OFF	Provides a display reminder only without a voice reminder at phone connection.

To make sure that 911 Assist works properly:

- SYNC must be powered and working properly at the time of the incident and throughout feature activation and use.
- The 911 Assist feature must be set on before the incident.
- You must pair and connect a Bluetooth-enabled and compatible cell phone to SYNC.
- A connected Bluetooth-enabled phone must have the ability to make and maintain an outgoing call at the time of the incident.

- A connected Bluetooth-enabled phone must have adequate network coverage, battery power and signal strength.
- The vehicle must have battery power and be located in the U.S., Canada or in a territory in which 911 is the emergency number.

## In the Event of a Crash

Not all crashes deploy an airbag or activate the fuel pump shut-off (the triggers for 911 Assist). If a connected cell phone sustains damage or loses its connection to SYNC during a crash, SYNC searches for and tries to connect to a previously paired cell phone; SYNC then attempts to call the emergency services.

Before making the call:

- SYNC provides a short window of time (about 10 seconds) to cancel the call. If you fail to cancel the call, SYNC attempts to dial 911.
- SYNC says the following, or a similar message: "SYNC will attempt to call 911, to cancel the call, press Cancel on your screen or press and hold the phone button on your steering wheel".

If you do not cancel the call, and SYNC makes a successful call, a pre-recorded message plays for the 911 operator, and then the occupant(s) in your vehicle is able to talk with the operator. Be prepared to provide your name, phone number and location immediately, because not all 911 systems are capable of receiving this information electronically.

## 911 Assist May Not Work If

- Your cellular phone or 911 Assist hardware sustains damage in a crash.
- The vehicle's battery or the SYNC system has no power.
- The phone(s) thrown from your vehicle are the ones paired and connected to the system.

## 911 Assist Privacy Notice

When you switch on 911 Assist, it may disclose to emergency services that your vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or activation of the fuel pump shut-off. Certain versions or updates to 911 Assist may also be capable of electronically or verbally disclosing to 911 operators your vehicle location or other details about your vehicle or crash to assist 911 operators to provide the most appropriate emergency services. If you do not want to disclose this information, do not switch the feature on.

## SYNC Mobile Apps

The system enables voice and steering wheel control of SYNC AppLink enabled smartphone apps. When an app is running through AppLink, you can control main features of the app through voice commands and steering wheel controls.

**Note:** You must pair and connect your smartphone to SYNC to access AppLink.

**Note:** iPhone users need to connect the phone to the USB port.

**Note:** Android users need to connect the phone to SYNC using Bluetooth.

**Note:** For information on available apps, supported smartphone devices and troubleshooting tips please visit the Ford website.

Availability of SYNC AppLink enabled Apps will vary by region.

**Note:** Make sure you have an active account for the app that you have downloaded. Some apps work automatically with no setup. Other apps want you to configure your personal settings and personalize your experience by creating stations or favorites. We recommend you do this at home or outside of your vehicle.

**Note:** AppLink is not available if your vehicle is equipped with the MyFordTouch system.

## To Access Using the SYNC Menu

**Press the MENU button to access the menu on-screen. Then select:**

Menu Item	Action and Description
SYNC-Apps	
Mobile Apps	Scroll through the list of available applications and select a particular app or select:
	Find New Apps

**Note:** If you cannot find a compatible SYNC AppLink app, make sure the required app is running on the mobile device.

## Accessing an App's Menu

When an app is running through SYNC, press the right arrow button on the steering wheel control to access the app menu.

You can access various app features from here, for example thumbs up and thumbs down.

Press the left arrow button on the steering wheel control to exit the app menu.

## SYNC™ (If Equipped)

### To Access Using Voice Commands

**Press the voice button then when prompted say:**

Menu Item	Action and Description
mobile (apps   applications)	Say the name of the application after the tone. The app should start. When an app is running through SYNC, you can press the voice button and speak commands specific to the app, for example "Play Playlist Road Trip".
help	Use this command to discover the available voice commands.

### SYNC Mobile App Voice Commands

**The following voice commands are always available:**

Menu Item	Action and Description
mobile (apps   applications)	SYNC prompts you to say the name of an app to start it on SYNC.
list [mobile] (apps   applications)	SYNC lists all of the currently available mobile apps.
find [new] [mobile] (apps   applications)	Searches your connected mobile device for SYNC-compatible mobile apps.
help	
You can say the name of a mobile app at any time to start the mobile app on SYNC.	

### App Permissions

App permissions are organized by groups. You can grant these group permissions individually. You can change a permission group status any time when not driving, by using the settings menu.

When you launch an app using SYNC, the system may ask you to grant certain permissions, for example:

- To allow your vehicle to provide vehicle information to the app such as, but not limited to: Fuel level, fuel economy, fuel consumption, engine speed, rain sensor, odometer, VIN, external temperature, gear position, tire pressure, and head lamp status.
- To allow your vehicle to provide driving characteristic information such as, but not limited to: MyKey, seat belt status, engine revolutions per minute, gear position, braking events, steering wheel angle, and accelerator pedal position.

## SYNC™ (If Equipped)

- To allow your vehicle to provide location information, including: GPS and speed.
- To allow the app to send push notifications using the vehicle display and voice capabilities while running in a background state. Push notifications may be particularly useful for news or

location based apps.

**Note:** *You only need to grant permissions the first time you use an app with SYNC.*

**Note:** *Ford is not responsible or liable for any damages or loss of privacy relating to usage of an app, or dissemination of any vehicle data that you approve Ford to provide to an app.*

### Enabling and Disabling App Permissions Using the SYNC Menu

**Press the MENU button to access the SYNC menu then select:**

Menu Item	Action and Description
SYNC-Apps	
Mobile Apps	
All Apps	You can also select a specific app. If the app supports push notifications, this setting is listed. Select to enable or disable the feature as required.

### Enabling SYNC Mobile Apps

In order to enable mobile apps, SYNC requires user consent to send and receive app authorization information and updates using the data plan associated with the connected device.

Data is sent to Ford in the United States through the connected device. The information is encrypted and includes your VIN, SYNC module number, anonymous usage statistics and debugging information. Updates may take place automatically.

**Note:** *You must enable mobile apps for each connected device the first time you select a mobile app using the system.*

**Note:** *Standard data rates apply. Ford is not responsible for any additional charges you may receive from your service provider, when your vehicle sends or receives data through the connected device. This includes any additional charges incurred due to driving in areas when roaming out of a home network.*

### App Status

You can view the current status of an app in the settings menu.

## There are three possible statuses:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Update Needed	The system has detected a new app requiring authorization or a general permissions update is required.
Up-To-Date	No update is required.
Updating...	The system is trying to receive an update.

## Update settings

Menu Item	Action and Description
Request Update	Select this option from the settings menu to manually preform a needed update.
Disable Updates	Select this option from the settings menu to disable automatic updates. Doing so also disables the use of Mobile Apps on SYNC.

## USING SYNC™ WITH YOUR MEDIA PLAYER

You can access and play music from your digital music player over your vehicle's speaker system using the system's media menu or voice commands. You can also sort and play your music by specific categories, such as artist and album.

**Note:** *The system is capable of indexing up to 15,000 songs.*

SYNC is capable of hosting nearly any digital media player including: iPod, Zune, plays from device players, and most USB drives. SYNC also supports audio formats, such as MP3, WMA, WAV and ACC.

Confirm that the USB device has been formatted correctly and has the following specifications:

- USB 2.0.
- File format must be FAT16/32.

The format of the audio files on the USB device must be:

- MP3.
- Non DRM protected WMA.
- WAV.
- AAC.

## Connecting Your Digital Media Player to the USB Port

**Note:** *If your digital media player has a power switch, make sure you switch it on before plugging it in.*

# SYNC™ (If Equipped)

## To Connect Using Voice Commands

Plug the device into one of the vehicle's USB ports.

**Press the voice button and when prompted, say:**

Voice Command	Action and Description
(USB [stick]   iPod   MP3 [player])	You can now play music by saying any of the appropriate voice commands. See the media voice commands.

Words in brackets [ ] are optional and do not have to be spoken for the system to understand the command. For example, for where (USB [stick] | IPOD | MP3 [player]) appears, you can say USB or USB stick.

**To view USB content select:**

Message	Description and Action
Browse USB	Depending on how many media files are on your connected device, an indexing message may appear in the display. When indexing is complete, the selected source starts to playback audio automatically.

**You can browse the files on the USB device in categories. Select BROWSE from the buttons at the bottom of the audio display and choose from the following:**

Message
Play all
Playlists
Songs
Artists

## To Connect Using the System Menu

1. Plug the device into one of the vehicle's USB ports.
2. Press the **MEDIA** button and select either USB 1 or USB 2 from the media source list in the audio display.

Message
Albums
Genres
Browse USB
Reset USB

## Media Voice Commands



Press the voice button and when prompted say:

## SYNC™ (If Equipped)

Voice Command	Description and Action
(USB [stick]   iPod   MP3 [player])	You can now play music by saying any of the appropriate voice commands.

You can say any of the voice commands that appear within open and close brackets that are separated by |. For example, where; (what's | what is) appears you say; what's or what is.

You must say any of the voice commands that appear outside of open and close brackets. For example, where; (what's | what is) playing, you must say either "what's playing" or "what is playing".

Command	Description and Action
pause	Pauses device playback.
play	Resumes device playback.
play [album] ___	
play all	Play all media on the device from the first track to the last.
play [artist] ___	
play [genre] ___	
play [playlist] ___	
next [track   title   song   file   podcast   chapter   episode]	Plays the next track   on the current media.
previous [track   title   song   file   podcast   chapter   episode]	Plays the previous track on current media.
[play] (similar music   more like this)	Creates a playlist with a similar genre to the one currently playing.
play [song   track   title   file] ___	
repeat off	
repeat (one   track) [on]	Repeats the current track.



## SYNCTM (If Equipped)

Command	Description and Action
shuffle [all] [on]	Plays the current playlist in a random order. (Not all devices support this command.)
shuffle off	
((who's   who is) this   who plays this   (what's   what is) playing [now]   (what   which) (song   track   artist) is this   (who's   who is) playing   (what's   what is) this)	At any time during playback, you can press the voice button and ask the system what is playing. The system reads the metadata tags (if populated) of the current track.

\_\_\_ is a dynamic listing, meaning that it could be the name of anything, such as a group, artist or song. For example you could say "Play artist The Beatles".

### Examples of USB Commands

SYNC provides the user with many intuitive ways to find and play a song using voice. For example, if we have a song called "Penny Lane" from the album "Magical Mystery Tour" we can say the following to play this song:

- Play song "Penny Lane".
- Play "Penny Lane".

If we wanted to play the entire album, we can say:

- Play album "Magical Mystery Tour".
- Play "Magical Mystery Tour".

### Bluetooth Audio

The system is also capable of playing music from your cellular phone through Bluetooth.

To switch the Bluetooth audio on, use the **MEDIA** button (next to the audio display) or **Source** button, or press the voice button and when prompted say:

Voice Command
Bluetooth audio

Then any of the following:

Voice Command
pause
play
next [track   title   song   file   podcast   chapter   episode]
previous [track   title   song   file   podcast   chapter   episode]

## SYNC™ (If Equipped)

### Media Menu Features

The media menu allows you to select how to play your music (such as by artist, genre, shuffle or repeat), find similar music or

reset the index of your USB devices.

Press the **MEDIA** button and select either USB 1 or USB 2 from the media source list in the audio display to start USB playback.

Message	Description and Action
Options	This will enter the media menu.

Then any of the following:

Message	Description and Action
Shuffle	Choose to shuffle or repeat your music. Once you make your choice, it remains on until you switch it off.
Repeat track	Choose to shuffle or repeat your music. Once you make your choice, it remains on until you switch it off.
Similar music	You can play similar types of music to the current playlist from the USB port. The system uses the metadata information of each track to compile a playlist. The system then creates a new list of similar tracks and then begins playing. Each track must have the metadata tags populated for this feature. With certain playing devices, if your metadata tags are not populated, the tracks will not be available in voice recognition, the play menu or this option. However, if you place these tracks onto your playing device in mass storage device mode they are available in voice recognition, the play menu or this option. The system places unknowns into any unpopulated metadata tag.
Reset USB	Resets the USB index. After the new indexing is complete you can choose what to play from the USB song library.

### Accessing Your USB Song Library

1. Plug the device into your vehicle's USB port.

2. Press the **MEDIA** button (next to the audio display) to select USB playback.

Message	Description and Action
Browse USB	This menu allows you to select and play your media files by artist, album, genre, playlist or track.

## SYNC™ (If Equipped)

If there are no media files to access, the **NO MEDIA** display indicates there is no media.

### If there are media files, you have the following options:

Display	Description and Action
Play all	Play all indexed media files from your device one at a time in numerical order.* Press the <b>OK</b> button to select. The first track title appears in the display.
Playlists	Access your playlists (from formats like ASX, M3U, WPL, or MTP).* 1. Press the <b>OK</b> button to select. 2. Scroll to select the desired playlist, and then press the <b>OK</b> button.
Songs	Search for and play a specific indexed track.* 1. Press the <b>OK</b> button to select. 2. Scroll to select the desired track, and then press the <b>OK</b> button.
Artists	Sort all indexed media files by artist. The system then lists and plays all artists and tracks alphabetically.* 1. Press the <b>OK</b> button to select. 2. Scroll to select the desired artist, and then press the <b>OK</b> button.
Albums	Sort all indexed media files by album.* 1. Press the <b>OK</b> button to select. 2. Scroll to select the desired album, and then press the <b>OK</b> button.
Genres	Sort all indexed media files by genre (category) type.* 1. Press the <b>OK</b> button to select. 2. Scroll to select the desired genre, and then press the <b>OK</b> button.
Browse USB	Browse all supported media files on your media player connected to the USB port. You can only view media files that are compatible with SYNC. (Other files are not visible.) 1. Press the <b>OK</b> button to select.

## SYNC™ (If Equipped)

Display	Description and Action
	2. Scroll to browse indexed media files on the device, and then press the <b>OK</b> button.
Reset USB	Resets the USB index. After the new indexing is complete, you can choose what to play from the USB song library.

\*You can use the buttons at the bottom of the audio display to jump to a certain alphabetical category quickly. You can also use the letters on the audio system's numeric keypad to jump in the list.

### Using Voice Commands

You can access and view your USB songs using voice commands.

Plug the device into your vehicle's USB port.

**Press the voice button and when prompted, say any of the following commands:**

Accessing and Viewing USB Media
(browse   search   show) all (album   albums)
(browse   search   show) all (artist   artists)
(browse   search   show) all (genre   genres)
(browse   search   show) all (playlist   playlists)
(browse   search   show) all (song   songs   title   titles   file   files   track   tracks)
(browse   search   show) album ___
(browse   search   show) artist ___
(browse   search   show) genre ___
(browse   search   show) playlist ___

### USB 2 (If Equipped)

Your vehicle may come equipped with an additional USB port. If so, USB 1 is located at the front of the vehicle at the bottom of the instrument panel. USB 2 is located inside the storage compartment of the vehicle's center console.

You can plug in an additional USB device into the second USB port.

You can access both USB devices by using voice commands.

**To access a USB device press the voice button and when prompted say:**

Voice command
USB 1
USB 2

**Note:** SYNC only supports one connected iOS (Apple) devices at a time (whichever one you plug in first). When you connect a second iOS device, the systems charges it, but does not support playback from it.

### Bluetooth Devices and System Settings

You can access these menus using the audio display. See **Using SYNC™ With Your Phone** (page 306).

## Voice Commands for Audio Sources

Your voice system allows you to change audio sources with a simple voice command.



**Press the voice button and when prompted say:**

Voice Command
(music   audio   entertainment) [system]
<b>Below are a few examples of voice commands you can use.</b>
[tune [to]] AM
[tune [to]] AM1
[tune [to]] AM (autostore   AST   autoset)
[tune [to]] AM 2
Bluetooth (audio   stereo)
(disc   CD [player]) play
[tune [to]] FM
[tune [to]] FM1
[tune [to]] FM (autostore   AST   autoset)
[tune [to]] FM 2
Radio
tune [to] SAT *
Sirius *
(USB [stick]   iPod   MP3 [player])

### Voice Command

((who's | who is) this | who plays this | (what's | what is) playing [now] | (what | which) (song | track | artist) is this | (who's | who is) playing | (what's | what is) this)

help

\* If equipped.

## Radio Voice Commands



If you are listening to the radio, press the voice button, and then say any of the commands in the following table.

**If you are not listening to the radio, press the voice button and, after the tone, say:**

Voice Command
Radio
<b>You can then say any of the following commands.</b>
[tune [to]] AM
[tune [to]] AM1
[tune [to]] AM (autostore   AST   autoset)
[tune [to]] AM 2
[tune [to]] (AM ___   ___ [AM])
[tune [to]] AM preset ___
[tune [to]] AM1 preset ___
[tune [to]] FM
[tune [to]] FM1
[tune [to]] FM (autostore   AST   autoset) preset ___

## SYNC™ (If Equipped)

Voice Command
[tune [to]] FM 2
[tune [to]] (FM ___   ___ [FM])
[tune [to]] FM preset ___
FM ___ HD ___ *
[tune [to]] FM 2 preset ___
HD ___ *
[tune [to]] preset ___
Tune
help

\* If equipped.

### Sirius Satellite Radio Voice Commands (If equipped)



To listen to Sirius satellite radio, press the voice button and, after the tone, say:

Voice Commands
Sirius

**When you are listening to Sirius satellite radio, you can press the voice button, and say any of the commands in the following table.**

Voice Commands
tune [to] SAT
[tune [to]] SAT 1
[tune [to]] SAT 2
[tune [to]] SAT 3
[tune [to]] preset ___
[tune [to]] SAT 1 preset ___

Voice Commands	
[tune [to]] SAT 2 preset ___	
[tune [to]] SAT 3 preset ___	
tune [to] [Sirius]	
Help	
[tune [to]] Sirius [channel] ___	You can say the channel number (0-233) to listen to that Sirius station.

### CD Voice Commands



If you are listening to a CD, press the voice button, and then say any of the commands in the following table.

**If you are not listening to a CD, press the voice button and, after the tone, say:**

Voice Command
(disc   CD [player]) play
<b>You can then say any of the following commands.</b>
pause
play
[play] next track
[play] previous track
[play   change to] track [number] ___
repeat (track   song) [on]
repeat folder [on]
repeat off
(shuffle   random   mix) [on   (tracks   songs) [on]]

## SYNC™ (If Equipped)

Voice Command
(shuffle   random   mix) (CD [player]   disc) [on]
(shuffle   random   mix) folder [on]
shuffle off

Use the website at any time to check your phone's compatibility, register your account and set preferences as well as access a customer representative via an online chat (during certain hours). Visit [www.SYNCMyRide.com](http://www.SYNCMyRide.com), [www.SYNCMyRide.ca](http://www.SYNCMyRide.ca) or [www.syncmaroute.ca](http://www.syncmaroute.ca) for more information.

## SYNC™ TROUBLESHOOTING

Your SYNC system is easy to use. However, should questions arise, see the tables below.

Phone issues		
Issue	Possible cause(s)	Possible solution(s)
There is excessive background noise during a phone call.	The audio control settings on your phone may be affecting SYNC performance.	Review your phone's manual about audio adjustments.
During a call, I can hear the other person but they cannot hear me.	This may be a possible phone malfunction.	Try turning off the device, resetting the device, removing the device's battery, then trying again.
SYNC is not able to download my phonebook.	This is a phone-dependent feature.  This may be a possible phone malfunction.	Go to the website to review your phone's compatibility.  Try turning off the device, resetting the device or removing the device's battery, then trying again.  Try pushing your phonebook contacts to SYNC by using the Add Contacts feature.  Use the SYNCmyphone feature available on the website.
The system says Phonebook Downloaded but the phonebook in SYNC is empty or missing contacts.	This may be a limitation on your phone's capability.	Try pushing your phonebook contacts to SYNC by using the Add Contacts feature.

## SYNC™ (If Equipped)

<b>Phone issues</b>		
<b>Issue</b>	<b>Possible cause(s)</b>	<b>Possible solution(s)</b>
		<p>If the missing contacts are stored on your SIM card, try moving them to the device memory.</p> <p>Remove any pictures or special ring tones associated with the missing contact.</p> <p>Depending upon your phone, you may have to grant SYNC permission to access your phonebook contacts. Make sure to confirm when prompted by your phone during the phonebook download.</p>
<p>I am having trouble connecting my phone to SYNC.</p>	<p>This is a phone-dependent feature.</p> <p>This may be a possible phone malfunction.</p>	<p>Go to the website to review your phone's compatibility.</p> <p>Try turning off the device, resetting the device or removing the device's battery, then trying again.</p> <p>Try deleting your device from SYNC, deleting SYNC from your device and trying again.</p> <p>Check the security and auto accept and prompt always settings relative to the SYNC Bluetooth connection on your phone.</p> <p>Update your device's firmware.</p>



## SYNC™ (If Equipped)

<b>Phone issues</b>		
<b>Issue</b>	<b>Possible cause(s)</b>	<b>Possible solution(s)</b>
		Turn off the Auto phone-book download setting.
Text messaging is not working on SYNC.	<p>This is a phone-dependent feature.</p> <p>This may be a possible phone malfunction.</p>	<p>Go to the website to review your phone's compatibility.</p> <p>Try turning off the device, resetting the device or removing the device's battery, then trying again.</p>

<b>USB and media issues</b>		
<b>Issue</b>	<b>Possible cause(s)</b>	<b>Possible solution(s)</b>
I am having trouble connecting my device.	This may be a possible device malfunction.	<p>Try turning off the device, resetting the device, removing the device's battery, then trying again.</p> <p>Make sure you are using the manufacturer's cable.</p> <p>Make sure you insert the USB cable correctly into the device and the USB port.</p> <p>Make sure that the device does not have an auto-install program or active security settings.</p>
SYNC does not recognize my device when I turn on the car.	This is a device limitation.	Make sure you are not leaving the device in your vehicle during very hot or cold temperatures.
Bluetooth audio does not stream.	This is a phone-dependent feature.	Review the device compatibility chart on the SYNC website to confirm your phone supports the Bluetooth audio streaming function.

## SYNC™ (If Equipped)

<b>USB and media issues</b>		
<b>Issue</b>	<b>Possible cause(s)</b>	<b>Possible solution(s)</b>
	The device is not connected.	Make sure you correctly connect the device to SYNC, and that you have pressed play on your device.
SYNC does not recognize music that is on my device.	<p>Your music files may not contain the correct artist, song title, album or genre information.</p> <p>The file may be corrupted.</p> <p>The song may have copy-right protection, which does not allow it to play.</p>	<p>Make sure that all song details are populated.</p> <p>Some devices require you to change the USB settings from mass storage to MTP class.</p>

<b>Voice command issues</b>		
<b>Issue</b>	<b>Possible cause(s)</b>	<b>Possible solution(s)</b>
SYNC does not understand what I am saying.	<p>You may be using the wrong voice commands.</p> <p>You may be speaking too soon or at the wrong time.</p>	<p>Review the phone voice commands and the media voice commands at the beginning of their respective sections.</p> <p>After pressing the voice icon, wait until after the tone sounds and Listening appears before saying a command. Any command spoken before this does not register with the system.</p>
SYNC does not understand the name of a song or artist.	You may be using the wrong voice commands.	Review the media voice commands at the beginning of the media section.

## SYNC™ (If Equipped)

<b>Voice command issues</b>		
<b>Issue</b>	<b>Possible cause(s)</b>	<b>Possible solution(s)</b>
	<p>You may be saying the name differently than the way you saved it.</p> <p>The system may not be reading the name the same way you are saying it.</p>	<p>Say the song or artist exactly as listed. If you say "Play Artist Prince", the system does not play music by Prince and the Revolution or Prince and the New Power Generation.</p> <p>Make sure you are saying the complete title, such as "California remix featuring Jennifer Nettles".</p> <p>If the song titles are in all CAPS, you have to spell them. LOLA requires you to say "L-O-L-A".</p> <p>Do not use special characters in the title. The system does not recognize them.</p>
<p>SYNC does not understand or is calling the wrong contact when I want to make a call.</p>	<p>You may be using the wrong voice commands.</p> <p>You may be saying the name differently than the way you saved it.</p>	<p>Review the Phone voice commands at the beginning of the phone section.</p> <p>Make sure you are saying the contacts exactly as they are listed. For example, if you save a contact as Joe Wilson, say "Call Joe Wilson".</p> <p>Using the SYNC phone menu, open the phonebook and scroll to the name SYNC is having trouble understanding. SYNC will read the name to you, giving you some idea of the pronunciation SYNC is expecting.</p>

## SYNC™ (If Equipped)

<b>Voice command issues</b>		
<b>Issue</b>	<b>Possible cause(s)</b>	<b>Possible solution(s)</b>
	<p>The system may not be reading the name the same way you are saying it.</p> <p>Contacts in your phonebook may be very short and similar, or they may contain special characters.</p> <p>Your phonebook contacts may be in CAPS.</p>	<p>The system works better if you list full names, such as "Joe Wilson" rather than "Joe".</p> <p>Do not use special characters, such as 123 or ICE, as the system does not recognize them.</p> <p>If a contact is in CAPS, you have to spell it. JAKE requires you to say "Call J-A-K-E".</p>

<b>AppLink issues</b>		
<b>Issue</b>	<b>Possible cause(s)</b>	<b>Possible solution(s)</b>
<p>AppLink Mobile Applications: When I select "Find New Apps," SYNC does not find any applications.</p>	<p>An AppLink capable phone is not connected to SYNC.</p>	<p>Ensure you have a compatible smartphone; an Android with OS 2.3 or higher or an iPhone 3GS or newer with iOS 5.0 or higher. Additionally, ensure your phone is paired and connected to SYNC in order to find AppLink-capable apps on your device. iPhone users must also connect to SYNC's USB port with an Apple USB cable.</p>
<p>My phone is connected, but I still cannot find any apps.</p>	<p>AppLink-enabled apps are not installed and running on your mobile device.</p>	<p>Ensure you have downloaded and installed the latest version of the app from your phone's app store. Ensure the app is running on your phone. Some apps require you to register or</p>

## SYNC™ (If Equipped)

<b>AppLink issues</b>		
<b>Issue</b>	<b>Possible cause(s)</b>	<b>Possible solution(s)</b>
		login on the app on the phone before using them with AppLink. Also, some may have a "Ford SYNC" setting, so check the app's settings menu on the phone.
My phone is connected, my app(s) are running, but I still cannot find any apps.	Sometime apps do not properly close and re-open their connection to SYNC, over ignition cycles, for example.	<p>Closing and restarting apps may help SYNC find the application if you cannot discover it inside the vehicle.</p> <p>On an Android device, if apps have an "Exit" or 'Quit' option, select that then restart the app. If the app does not have that option, you can also manually "Force Close" the app by going to the phone's settings menu, selecting 'Apps.' then finding the particular app and choosing 'Force stop.' Don't forget to restart the app afterwards, then select "Find New Apps" on SYNC.</p> <p>On an iPhone with iOS7+, to force close an app, double tap the home button then swipe up on the app to close it. Tab the home button again, then select the app again to restart it. After a few seconds, the app should then appear in SYNC's Mobile App's Menu.</p>
My Android phone is connected, my app(s) are running, I restarted them, but I still cannot find any apps.	There is a Bluetooth bug on some order versions of the Android operating system that may cause apps that were found on your previous vehicle drive to not be found again if you have not turned off Bluetooth.	Reset the Bluetooth on your phone by turning it off and then turning Bluetooth back on. If you are in your vehicle, SYNC should be able to automatically re-connect to your phone if you press the "Phone" button.

## SYNC™ (If Equipped)

<b>AppLink issues</b>		
<b>Issue</b>	<b>Possible cause(s)</b>	<b>Possible solution(s)</b>
My iPhone phone is connected, my app is running, I restarted the app but I still cannot find it on SYNC.	The USB connection to SYNC may need to be reset.	Unplug the USB cable from the phone, wait a moment, and plug the USB cable back in to the phone. After a few seconds, the app should appear in SYNC's Mobile Apps Menu. If not, "Force Close" the application and restart it.
I have an Android phone. I found and started my media app on SYNC, but there is no sound or the sound is very low.	The bluetooth volume on the phone may be low.	Try increasing the Bluetooth volume of the device by using the device's volume control buttons which are most often found on the side of the device.
I can only see some of the AppLink apps running on my phone listed in SYNC's Mobile Apps Menu.	Some Android devices have a limited number of bluetooth ports apps can use to connect. If you have more AppLink apps on your phone than the number of available Bluetooth ports, you will not see all of your apps listed in SYNC's mobile apps menu.	Force close or uninstall the apps you do not want SYNC to find. If the app has a "Ford SYNC" setting, disable that setting in the app's settings menu on the phone.

### **SYNC System Reset**

The SYNC system in your vehicle has System Reset feature that can be performed if the function of a SYNC feature is lost. This reset is intended to restore functionality and will not erase any information previously stored in the system (Such as paired devices, phonebook, call history, text messages, or user settings). To perform a System Reset, press and hold the Seek Up (>>) button while pressing and holding the Radio Power button. Release both buttons after 2-3 seconds. Please allow a few minutes for the reset to complete. After a few minutes has passed you can resume using the SYNC system.

# Accessories

For a complete listing of the accessories that are available for your vehicle, please contact your authorized dealer or visit the online store web site:

<b>Web Address (United States)</b>
------------------------------------

<a href="http://www.Accessories.Ford.com">www.Accessories.Ford.com</a>
--

<b>Web Address (Canada)</b>
-----------------------------

<a href="http://www.Accessories.Ford.ca">www.Accessories.Ford.ca</a>
--

Ford Motor Company will repair or replace any properly authorized dealer-installed Ford Original Accessory found to be defective in factory-supplied materials or workmanship during the warranty period, as well as any component damaged by the defective accessories.

Ford Motor Company will warrant your Ford accessory through the warranty that provides the greatest benefit:

- 24 months, unlimited mileage.
- The remainder of your new vehicle limited warranty.

Contact an authorized dealer for details and a copy of the warranty.

## Exterior Style

- Custom graphics\*.
- Hood deflector\*.
- Side window deflectors.
- Splash guards.
- Spoiler winglets.

## Interior Style

- Door sill plates.
- Floor mats.
- Interior light kit.
- Seat covers\*.

## Lifestyle

- Ash cup or smoker's packages.
- Camping tent\*.
- Car cover\*.
- Cargo area protector.
- Cargo net\*.
- Cargo shade.
- Rear seat entertainment\*.
- Soft cargo organizers.
- Roof racks and carriers\*.
- Recovery hook (towing eye).
- Trailer towing accessories.

## Peace of Mind

- Keyless entry keypad.
- Remote start.
- Vehicle security systems.
- Wheel locks.
- Bumper mounted warning sensors\*.

\*Ford Licensed Accessories. The accessory manufacturer designs, develops and therefore warrants Ford Licensed Accessories, and does not design or test these accessories to Ford Motor Company engineering requirements. Contact an authorized Ford dealer for the manufacturer's limited warranty details, and request a copy of the Ford Licensed Accessories product limited warranty from the accessory manufacturer.

## Accessories

---

For maximum vehicle performance, keep the following information in mind when adding accessories or equipment to your vehicle:

- When adding accessories, equipment, passengers and luggage to your vehicle, do not exceed the total weight capacity of the vehicle or of the front or rear axle (GVWR or GAWR as indicated on the Safety Compliance Certification label). Ask an authorized dealer for specific weight information.
- The Federal Communications Commission (FCC) and Canadian Radio Telecommunications Commission (CRTC) regulate the use of mobile communications systems that are equipped with radio transmitters, for example, two-way radios, telephones and theft alarms. Any such equipment installed in your vehicle should comply with Federal Communications Commission (FCC) and Canadian Radio Telecommunications Commission (CRTC) regulations and should be installed only by an authorized dealer.
- An authorized dealer needs to install mobile communications systems. Improper installation may harm the operation of your vehicle, particularly if the manufacturer did not design the mobile communication system specifically for automotive use.
- If you or an authorized Ford dealer add any non-Ford electrical or electronic accessories or components to your vehicle, you may adversely affect battery performance and durability. In addition, you may also adversely affect the performance of other electrical systems in the vehicle.



# Extended Service Plan (ESP)

---

PROTECT YOURSELF FROM THE RISING COST OF VEHICLE REPAIRS WITH A FORD EXTENDED SERVICE PLAN.

## **EXTENDED SERVICE PLAN (U.S. Only)**

More than 32 million Ford owners have discovered the powerful protection of Ford Extended Service Plan. It is the extended service plan backed by Ford Motor Company, and provides peace of mind protection beyond the New Vehicle Limited Warranty coverage.

### **Ford ESP Can Quickly Pay for Itself**

One service bill – the cost of parts and labor – can easily exceed the price of your Ford Extended Service Plan. With Ford ESP you minimize your risk for unexpected repair bills and rising repair costs.

### **Up to 1,000+ Covered Vehicle Components**

There are four core Extended Service Plans with different levels of coverage. Ask your authorized dealer for details.

1. PremiumCARE - Our most comprehensive coverage. With over 1,000 covered components, this plan is so complete that we generally only discuss what's not covered.
2. ExtraCARE - Covers 113 components, and includes many high-tech items.
3. BaseCARE - Covers 84 components.
4. PowertrainCARE - Covers 29 critical components.

Ford Extended Service Plan is honored by all authorized Ford dealers in the U.S., Canada and Mexico. It is the extended service plan authorized and backed by Ford Motor Company.

That means you get:

- Reliable, quality service at any Ford or Lincoln dealership
- Repairs performed by factory trained technicians, using genuine parts

### **Rental Car Reimbursement**

#### ***1st day Rental Benefit***

You take advantage of replacement transportation if your vehicle is at your authorized dealer for same day covered repairs.

#### ***Extended Rental Benefits***

If your vehicle is kept overnight for covered repairs, you are eligible for rental car coverage, including bumper to bumper warranty repairs, and Field Service Actions.

### **Roadside Assistance**

Exclusive 24/7 roadside assistance, including:

- Towing, flat-tire change and battery jump starts
- Out of fuel and lock-out assistance.
- Travel expense reimbursement for lodging, meals and rental car.
- Destination assistance for taxi, shuttle, rental car coverage and emergency transportation.

### **Transferable Coverage**

If you sell your vehicle before your Ford Extended Service Plan coverage expires, you can transfer any remaining coverage to the new owner. Whenever you sell your vehicle, prospective buyers may have a higher degree of confidence that vehicle was properly maintained with Ford ESP, thereby improving resale value.

# Extended Service Plan (ESP)

---

## Avoid the Rising Cost of Properly Maintaining Your Vehicle!

Ford Extended Service Plan also offers a Premium Maintenance Plan that covers all scheduled maintenance, and selected wear items. The coverage is prepaid, so you never have to worry about affording your vehicle's maintenance. It covers regular checkups, routine inspections, preventive care and replacement of select items that require periodic attention for normal wear:

- Windshield wiper blades.
- Spark plugs.
- The clutch disc.
- Brake pads and linings.
- Shock absorbers.
- Struts.
- Engine Belts.
- Engine coolant hoses, clamps and o-rings.
- Diesel exhaust fluid replenishment.

## Interest Free Finance Options Available

Take advantage of our interest free installment payment plan. Just a 10% down payment will provide you with an affordable, no interest, no fee payment program allowing you all the security and benefits Ford ESP has to offer while paying over time. You are pre-approved with no credit checks, no hassles! To learn more, call our Ford ESP specialists at 800-367-3377.

Ford ESP  
P.O. Box 321067  
Detroit, MI 48232

## EXTENDED SERVICE PLAN (CANADA ONLY)

You can get more protection for your vehicle by purchasing a Ford Extended Service Plan. Ford Extended Service Plan is the only service contract backed by Ford Motor Company of Canada, Limited. Depending on the plan you purchase, Ford Extended Service Plan provides benefits such as:

- Rental reimbursement.
- Coverage for certain maintenance and wear items.
- Protection against repair costs after your New Vehicle Limited Warranty Coverage expires.
- Roadside Assistance benefits.

There are several Ford Extended Service Plans available in various time, distance and deductible combinations. Each plan is tailored to fit your own driving needs, including reimbursement for towing and rental. When you purchase Ford Extended Service Plan, you receive added peace-of-mind protection throughout Canada, the United States and Mexico, provided by a network of participating authorized Ford Motor Company dealers.

**Note:** *Repairs performed outside of Canada, the United States and Mexico are not eligible for Ford Extended Service Plan coverage.*

This information is subject to change. For more information, visit your local Ford of Canada dealer or [www.ford.ca](http://www.ford.ca) to find the Ford Extended Service Plan that is right for you.

# Scheduled Maintenance

---

## GENERAL MAINTENANCE INFORMATION

### Why Maintain Your Vehicle?

Carefully following the maintenance schedule helps protect against major repair expenses resulting from neglect or inadequate maintenance and may help to increase the value of your vehicle when you sell or trade it. Keep all receipts for completed maintenance with your vehicle.

We have established regular maintenance intervals for your vehicle based upon rigorous testing. It is important that you have your vehicle serviced at the proper times. These intervals serve two purposes; one is to maintain the reliability of your vehicle and the second is to keep your cost of owning your vehicle down.

It is your responsibility to have all scheduled maintenance performed and to make sure that the materials used meet the specifications identified in this owner's manual. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 268).

Failure to perform scheduled maintenance invalidates warranty coverage on parts affected by the lack of maintenance.

### Why Maintain Your Vehicle at Your Dealership?

#### Factory-Trained Technicians

Service technicians participate in extensive factory-sponsored certification training to help them become experts on the operation of your vehicle. Ask your dealership about the training and certification their technicians have received.

### Genuine Ford and Motorcraft® Replacement Parts

Dealerships stock Ford, Motorcraft and Ford-authorized branded re-manufactured replacement parts. These parts meet or exceed our specifications. Parts installed at your dealership carry a nationwide 24-month or unlimited mile (kilometer) parts and labor limited warranty.

If you do not use Ford authorized parts they may not meet our specifications and depending on the part, it could affect emissions compliance.

### Convenience

Many dealerships have extended evening and Saturday hours to make your service visit more convenient and they offer one stop shopping. They can perform any services that are required on your vehicle, from general maintenance to collision repairs.

**Note:** *Not all dealers have extended hours or body shops. Please contact your dealer for details.*

### Protecting Your Investment

Maintenance is an investment that pays dividends in the form of improved reliability, durability and resale value. To maintain the proper performance of your vehicle and its emission control systems, make sure you have scheduled maintenance performed at the designated intervals.

Your vehicle is equipped with the Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor system, which displays a message in the information display at the proper oil change interval. This interval may be up to one year or 10000 miles (16000 kilometers).

# Scheduled Maintenance

---

When the oil change message appears in the information display, it is time for an oil change. Make sure you perform the oil change within two weeks or 500 miles (800 kilometers) of the message appearing. Make sure you reset the Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor after each oil change. See (page 87).

If your information display resets prematurely or becomes inoperative, you should perform the oil change interval at six months or 5000 miles (8000 kilometers) from your last oil change. Never exceed one year or 10000 miles (16000 kilometers) between oil change intervals.

Your vehicle is very sophisticated and built with multiple, complex, performance systems. Every manufacturer develops these systems using different specifications and performance features. That is why it is important to rely upon your dealership to properly diagnose and repair your vehicle.

Ford Motor Company has recommended maintenance intervals for various parts and component systems based upon engineering testing. Ford Motor Company relies upon this testing to determine the most appropriate mileage for replacement of oils and fluids to protect your vehicle at the lowest overall cost to you and recommends against maintenance schedules that deviate from the scheduled maintenance information.

We strongly recommend the use of only genuine Ford, Motorcraft or Ford-authorized re-manufactured replacement parts engineered for your vehicle.

## Additives and Chemicals

This owner's manual and the Ford Workshop Manual list the recommended additives and chemicals for your vehicle. We do not recommend using chemicals or additives not approved by us as part of your vehicle's normal maintenance. Please consult your warranty information.

## Oils, Fluids and Flushing

In many cases, fluid discoloration is a normal operating characteristic and, by itself, does not necessarily indicate a concern or that the fluid needs to be changed. However, a qualified expert, such as the factory-trained technicians at your dealership, should inspect discolored fluids that also show signs of overheating or foreign material contamination immediately.

Make sure to change your vehicle's oils and fluids at the specified intervals or in conjunction with a repair. Flushing is a viable way to change fluid for many vehicle sub-systems during scheduled maintenance. It is critical that systems are flushed only with new fluid that is the same as that required to fill and operate the system or using a Ford-approved flushing chemical.

## Owner Checks and Services

Make sure you perform the following basic maintenance checks and inspections every month or at six-month intervals.

# Scheduled Maintenance

---

<b>Check every month</b>
Engine oil level.
Function of all interior and exterior lights.
Tires (including spare) for wear and proper pressure.
Windshield washer fluid level.

<b>Check every six months</b>
Battery connections. Clean if necessary.
Body and door drain holes for obstructions. Clean if necessary.
Cooling system fluid level and coolant strength.
Door weatherstrips for wear. Lubricate if necessary.
Hinges, latches and outside locks for proper operation. Lubricate if necessary.
Parking brake for proper operation.
Safety belts and seat latches for wear and function.
Safety warning lamps (brake, ABS, airbag and safety belt) for operation.
Washer spray and wiper operation. Clean or replace blades as necessary.

## Multi-Point Inspection

In order to keep your vehicle running right, it is important to have the systems on your vehicle checked regularly. This can help identify potential issues and prevent major problems. We recommend having the following multi-point inspection performed at every scheduled maintenance interval to help make sure your vehicle keeps running great.

# Scheduled Maintenance

Multi-Point inspection	
Accessory drive belt(s)	Hazard warning system operation
Battery performance	Horn operation
Engine air filter	Radiator, cooler, heater and air conditioning hoses
Exhaust system	Suspension components for leaks or damage
Exterior lamps operation	Steering and linkage
Fluid levels*; fill if necessary	Tires (including spare) for wear and proper pressure**
For oil and fluid leaks	Windshield for cracks, chips or pits
Half-shaft dust boots	Washer spray and wiper operation

\* Brake, coolant recovery reservoir, automatic transmission and window washer

\*\* If your vehicle is equipped with a temporary mobility kit, check the tire sealant expiration Use By date on the canister. Replace as needed.

Be sure to ask your dealership service advisor or technician about the multi-point vehicle inspection. It is a comprehensive way to perform a thorough inspection of your vehicle. Your checklist gives you immediate feedback on the overall condition of your vehicle.

## NORMAL SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE

### Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor™

Your vehicle is equipped with an Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor that determines when you should change the engine oil based on how your vehicle is used. By using several important factors in its calculations, the monitor helps reduce the cost of owning your vehicle and reduces environmental waste at the same time.

This means you do not have to remember to change the oil on a mileage-based schedule. Your vehicle lets you know when an oil change is due by displaying a message in the information display.

The following table provides examples of vehicle use and its impact on oil change intervals. It is a guideline only. Actual oil change intervals depend on several factors and generally decrease with severity of use.

# Scheduled Maintenance

<b>When to expect the message prompting you to change your oil</b>	
<b>Interval</b>	<b>Vehicle use and example</b>
7500-10000 miles (12000-16000 km)	<b>Normal</b>
	Normal commuting with highway driving No, or moderate, load or towing Flat to moderately hilly roads No extended idling
5000-7499 miles (8000-11999 km)	<b>Severe</b>
	Moderate to heavy load or towing Mountainous or off-road conditions Extended idling Extended hot or cold operation
3000-4999 miles (4800-7999 km)	<b>Extreme</b>
	Maximum load or towing Extreme hot or cold operation

## Normal Maintenance Intervals

<b>At every oil change interval as indicated by the information display*</b>
Change engine oil and filter.**
Rotate the tires.
Perform a multi-point inspection (recommended).
Inspect the automatic transmission fluid level. Consult your dealer for requirements.
Inspect the brake pads, rotors, hoses and parking brake.
Inspect the engine cooling system strength and hoses.
Inspect the exhaust system and heat shields.
Inspect the rear axle and U-joints (AWD).
Inspect the half-shaft boots.
Inspect the steering linkage, ball joints, suspension, tire-rod ends, driveshaft and U-joints.

# Scheduled Maintenance

**At every oil change interval as indicated by the information display\***

Inspect the tires, tire wear and measure the tread depth.
Inspect the wheels and related components for abnormal noise, wear, looseness or drag.

\* Do not exceed one year or 10000 miles (16000 kilometers) between service intervals.

\*\* Reset the Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor after engine oil and filter changes. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 218).

**Other maintenance items<sup>1</sup>**

Every 20000 miles (32000 km)	Replace cabin air filter.
Every 30000 miles (48000 km)	Replace engine air filter.
At 100000 miles (160000 km)	Change engine coolant. <sup>2</sup>
Every 100000 miles (160000 km)	Replace spark plugs.
	Inspect accessory drive belt(s). <sup>3</sup>
Every 150000 miles (240000 km)	Change automatic transmission fluid.
	Replace accessory drive belt(s). <sup>4</sup>
	Replace timing belt (1.6L engine).
	Change the PTU and rear axle fluid. See <b>Special Operating Conditions Scheduled Maintenance</b> (page 350).

<sup>1</sup> Perform these maintenance items within 3000 miles (4800 kilometers) of the last engine oil and filter change. Do not exceed the designated distance for the interval.

<sup>2</sup> Initial replacement at six years or 100000 miles (160000 kilometers), then every three years or 50000 miles (80000 kilometers).

<sup>3</sup> After initial inspection, inspect every other oil change until replaced.

<sup>4</sup> If not replaced within the last 100000 miles (160000 kilometers).



# Scheduled Maintenance

## SPECIAL OPERATING CONDITIONS SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE

If you operate your vehicle **primarily** in any of the following conditions, you need to perform extra maintenance as indicated. If you operate your vehicle **occasionally** under any of these conditions, it is not necessary to perform the extra maintenance. For specific recommendations, see your dealership service advisor or technician.

Perform the services shown in the following tables when specified or within 3000 miles (4800 kilometers) of the message appearing in your information display, prompting you to change your oil.

- **Example 1:** The message comes on at 28751 miles (46270 kilometers). Perform the 30000-mile (48000-kilometer) automatic transmission fluid replacement.
- **Example 2:** The message has **not** come on, but the odometer reads 30000 miles (48000 kilometers) (for example, the Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor was reset at 25000 miles [40000 kilometers]). Perform the engine air filter replacement.

Towing a trailer or using a car-top carrier	
As required	Change engine oil and filter as indicated by the information display and perform services listed in the Normal Scheduled Maintenance chart.
Inspect frequently, service as required	Inspect rear axle and U-joints (AWD).
Every 30000 miles (48000 km)	Change automatic transmission fluid.
	Change the PTU and rear axle fluid (AWD). See Axle and PTU Maintenance under <b>Exceptions</b> .
Every 60000 miles (96000 km)	Replace spark plugs.

Extensive idling or low-speed driving for long distances, as in heavy commercial use	
As required	Change engine oil and filter as indicated by the information display and perform services listed in the Normal Scheduled Maintenance chart.
Inspect frequently, service as required	Replace cabin air filter.*
	Replace engine air filter.
Every 30000 miles (48000 km)	Change automatic transmission fluid.

# Scheduled Maintenance

<b>Extensive idling or low-speed driving for long distances, as in heavy commercial use</b>	
	Change the PTU and rear axle fluid (AWD). See Axle and PTU Maintenance under <b>Exceptions</b> .
Every 60000 miles (96000 km)	Replace spark plugs.

\* This is an optional feature.

<b>Operating in dusty or sandy conditions (such as unpaved or dusty roads)</b>	
Inspect frequently, service as required	Replace cabin air filter.*
	Replace engine air filter.
Every 5000 miles (8000 km)	Inspect the wheels and related components for abnormal noise, wear, looseness or drag.
	Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth.
Every 5000 miles (8000 km) or six months	Change engine oil and filter.**
	Perform multi-point inspection.
Every 30000 miles (48000 km)	Change automatic transmission fluid.
	Change the PTU and rear axle fluid (AWD). See Axle and PTU Maintenance under <b>Exceptions</b> .

\* This is an optional feature.

\*\*Reset your Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor after engine oil and filter changes. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 218).

<b>Exclusive use of E85 (flex fuel vehicles only)</b>	
Every oil change	If ran exclusively on E85, fill the fuel tank full with regular unleaded fuel.

## Exceptions

There are several exceptions to the Normal Schedule:

# Scheduled Maintenance

**Rear Axle and PTU Maintenance:** The Power Transfer Unit (PTU) and rear axle (AWD only) in your vehicle does not require any normal scheduled maintenance unless the vehicle has experienced extended periods of extreme/severe duty cycle driving or the PTU and/or the axle has been submerged in water. Checking the PTU and rear axle fluid is not necessary unless the unit shows signs of leakage. Contact an authorized dealer for service.

**California fuel filter replacement:** If you register your vehicle in California, the California Air Resources Board has determined that the failure to perform this maintenance item does not nullify the emission warranty or limit recall liability before the completion of your vehicle's useful life. Ford Motor Company, however, urges you to have all recommended maintenance services performed at the specified intervals and to record all vehicle service.

**Hot climate oil change intervals:** Vehicles operating in the Middle East, North Africa, Sub-Saharan Africa or locations with similar climates using an American Petroleum Institute (API) Certified for Gasoline Engines (Certification mark) oil of SM or SN quality, the normal oil change interval is 5000 miles (8000 kilometers).

If the available API SM or SN oils are not available, then the oil change interval is 3000 miles (4800 kilometers).

**Engine air filter and cabin air filter replacement:** The life of the engine air filter and cabin air filter is dependent on exposure to dusty and dirty conditions. Vehicles operated in these conditions require frequent inspection and replacement of the engine air filter and cabin air filter.

## SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE RECORD

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	<p>Dealer stamp</p>
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

# Scheduled Maintenance

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	Dealer stamp
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	Dealer stamp
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

# Scheduled Maintenance

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	Dealer stamp
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	Dealer stamp
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

# Scheduled Maintenance

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	Dealer stamp
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	Dealer stamp
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

# Scheduled Maintenance

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	Dealer stamp
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	Dealer stamp
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

# Scheduled Maintenance

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	Dealer stamp
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	Dealer stamp
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	



# Scheduled Maintenance

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	Dealer stamp
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	Dealer stamp
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

# Scheduled Maintenance

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	Dealer stamp
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	Dealer stamp
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

# Scheduled Maintenance

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	Dealer stamp
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	Dealer stamp
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

# Scheduled Maintenance

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	Dealer stamp
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	Dealer stamp
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

# Scheduled Maintenance

---

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	Dealer stamp
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

# Appendices

## END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT

### VEHICLE SOFTWARE END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT (EULA)

- You ("You" or "Your" as applicable) have acquired a vehicle having several devices, including SYNC ® and various control modules, ("DEVICES") that include software licensed or owned by Ford Motor Company and its affiliates ("FORD MOTOR COMPANY"). Those software products of FORD MOTOR COMPANY origin, as well as associated media, printed materials, and "online" or electronic documentation ("SOFTWARE") are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. All rights reserved.
- The SOFTWARE may interface with and/or communicate with, or may be later upgraded to interface with and/or communicate with additional software and/or systems provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY.

**IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO THIS END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT ("EULA") DO NOT USE THE DEVICES OR COPY THE SOFTWARE. ANY USE OF THE SOFTWARE, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO USE ON THE DEVICES, WILL CONSTITUTE YOUR AGREEMENT TO THIS EULA (OR RATIFICATION OF ANY PREVIOUS CONSENT).**

**GRANT OF SOFTWARE LICENSE:** This EULA grants you the following license:

- You may use the SOFTWARE as installed on the DEVICES and as otherwise interfacing with systems and/or services provide by or through FORD MOTOR COMPANY or its third party software and service providers.

## Description of Other Rights and Limitations

- **Speech Recognition:** If the SOFTWARE includes speech recognition component(s), you should understand that speech recognition is an inherently statistical process and that recognition errors are inherent in the process. Neither FORD MOTOR COMPANY nor its suppliers shall be liable for any damages arising out of errors in the speech recognition process. It is your responsibility to monitor any speech recognition functions included in the system.
- **Limitations on Reverse Engineering, Decompilation and Disassembly:** You may not reverse engineer, decompile, translate, disassemble or attempt to discover any source code or underlying ideas or algorithms of the SOFTWARE nor permit others to reverse engineer, decompile or disassemble the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation or to the extent as may be permitted by the licensing terms governing use of any open source components included with the SOFTWARE.
- **Limitations on Distributing, Copying, Modifying and Creating Derivative Works:** You may not distribute, copy, make modifications to or create derivative works based on the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation or to the extent as may be permitted by the licensing terms governing use of any open source components included with the SOFTWARE.

# Appendices

---

- **Single EULA:** The end user documentation for the DEVICES and related systems and services may contain multiple EULAs, such as multiple translations and/or multiple media versions (e.g., in the user documentation and in the software). Even if you receive multiple EULAs, you are licensed to use only one (1) copy of the SOFTWARE.
- **SOFTWARE Transfer:** You may permanently transfer your rights under this EULA only as part of a sale or transfer of the DEVICES, provided you retain no copies, you transfer all of the SOFTWARE (including all component parts, the media and printed materials, any upgrades, and, if applicable, the Certificate(s) of Authenticity), and the recipient agrees to the terms of this EULA. If the SOFTWARE is an upgrade, any transfer must include all prior versions of the SOFTWARE.
- **Termination:** Without prejudice to any other rights, FORD MOTOR COMPANY may terminate this EULA if you fail to comply with the terms and conditions of this EULA.
- **Internet-Based Services Components:** The SOFTWARE may contain components that enable and facilitate the use of certain Internet-based services. You acknowledge and agree that FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, its affiliates and/or its designated agent may automatically check the version of the SOFTWARE and/or its components that you are utilizing and may provide upgrades or supplements to the SOFTWARE that may be automatically downloaded to your DEVICES.
- **Additional Software/Services:** The SOFTWARE may permit FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, its affiliates and/or its designated agent to provide or make available to you SOFTWARE updates, supplements, add-on components, or Internet-based services components of the SOFTWARE after the date you obtain your initial copy of the SOFTWARE ("Supplemental Components".) SOFTWARE updates may cause you to incur additional charges from your wireless service provider. If FORD MOTOR COMPANY or third party software and services suppliers provide or make available to you Supplemental Components and no other EULA terms are provided along with the Supplemental Components, then the terms of this EULA shall apply. FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent reserve the right to discontinue without liability any Internet-based services provided to you or made available to you through the use of the SOFTWARE.

# Appendices

---

- **Links to Third Party Sites:** The SOFTWARE may provide you with the ability to link to third party sites. The third party sites are not under the control of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent. Neither FORD MOTOR COMPANY nor its affiliates nor its designated agent are responsible for (i) the contents of any third party sites, any links contained in third party sites, or any changes or updates to third party sites, or (ii) webcasting or any other form of transmission received from any third party sites. If the SOFTWARE provides links to third party sites, those links are provided to you only as a convenience, and the inclusion of any link does not imply an endorsement of the third party site by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent.
- **Obligation to Drive Responsibly:** You recognize your obligation to drive responsibly and keep attention on the road. You will read and abide with the DEVICES operating instructions particularly as they pertain to safety and you agree to assume any risk associated with the use of the DEVICES.

## **UPGRADES AND RECOVERY MEDIA:**

If the SOFTWARE is provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY separate from the DEVICES on media such as a ROM chip, CD ROM disk(s) or via web download or other means, and is labeled "For Upgrade Purposes Only" or "For Recovery Purposes Only" you may install one (1) copy of such SOFTWARE onto the DEVICES as a replacement copy for the existing SOFTWARE, and use it in accordance with this EULA, including any additional EULA terms accompanying the upgrade SOFTWARE.

## **INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS:**

All title and intellectual property rights in and to the SOFTWARE (including but not limited to any images, photographs, animations, video, audio, music, text and "applets" incorporated into the SOFTWARE), the accompanying printed materials, and any copies of the SOFTWARE, are owned by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, or its affiliates or suppliers. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. You may not copy the printed materials accompanying the SOFTWARE. All title and intellectual property rights in and to the content which may be accessed through use of the SOFTWARE is the property of the respective content owner and may be protected by applicable copyright or other intellectual property laws and treaties. This EULA grants you no rights to use such content outside its intended use. All rights not specifically granted under this EULA are reserved by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates, and third party software and service providers and suppliers. Use of any on-line services which may be accessed through the SOFTWARE may be governed by the respective terms of use relating to such services. If this SOFTWARE contains documentation that is provided only in electronic form, you may print one copy of such electronic documentation.

**EXPORT RESTRICTIONS:** You acknowledge that the SOFTWARE is subject to U.S. and European Union export jurisdiction. You agree to comply with all applicable international and national laws that apply to the SOFTWARE, including the U.S. Export Administration Regulations, as well as end-user, end-use and destination restrictions issued by U.S. and other governments.



# Appendices

---

**TRADEMARKS:** This EULA does not grant you any rights in connection with any trademarks or service marks of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates, and third party software and service providers.

**PRODUCT SUPPORT:** Please refer to FORD MOTOR COMPANY instructions provided in the documentation for the DEVICES product support, such as the vehicle owner guide.

Should you have any questions concerning this EULA, or if you desire to contact FORD MOTOR COMPANY for any other reason, please refer to the address provided in the documentation for the DEVICES.

**No Liability for Certain Damages:** EXCEPT AS PROHIBITED BY LAW, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR SERVICES SUPPLIERS, AND THEIR AFFILIATES SHALL HAVE NO LIABILITY FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES ARISING FROM OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THE SOFTWARE. THIS LIMITATION SHALL APPLY EVEN IF ANY REMEDY FAILS OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE. THERE ARE NO WARRANTIES OTHER THAN THOSE THAT MAY BE EXPRESSLY PROVIDED FOR YOUR NEW VEHICLE.

## **SYNC® Automotive Important Safety Information Read and follow instructions:**

- Before using your SYNC® system, read and follow all instructions and safety information provided in this end user manual ("Owner Guide".) Not following precautions found in the Owner Guide can lead to an accident or other serious injuries.

## General Operation

- **Voice Command Control:** Certain functions within the SYNC® system may be accomplished using voice commands. Using voice commands while driving helps you to operate the system without removing your hands from the wheel or eyes from the road.
- **Prolonged Views of Screen:** Do not access any function requiring a prolonged view of the screen while you are driving. Pull over in a safe and legal manner before attempting to access a function of the system requiring prolonged attention.
- **Volume Setting:** Do not raise the volume excessively. Keep the volume at a level where you can still hear outside traffic and emergency signals while driving. Driving while unable to hear these sounds could cause an accident.
- **Navigation Features:** Any navigation features included in the system are intended to provide turn by turn instructions to get you to a desired destination. Please make certain all persons using this system carefully read and follow instructions and safety information fully.
- **Distraction Hazard:** Any navigation features may require manual (non-verbal) setup. Attempting to perform such set-up or insert data while driving can distract your attention and could cause an accident or other serious injury. Stop the vehicle in a safe and legal manner before attempting these operations.
- **Let Your Judgment Prevail:** Any navigation features are provided only as an aid. Make your driving decisions based on your observations of local conditions and existing traffic regulations. Any such feature is not a

# Appendices

---

substitute for your personal judgment. Any route suggestions made by this system should never replace any local traffic regulations or your personal judgment or knowledge of safe driving practices.

- **Route Safety:** Do not follow the route suggestions if doing so would result in an unsafe or illegal maneuver, if you would be placed in an unsafe situation, or if you would be directed into an area that you consider unsafe. The driver is ultimately responsible for the safe operation of the vehicle and therefore, must evaluate whether it is safe to follow the suggested directions.
- **Potential Map Inaccuracy:** Maps used by this system may be inaccurate because of changes in roads, traffic controls or driving conditions. Always use good judgment and common sense when following the suggested routes.
- **Emergency Services:** Do not rely on any navigation features included in the system to route you to emergency services. Ask local authorities or an emergency services operator for these locations. Not all emergency services such as police, fire stations, hospitals and clinics are likely to be contained in the map database for such navigation features.

Your Responsibilities and Assumptions of Risk

- You agree to each of the following:(a) Any use of the SOFTWARE while driving an automobile or other vehicle in violation of applicable law or otherwise driving in an unsafe manner presents a significant risk of distracted driving and should not be attempted under any circumstances;(b) Use of the SOFTWARE at excessive volume poses a significant risk of hearing damage and should not be attempted under any circumstances;(c) The SOFTWARE may not be compatible with new or different versions of an operating system, third party software, or third party services, and the SOFTWARE may potentially cause a critical failure of an operating system, third party software, or third party service.(d) Any third party service accessed by or third party software used with the SOFTWARE (i) may charge an additional fee for access, (ii) may not work correctly, on an uninterrupted basis, or error free, (iii) may change streaming formats or discontinue operation, (iv) may contain adult, profane or offensive content; and (v) may contain inaccurate, false or misleading traffic, weather, financial or safety information or other content; and (e) Use of the SOFTWARE may cause you to incur additional charges from your wireless service provider (WSP) and any data or minute calculators that may be included in the software program are for reference only, are not warranted in any way and should not be relied upon in anyway.
- When using the SOFTWARE, you agree to be responsible for and assume the entire risk to the items set forth in Section (a) – (e) above.

# Appendices

---

## Disclaimer of Warranty

YOU EXPRESSLY ACKNOWLEDGE AND AGREE THAT USE OF THE DEVICES AND SOFTWARE IS AT YOUR SOLE RISK AND THAT THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO SATISFACTORY QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, COMPATIBILITY, ACCURACY AND EFFORT IS WITH YOU. TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, THE SOFTWARE AND ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES ARE PROVIDED "AS IS" AND "AS AVAILABLE", WITH ALL FAULTS AND WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, AND FORD MOTOR COMPANY HEREBY DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS WITH RESPECT TO THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, AND THIRD-PARTY SERVICES, EITHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES AND/OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, OF SATISFACTORY QUALITY, OF FITNESS FOR AN PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OF ACCURACY, OF QUIET ENJOYMENT, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD-PARTY RIGHTS. FORD MOTOR COMPANY DOES NOT WARRANT (a) AGAINST INTERFERENCE WITH YOUR ENJOYMENT OF THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES, (b) THAT THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL MEET YOUR REQUIREMENTS, (c) THAT THE OPERATION OF THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED OR ERROR-FREE, (d) OR THAT DEFECTS IN THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL BE CORRECTED. NO ORAL OR WRITTEN INFORMATION OR ADVICE GIVEN BY FORD MOTOR COMPANY OR ITS AUTHORIZED REPRESENTATIVE SHALL

CREATE A WARRANTY. SHOULD THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES PROVE DEFECTIVE, YOU ASSUME THE ENTIRE COST OF ALL NECESSARY SERVICING, REPAIR OR CORRECTION. SOME JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE DISCLAIMER OF IMPLIED WARRANTIES OR LIMITATIONS ON APPLICABLE STATUTORY RIGHTS OF A CONSUMER, SO THE ABOVE DISCLAIMER MAY NOT FULLY APPLY TO YOU. THE SOLE WARRANTY PROVIDED BY FORD MOTOR COMPANY SHALL BE FOUND IN THE WARRANTY INFORMATION INCLUDING WITH YOUR OWNER GUIDE. TO THE EXTENT THAT THERE IS ANY CONFLICT BETWEEN THE TERMS OF THIS SECTION AND THE WARRANTY BOOKLET, THE WARRANTY BOOKLET SHALL CONTROL.

## Applicable Law, Venue, Jurisdiction

- The laws of the State of Michigan govern this EULA and Your use of the SOFTWARE. Your use of the SOFTWARE may also be subject to other local, state, national, or international laws. Any litigation arising out of or related to this EULA shall be brought and maintained exclusively in a court of the State of Michigan located in Wayne County or in the United States District Court for the Eastern District of Michigan. You hereby consent to submit to the personal jurisdiction of a court in the State of Michigan located in Wayne County and the United States District Court for the Eastern District of Michigan for any dispute arising out of or relating to this EULA.

# Appendices

## **Binding Arbitration and Class Action Waiver**

**(a) Application.** This Section applies to any dispute EXCEPT IT DOES NOT INCLUDE A DISPUTE RELATING TO COPYRIGHT INFRINGEMENT, OR TO THE ENFORCEMENT OR VALIDITY OF YOUR, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, OR ANY OF FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S LICENSORS' INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS. Dispute means any dispute, action, or other controversy between You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY, other than the exceptions listed above, concerning the SOFTWARE (including its price) or this EULA, whether in contract, warranty, tort, statute, regulation, ordinance, or any other legal or equitable basis.

**(b) Notice of Dispute.** In the event of a Dispute, You or FORD MOTOR COMPANY must give the other a "Notice of Dispute", which is a written statement of the name, address, and contact information of the party giving it, the facts giving rise to the dispute, and the relief requested. You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY will attempt to resolve any dispute through informal negotiation within 60 days from the date the Notice of Dispute is sent. After 60 days, You or FORD MOTOR COMPANY may commence arbitration.

**(c) Small claims court.** You may also litigate any dispute in small claims court in your county of residence or FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S principal place of business, if the dispute meets all requirements to be heard in the small claims court. You may litigate in small claims court whether or not You negotiated informally first.

**(d) Binding arbitration.** If You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY, do not resolve any dispute by informal negotiation or in small claims court, any other effort to resolve the dispute will be conducted exclusively by binding arbitration. You are giving up

the right to litigate (or participate in as a party or class member) all disputes in court before a judge or jury. Instead, all disputes will be resolved before a neutral arbitrator, whose decision will be final except for a limited right of appeal under the Federal Arbitration Act. Any court with jurisdiction over the parties may enforce the arbitrator's award.

**(e) Class action waiver.** Any proceedings to resolve or litigate any dispute in any forum will be conducted solely on an individual basis. Neither you nor FORD MOTOR COMPANY, will seek to have any dispute heard as a class action, as a private attorney general action, or in any other proceeding in which any party acts or proposes to act in a representative capacity. No arbitration or proceeding will be combined with another without the prior written consent of all parties to all affected arbitrations or proceedings.

**(f) Arbitration procedure.** Any arbitration will be conducted by the American Arbitration Association (the "AAA"), under its Commercial Arbitration Rules. If You are an individual and use the SOFTWARE for personal or vehicle use, or if the value of the dispute is \$75,000 or less whether or not You are an individual or how You use the SOFTWARE, the AAA Supplementary Procedures for Consumer-Related Disputes will also apply. To commence arbitration, submit a Commercial Arbitration Rules Demand for Arbitration form to the AAA. You may request a telephonic or in-person hearing by following the AAA rules. In a dispute involving \$10,000 or less, any hearing will be telephonic unless the arbitrator finds good cause to hold an in-person hearing instead. For more information, see [adr.org](http://adr.org) or call 1-800-778-7879. You agree to commence arbitration only in your county of residence or FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S principal place of business. The arbitrator

# Appendices

may award the same damages to You individually as a court could. The arbitrator may award declaratory or injunctive relief only to You individually, and only to the extent required to satisfy Your individual claim. **Arbitration fees and incentives.**

- i. Disputes involving \$75,000 or less. FORD MOTOR COMPANY will promptly reimburse your filing fees and pay the AAA's and arbitrator's fees and expenses. If you reject FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S last written settlement offer made before the arbitrator was appointed ("last written offer"), your dispute goes all the way to an arbitrator's decision (called an "award"), and the arbitrator awards you more than the last written offer, FORD MOTOR COMPANY will give you three incentives: (1) pay the greater of the award or \$1,000; (2) pay twice your reasonable attorney's fees, if any; and (3) reimburse any expenses (including expert witness fees and costs) that your attorney reasonably accrues for investigating, preparing, and pursuing your claim in arbitration. The arbitrator will determine the amounts.
- ii. Disputes involving more than \$75,000. The AAA rules will govern payment of filing fees and the AAA's and arbitrator's fees and expenses.
- iii. Disputes involving any amount. In any arbitration you commence, FORD MOTOR COMPANY will seek its AAA or arbitrator's fees and expenses, or Your filing fees if reimbursed, only if the arbitrator finds the arbitration frivolous or brought for an improper purpose. In any arbitration FORD MOTOR COMPANY commences, it will pay all filing, AAA, and arbitrator's fees and expenses. It will not seek its attorney's fees or expenses from you in any arbitration. Fees and expenses are not counted in determining how much a dispute involves.

**(h) Claims or disputes must be filed within one year.** To the extent permitted by law, any claim or dispute under this EULA to which this Section applies must be filed within one year in small claims court (Section c) or in arbitration (Section d). The one-year period begins when the claim or dispute first could be filed. If such a claim or dispute is not filed within one year, it is permanently barred.

**(i) Severability.** If the class action waiver (Section e) is found to be illegal or unenforceable as to all or some parts of a dispute, then that portion of Section e will not apply to those parts. Instead, those parts will be severed and proceed in a court of law, with the remaining parts proceeding in arbitration. If any other provision of that portion Section e is found to be illegal or unenforceable, that provision will be severed with the remainder of Section e remaining in full force and effect.

## Telenav Software End User License Agreement

Please read these terms and conditions carefully before you use the TeleNav Software. Your use of the TeleNav Software indicates that you accept these terms and conditions. If you do not accept these terms and conditions, do not break the seal of the package, launch, or otherwise use the TeleNav Software. TeleNav may revise this Agreement and the privacy policy at any time, with or <http://www.telenav.com> from time to time to review the then current version of this Agreement and of the privacy policy.

### 1. Safe and Lawful Use

You acknowledge that devoting attention to the TeleNav Software may pose a risk of injury or death to you and others in situations that otherwise require your undivided attention, and you therefore agree to comply with the following when using the TeleNav Software:

# Appendices

---

(a) observe all traffic laws and otherwise drive safely;

(b) use your own personal judgment while driving. If you feel that a route suggested by the TeleNav Software instructs you to perform an unsafe or illegal maneuver, places you in an unsafe situation, or directs you into an area that you consider to be unsafe, do not follow such instructions;

(c) do not input destinations, or otherwise manipulate the TeleNav Software, unless your vehicle is stationary and parked;

(d) do not use the TeleNav Software for any illegal, unauthorized, unintended, unsafe, hazardous, or unlawful purposes, or in any manner inconsistent with this Agreement;

(e) arrange all GPS and wireless devices and cables necessary for use of the TeleNav Software in a secure manner in your vehicle so that they will not interfere with your driving and will not prevent the operation of any safety device (such as an airbag).

You agree to indemnify and hold TeleNav harmless against all claims resulting from any dangerous or otherwise inappropriate use of the TeleNav Software in any moving vehicle, including as a result of your failure to comply with the directions above.

## 2. Account Information

You agree: (a) when registering the TeleNav Software, to provide TeleNav with true, accurate, current, and complete information about yourself, and (b) to inform TeleNav promptly of any changes to such information, and to keep it true, accurate, current and complete.

## 3. Software License

- Subject to your compliance with the terms of this Agreement, TeleNav hereby grants to you a personal, non-exclusive, non-transferable license (except as expressly permitted below in connection with your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software license), without the right to sublicense, to use the TeleNav Software (in object code form only) in order to access and use the TeleNav Software. This license shall terminate upon any termination or expiration of this Agreement. You agree that you will use the TeleNav Software only for your personal business or leisure purposes, and not to provide commercial navigation services to other parties.

### 3.1 License Limitations

- **(a)** reverse engineer, decompile, disassemble, translate, modify, alter or otherwise change the TeleNav Software or any part thereof; **(b)** attempt to derive the source code, audio library or structure of the TeleNav Software without the prior express written consent of TeleNav; **(c)** remove from the TeleNav Software, or alter, any of TeleNav's or its suppliers' trademarks, trade names, logos, patent or copyright notices, or other notices or markings; **(d)** distribute, sublicense or otherwise transfer the TeleNav Software to others, except as part of your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software; or **(e)** use the TeleNav Software in any manner that
  - i. infringes the intellectual property or proprietary rights, rights of publicity or privacy or other rights of any party,

# Appendices

---

ii. violates any law, statute, ordinance or regulation, including but not limited to laws and regulations related to spamming, privacy, consumer and child protection, obscenity or defamation, or

iii. is harmful, threatening, abusive, harassing, tortuous, defamatory, vulgar, obscene, libelous, or otherwise objectionable; and (f) lease, rent out, or otherwise permit unauthorized access by third parties to the TeleNav Software without advanced written permission of TeleNav.

## 4. Disclaimers

- To the fullest extent permissible pursuant to applicable law, in no event will TeleNav, its licensors and suppliers, or agents or employees of any of the foregoing, be liable for any decision made or action taken by you or anyone else in reliance on the information provided by the TeleNav Software. TeleNav also does not warrant the accuracy of the map or other data used for the TeleNav Software. Such data may not always reflect reality due to, among other things, road closures, construction, weather, new roads and other changing conditions. You are responsible for the entire risk arising out of your use of the TeleNav Software. For example but without limitation, you agree not to rely on the TeleNav Software for critical navigation in areas where the well-being or survival of you or others

is dependent on the accuracy of navigation, as the maps or functionality of the TeleNav Software are not intended to support such high risk applications, especially in more remote geographical areas.

- TELENAV EXPRESSLY DISCLAIMS AND EXCLUDES ALL WARRANTIES IN CONNECTION WITH THE TELENAV SOFTWARE, WHETHER STATUTORY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING ALL WARRANTIES WHICH MAY ARISE FROM COURSE OF DEALING, CUSTOM OR TRADE AND INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS WITH RESPECT TO THE TELENAV SOFTWARE.
- Certain jurisdictions do not permit the disclaimer of certain warranties, so this limitation may not apply to you.

## 5. Limitation of Liability

- TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED UNDER APPLICABLE LAW, UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL TELENAV OR ITS LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE TO YOU OR TO ANY THIRD PARTY FOR ANY INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, SPECIAL OR EXEMPLARY DAMAGES (INCLUDING IN EACH CASE, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, DAMAGES FOR THE INABILITY TO USE THE EQUIPMENT OR ACCESS DATA, LOSS OF DATA, LOSS OF BUSINESS, LOSS OF PROFITS, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR THE LIKE) ARISING OUT OF THE USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE TELENAV SOFTWARE, EVEN IF TELENAV HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. NOTWITHSTANDING ANY DAMAGES THAT YOU MIGHT INCUR FOR ANY

# Appendices

---

REASON WHATSOEVER (INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, ALL DAMAGES REFERENCED HEREIN AND ALL DIRECT OR GENERAL DAMAGES IN CONTRACT, TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE) OR OTHERWISE), THE ENTIRE LIABILITY OF TELENAV AND OF ALL OF TELENAV'S SUPPLIERS SHALL BE LIMITED TO THE AMOUNT ACTUALLY PAID BY YOU FOR THE TELENAV SOFTWARE. SOME STATES AND/OR JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, SO THE ABOVE LIMITATIONS OR EXCLUSIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU.

## **6. Arbitration and Governing Law**

- You agree that any dispute, claim or controversy arising out of or relating to this Agreement or the TeleNav Software shall be settled by independent arbitration involving a neutral arbitrator and administered by the American Arbitration Association in the County of Santa Clara, California. The arbitrator shall apply the Commercial Arbitration Rules of the American Arbitration Association, and the judgment upon the award rendered by the arbitrator may be entered by any court having jurisdiction. Note that there is no judge or jury in an arbitration proceeding and the decision of the arbitrator shall be binding upon both parties. You expressly agree to waive your right to a jury trial. This Agreement and performance hereunder will be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of the State of California, without giving effect to its conflict of law provisions. To the extent judicial action is necessary in connection with the binding arbitration, both TeleNav and you agree to submit

to the exclusive jurisdiction of the courts of the County of Santa Clara, California. The United Nations Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods shall not apply.

## **7. Assignment**

- You may not resell, assign, or transfer this Agreement or any of your rights or obligations, except in totality, in connection with your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software, and expressly conditioned upon the new user of the TeleNav Software agreeing to be bound by the terms and conditions of this Agreement. Any such sale, assignment or transfer that is not expressly permitted under this paragraph will result in immediate termination of this Agreement, without liability to TeleNav, in which case you and all other parties shall immediately cease all use of the TeleNav Software. Notwithstanding the foregoing, TeleNav may assign this Agreement to any other party at any time without notice, provided the assignee remains bound by this Agreement.

## **8. Miscellaneous**

### **8.1**

This Agreement constitutes the entire agreement between TeleNav and you with respect to the subject matter hereof.

### **8.2**

Except for the limited licenses expressly granted in this Agreement, TeleNav retains all right, title and interest in and to the TeleNav Software, including without limitation all related intellectual property rights. No licenses or other rights which are not expressly granted in this Agreement are intended to, or shall be, granted or



# Appendices

---

conferred by implication, statute, inducement, estoppel or otherwise, and TeleNav and its suppliers and licensors hereby reserve all of their respective rights other than the licenses explicitly granted in this Agreement.

## 8.3

By using the TeleNav Software, you consent to receive from TeleNav all communications, including notices, agreements, legally required disclosures or other information in connection with the TeleNav Software (collectively, "Notices") electronically. TeleNav may provide such Notices by posting them on TeleNav's Website or by downloading such Notices to your wireless device. If you desire to withdraw your consent to receive Notices electronically, you must discontinue your use of the TeleNav Software.

## 8.4

TeleNav's or your failure to require performance of any provision shall not affect that party's right to require performance at any time thereafter, nor shall a waiver of any breach or default of this Agreement constitute a waiver of any subsequent breach or default or a waiver of the provision itself.

## 8.5

If any provision herein is held unenforceable, then such provision will be modified to reflect the intention of the parties, and the remaining provisions of this Agreement will remain in full force and effect.

## 8.6

The headings in this Agreement are for convenience of reference only, will not be deemed to be a part of this Agreement, and will not be referred to in connection with the construction or interpretation of this Agreement. As used in this Agreement, the words "include" and "including" and variations thereof, will not be deemed to be terms of limitation, but rather will be deemed to be followed by the words "without limitation".

## 9. Other Vendors Terms and Conditions

- The Telenav Software utilizes map and other data licensed to Telenav by third party vendors for the benefit of you and other end users. This Agreement includes end-user terms applicable to these companies (included at the end of this Agreement), and thus your use of the Telenav Software is also subject to such terms. You agree to comply with the following additional terms and conditions, which are applicable to Telenav's third party vendor licensors::

## 9.1 End User Terms Required by HERE North America, LLC

The data ("Data") is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and Telenav ("Telenav") and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand.

© 2013 HERE. All rights reserved.

The Data for areas of Canada includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including: © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®, © Department of Natural Resources Canada.

# Appendices

---

HERE holds a non-exclusive license from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information.

©United States Postal Service® 2014. Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service®. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4

The Data for Mexico includes certain data from Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía.

## **Terms and Conditions**

**Permitted Use.** You agree to use this Data together with the Telenav Software solely for the internal business and personal purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble, create any derivative works of, or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

**Restrictions.** Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by Telenav, and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not use this Data (a) with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with or in communication with any

positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs.

**Warning.** The Data may contain inaccurate or incomplete information due to the passage of time, changing circumstances, sources used and the nature of collecting comprehensive geographic data, any of which may lead to incorrect results.

**No Warranty.** This Data is provided to you “as is,” and you agree to use it at your own risk. Telenav and its licensors (and their licensors and suppliers) make no guarantees, representations or warranties of any kind, express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, content, quality, accuracy, completeness, effectiveness, reliability, fitness for a particular purpose, usefulness, use or results to be obtained from this Data, or that the Data or server will be uninterrupted or error-free.

**Disclaimer of Warranty:** TELENAV AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain warranty exclusions, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

**Disclaimer of Liability:** TELENAV AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR

# Appendices

DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFORMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF TELENAV OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain liability exclusions or damages limitations, so to that extent the above may not apply to you.

**Export Control.** You shall not export from anywhere any part of the Data or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations, including but not limited to the laws, rules and regulations administered by the Office of Foreign Assets Control of the U.S. Department of Commerce and the Bureau of Industry and Security of the U.S. Department of Commerce. To the extent that any such export laws, rules or regulations prohibit HERE from complying with any of its obligations hereunder to deliver or distribute Data, such failure shall be excused and shall not constitute a breach of this Agreement.

**Entire Agreement.** These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between Telenav (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

**Governing Law.** The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the State of Illinois [insert "Netherlands" where European HERE Data is used], without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. You agree to submit to the jurisdiction of the State of Illinois [insert "The Netherlands" where European HERE Data is used] for any and all disputes, claims and actions arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder.

**Government End Users.** If the Data is being acquired by or on behalf of the United States government or any other entity seeking or applying rights similar to those customarily claimed by the United States government, this Data is a "commercial item" as that term is defined at 48 C.F.R. ("FAR") 2.101, is licensed in accordance with these End-User Terms, and each copy of Data delivered or otherwise furnished shall be marked and embedded as appropriate with the following "Notice of Use," and shall be treated in accordance with such Notice:

NOTICE OF USE
CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/ SUPPLIER) NAME: HERE
CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/ SUPPLIER) ADDRESS: c/o Nokia, 425 West Randolph Street, Chicago, Illinois 60606
This Data is a commercial item as defined in FAR 2.101 and is subject to these End-User Terms under which this Data was provided.
© 1987 – 2014 HERE – All rights reserved.

# Appendices

---

If the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official refuses to use the legend provided herein, the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official must notify HERE prior to seeking additional or alternative rights in the Data.

## **Gracenote® Copyright**

CD and music-related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright©

2000-2007 Gracenote. Gracenote Software, copyright © 2000-2007 Gracenote. This product and service may practice one or more of the following U.S. Patents 5,987,525; 6,061,680; 6,154,773; 6,161,132; 6,230,192; 6,230,207; 6,240,459; 6,330,593 and other patents issued or pending. Some services supplied under license from Open Globe, Inc. for U.S. Patent 6,304,523.

Gracenote and CDDB are registered trademarks of Gracenote. The Gracenote logo and logotype, and the "Powered by Gracenote™" logo are trademarks of Gracenote.

## **Gracenote® End User License Agreement (EULA)**

This device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. of 2000 Powell Street Emeryville, California 94608 ("Gracenote").

The software from Gracenote (the "Gracenote Software") enables this device to do disc and music file identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track, and title information ("Gracenote Data") from online servers ("Gracenote Servers"), and to perform other functions. You may use Gracenote Data only by means of the intended End User functions of this device. This device may contain content belonging to Gracenote's providers. If so, all of the restrictions set forth herein with respect to

Gracenote Data shall also apply to such content and such content providers shall be entitled to all of the benefits and protections set forth herein that are available to Gracenote. You agree that you will use the content from Gracenote ("Gracenote Content"), Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers for your own personal, non-commercial use only. You agree not to assign, copy, transfer or transmit the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Software or any Gracenote Data (except in a Tag associated with a music file) to any third party. YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE CONTENT, GRACENOTE DATA, THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED HEREIN.

You agree that your non-exclusive licenses to use the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers will terminate if you violate these restrictions. If your licenses terminate, you agree to cease any and all use of the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers.

Gracenote, respectively, reserve all rights in Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and the Gracenote Servers and Gracenote Content, including all ownership rights. Under no circumstances will either Gracenote become liable for any payment to you for any information that you provide, including any copyrighted material or music file information. You agree that Gracenote may enforce its respective rights, collectively or separately, under this agreement against you, directly in each company's own name.

# Appendices

---

Gracenote uses a unique identifier to track queries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to allow Gracenote to count queries without knowing anything about who you are. For more information, see the web page at [www.gracenote.com](http://www.gracenote.com) for the Gracenote Privacy Policy.

THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, EACH ITEM OF GRACENOTE DATA AND THE GRACENOTE CONTENT ARE LICENSED TO YOU "AS IS". NEITHER GRACENOTE MAKES ANY REPRESENTATIONS OR WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, REGARDING THE ACCURACY OF ANY GRACENOTE DATA FROM THE GRACENOTE SERVERS OR GRACENOTE CONTENT. GRACENOTE COLLECTIVELY AND SEPARATELY RESERVE THE RIGHT TO DELETE DATA AND/OR CONTENT FROM THE COMPANIES' RESPECTIVE SERVERS OR, IN THE CASE OF GRACENOTE, CHANGE DATA CATEGORIES FOR ANY CAUSE THAT GRACENOTE DEEMS SUFFICIENT. NO WARRANTY IS MADE THAT EITHER GRACENOTE CONTENT OR THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS ARE ERROR-FREE OR THAT THE FUNCTIONING OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED. GRACENOTE IS NOT OBLIGATED TO PROVIDE YOU WITH ANY ENHANCED OR ADDITIONAL DATA TYPES THAT GRACENOTE MAY CHOOSE TO PROVIDE IN THE FUTURE AND IS FREE TO DISCONTINUE ITS ONLINE SERVICES AT ANY TIME. GRACENOTE DISCLAIM ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. NEITHER GRACENOTE WARRANTS THE RESULTS THAT WILL BE OBTAINED BY YOUR USE

OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR ANY GRACENOTE SERVER. IN NO CASE WILL GRACENOTE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR LOST REVENUES FOR ANY REASON WHATSOEVER. © Gracenote 2007.

FCC ID: ACJ-SYNCG3-L

IC: 216B-SYNCG3-L

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

**(1)** This device may not cause harmful interference, and

**(2)** this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

## WARNING



Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

The antenna used for this transmitter must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

# Index

## 4

### 4WD

See: Four-Wheel Drive.....140

## A

### A/C

See: Climate Control.....100

About This Manual.....7

### ABS

See: Brakes.....145

### ABS driving hints

See: Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock

Brakes.....145

Accessories.....340

Exterior Style.....340

Interior Style.....340

Lifestyle.....340

Peace of Mind.....340

### Accessories

See: Replacement Parts

Recommendation.....11

Active Park Assist.....153

Automatic Steering into Parking

Space.....154

Deactivating the Park Assist Feature.....155

Troubleshooting the System.....156

Using Active Park Assist.....154

Adjusting the Headlamps.....225

Horizontal Aim Adjustment.....227

Vertical Aim Adjustment.....225

Adjusting the Steering Wheel.....67

Airbag Disposal.....43

### Air Conditioning

See: Climate Control.....100

### Air Filter

See: Changing the Engine Air Filter.....233

### Alarm

See: Anti-Theft Alarm.....66

Ambient Lighting.....76

Anti-Theft Alarm.....66

Arming the Alarm.....66

Disarming the Alarm.....66

Appendices.....363

Audible Warnings and Indicators.....86

Automatic Transmission Warning

Chime.....86

Engine On Warning Chime.....86

Headlamps On Warning Chime.....86

Key in Ignition Warning Chime.....86

Keyless Warning Alert .....86

Parking Brake On Warning Chime.....86

Audio Control.....67

Audio System.....286

General Information.....286

Audio Unit - Vehicles With: AM/FM/CD/

SYNC/Satellite Radio.....291

Audio Unit - Vehicles With: AM/FM/CD/

SYNC.....289

Audio Unit - Vehicles With: AM/FM/

CD.....287

Audio Unit - Vehicles With: Premium

AM/FM/CD.....293

Audio Unit - Vehicles With: Sony AM/

FM/CD.....295

Autolamps.....73

Windshield Wiper Activated

Headlamps.....74

Automatic Climate Control.....101

Temperature Control.....102

Automatic Transmission.....137

Brake-Shift Interlock.....138

If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck In Mud or

Snow.....139

SelectShift Automatic™

Transmission.....137

Understanding the Positions of Your

Automatic Transmission.....137

Automatic Transmission Fluid

Check.....222

Autowipers.....70

Auxiliary Power Points.....120

110 Volt AC Power Point.....120

12 Volt DC Power Point.....120

Locations.....120

## B

### Battery

See: Changing the 12V Battery.....223

# Index

Blind Spot Information System.....	161	Changing a Road Wheel.....	262
Switching the System Off and On.....	163	Dissimilar Spare Wheel and Tire Assembly	
System Errors.....	163	Information.....	262
Using the System.....	161	Tire Change Procedure.....	263
Bonnet Lock		Changing the 12V Battery.....	223
See: Opening and Closing the Hood.....	213	Changing the Engine Air Filter.....	233
Booster Seats.....	22	1.6L and 2.0L EcoBoost Engines.....	233
Types of Booster Seats.....	23	2.5L Engine.....	234
Brake Fluid Check.....	222	Changing the Wiper Blades.....	224
Brakes.....	145	Front Wiper Blades.....	224
General Information.....	145	Rear Wiper Blade.....	225
Breaking-In.....	187	Checking MyKey System Status.....	52
Bulb Specification Chart.....	231	Checking the Wiper Blades.....	224
<b>C</b>		Child Restraint and Seatbelt	
Cabin Air Filter.....	106	Maintenance.....	33
California Proposition 65.....	11	Child Restraint Positioning.....	24
Capacities and Specifications - 1.6L		Child Safety.....	15
EcoBoost™.....	275	General Information.....	15
Specifications.....	275	Child Safety Locks.....	25
Capacities and Specifications - 2.0L		Left-Hand Side.....	26
EcoBoost™.....	278	Right-Hand Side.....	26
Specifications.....	279	Cleaning Leather Seats.....	239
Capacities and Specifications -		Cleaning Products.....	235
2.5L.....	282	Cleaning the Alloy Wheels.....	239
Specifications.....	283	Cleaning the Engine.....	237
Capacities and Specifications.....	268	Cleaning the Exterior.....	235
Car Wash		Exterior Chrome Parts.....	236
See: Cleaning the Exterior.....	235	Exterior Plastic Parts.....	236
Center Console.....	122	Stripes or Graphics.....	236
Changing a Bulb.....	227	Underbody.....	236
Lamp Assembly Condensation.....	227	Cleaning the Instrument Panel and	
Replacing Fog, Park and Turn Signal		Instrument Cluster Lens.....	238
Bulbs.....	229	Cleaning the Interior.....	238
Replacing Headlamp Bulbs.....	228	Cleaning the Windows and Wiper	
Replacing HID Headlamp Bulbs.....	229	Blades.....	237
Replacing High-Mount Brake Lamp		Clearing All MyKeys.....	50
Bulb.....	231	Climate Control.....	100
Replacing License Plate Lamp Bulb.....	231	Coolant Check	
Replacing Reverse Lamp Assembly.....	230	See: Engine Coolant Check.....	219
Replacing Side Marker Bulbs.....	229	Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator.....	42
Replacing Tail, Brake and Turn Signal		Creating a MyKey.....	50
Bulbs.....	230	Programming/Changing Configurable	
Changing a Fuse.....	211	Settings.....	50
Fuses.....	211		

# Index

Cross Traffic Alert.....	163	Emission Control System.....	134
False Alerts.....	166	On-Board Diagnostics (OBD-II).....	135
Switching the System Off and On.....	166	Readiness for Inspection/Maintenance (I/M) Testing.....	135
System Errors.....	166	End User License Agreement.....	363
System Lights, Messages and Audible Alerts.....	165	VEHICLE SOFTWARE END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT (EULA) .....	363
System Limitations.....	165	Engine Block Heater.....	127
Using the System.....	163	Using the Engine Block Heater.....	128
Cruise Control.....	68	Engine Coolant Check.....	219
Principle of Operation.....	160	Adding Engine Coolant.....	220
Cruise control		Checking the Engine Coolant.....	219
See: Using Cruise Control.....	160	Recycled Engine Coolant.....	220
Customer Assistance.....	195	Severe Climates.....	220
<b>D</b>		What You Should Know About Fail-Safe Cooling.....	221
Data Recording.....	9	Engine Immobilizer	
Event Data Recording.....	9	See: Passive Anti-Theft System.....	65
Service Data Recording.....	9	Engine Oil Check.....	218
Daytime Running Lamps.....	75	Adding Engine Oil.....	218
Type 1 - Conventional (Non-Configurable).....	75	Engine Oil Dipstick - 1.6L EcoBoost™.....	218
Type 2 - Configurable.....	75	Engine Oil Dipstick - 2.0L EcoBoost™/ 2.5L.....	218
Digital Radio.....	296	Engine Specifications - 1.6L EcoBoost™.....	268
HD Radio Reception and Station Troubleshooting.....	297	Drivebelt Routing.....	268
Direction Indicators.....	76	Engine Specifications - 2.0L EcoBoost™.....	268
Driver and Passenger Airbags.....	36	Drivebelt Routing.....	269
Children and Airbags.....	36	Engine Specifications - 2.5L.....	269
Proper Driver and Front Passenger Seating Adjustment.....	36	Drivebelt Routing.....	270
Driver Knee Airbag.....	40	Environment.....	14
Driving Aids.....	161	Essential Towing Checks.....	181
Driving Hints.....	187	Before Towing a Trailer.....	183
Driving Through Water.....	188	Hitches.....	181
DRL		Launching or Retrieving a Boat or Personal Watercraft (PWC).....	184
See: Daytime Running Lamps.....	75	Safety Chains.....	182
<b>E</b>		Trailer Brakes.....	182
Eco Mode.....	166	Trailer Lamps.....	183
Resetting Eco Mode.....	167	When Towing a Trailer.....	183
Type 1.....	167	Event Data Recording	
Type 2 and 3.....	167	See: Data Recording.....	9
Economical Driving.....	187	Export Unique Options.....	13



# Index

Extended Service Plan (ESP).....	342
EXTENDED SERVICE PLAN (CANADA ONLY).....	343
EXTENDED SERVICE PLAN (U.S. Only).....	342
Exterior Mirrors.....	78
Blind Spot Monitor.....	79
Fold-Away Exterior Mirrors.....	79
Heated Exterior Mirrors.....	79
Integrated Blind Spot Mirrors.....	79
Memory Mirrors.....	79
Power Exterior Mirrors.....	78
<b>F</b>	
Fastening the Seatbelts.....	28
How to Extract Safety Belts in the Rear	
Outboard Positions.....	30
Safety Belt Extension Assembly.....	30
Safety Belt Locking Modes.....	29
Using Safety Belts During Pregnancy.....	28
Floor Mats.....	188
Fog Lamps - Front	
See: Front Fog Lamps.....	75
Ford Credit.....	11
(U.S. Only).....	11
Four-Wheel Drive.....	140
Principle of Operation.....	140
Front Fog Lamps.....	75
Front Parking Aid.....	152
Obstacle Distance Indicator.....	153
Front Passenger Sensing System.....	37
Fuel and Refueling.....	129
Fuel Consumption.....	133
Calculating Fuel Economy.....	134
Filling the Tank.....	133
Fuel Filler Funnel Location.....	130
Fuel Filter.....	222
Fuel Quality.....	130
Choosing the Right Fuel.....	130
Fuel Shutoff.....	191
Fuses.....	202
Fuse Specification Chart.....	202
Luggage Compartment Fuse Panel.....	208
Passenger Compartment Fuse Panel.....	205
Power Distribution Box.....	202
Pre-Fuse Box.....	202

## G

Garage Door Opener	
See: Universal Garage Door Opener.....	115
Gauges.....	82
Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge.....	83
Fuel Gauge.....	83
Information Display.....	82
General Information on Radio	
Frequencies.....	44
Intelligent Access.....	44
General Maintenance Information.....	344
Multi-Point Inspection.....	346
Owner Checks and Services.....	345
Protecting Your Investment.....	344
Why Maintain Your Vehicle?.....	344
Why Maintain Your Vehicle at Your	
Dealership?.....	344
Getting Assistance Outside the U.S. and	
Canada.....	198
Getting the Services You Need.....	195
Away From Home.....	195

## H

Handbrake	
See: Parking Brake.....	146
Hazard Warning Flashers.....	191
Headlamp Adjusting	
See: Adjusting the Headlamps.....	225
Headlamp Exit Delay.....	74
Headlamp Removal	
See: Removing a Headlamp.....	227
Head Restraints.....	107
Adjusting the Head Restraint.....	108
Heated Seats.....	113
Heated Steering Wheel.....	69
Heated Windows and Mirrors.....	105
Heated Exterior Mirror.....	105
Heated Rear Window.....	105
Heating	
See: Climate Control.....	100
Hill Start Assist.....	146
Switching the System On and Off.....	147
Using Hill Start Assist.....	146

# Index

Hints on Controlling the Interior	
Climate.....	102
Cooling the Interior Quickly.....	104
General Hints.....	102
Heating the Interior Quickly.....	103
Maximum Cooling Performance in Instrument Panel or Instrument Panel and Footwell Positions.....	105
Recommended Settings for Cooling .....	104
Recommended Settings for Heating.....	103
Side Window Defogging in Cold Weather.....	105
Vehicle Stationary for Extended Periods during Extreme High Ambient Temperatures.....	104
Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes.....	145
Hood Lock See: Opening and Closing the Hood.....	213
<b>I</b>	
Ignition Switch.....	123
In California (U.S. Only).....	196
Information Display Control.....	69
Information Displays.....	87
General Information.....	87
Information Messages.....	90
Airbag.....	91
Alarm.....	91
Automatic Engine Shutdown.....	91
Battery and Charging System.....	92
Blind Spot Information and Cross Traffic Alert System.....	92
Doors.....	93
Engine.....	93
Hill Start Assist.....	94
Keyless Vehicle.....	94
Lighting.....	95
Maintenance.....	95
Message indicator.....	90
MyKey.....	95
Park Aid.....	96
Park Brake.....	96
Power Steering.....	97
Starting System .....	97
Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....	99
Traction Control.....	99
Trailer.....	99
Transmission and Four-Wheel Drive.....	97
Installing Child Restraints.....	16
Child Seats.....	16
Using Lap and Shoulder Belts.....	17
Using Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH).....	19
Using Tether Straps.....	21
Instrument Cluster.....	82
Instrument Lighting Dimmer.....	74
Interior Lamps.....	76
Front Interior Lamp .....	76
Rear Interior Lamp.....	76
Interior Mirror.....	80
Auto-Dimming Mirror.....	80
Introduction.....	7
<b>J</b>	
Jump Starting the Vehicle.....	192
Connecting the Jumper Cables.....	192
Jump Starting.....	193
Preparing Your Vehicle.....	192
Removing the Jumper Cables.....	193

# Index

## K

Keyless Entry.....	62
SECURICODE™ KEYLESS ENTRY	
KEYPAD.....	62
Keyless Starting.....	123
Ignition Modes.....	124
Keys and Remote Controls.....	44
Principle of Operation.....	44

## L

Lighting Control.....	73
Headlamp Flasher.....	73
High Beams.....	73
Lighting.....	73
Load Carriers	
See: Roof Racks and Load Carriers.....	170
Load Carrying.....	169
Load Limit.....	171
Special Loading Instructions for Owners of	
Pick-up Trucks and Utility-type	
Vehicles.....	177
Vehicle Loading - with and without a	
Trailer.....	171
Locking and Unlocking.....	55
Activating Intelligent Access .....	56
Autolock.....	57
Battery Saver.....	58
Illuminated Entry.....	58
Illuminated Exit.....	58
Mechanical Key.....	56
Opening a Rear Door from Inside.....	56
Power Door Locks.....	55
Remote Control.....	55
Smart Unlocks For Integrated Keyhead	
Transmitter.....	57
Smart Unlocks For Intelligent Access Keys	
.....	57
Locks.....	55
Luggage Covers.....	169
Lug Nuts	
See: Changing a Road Wheel.....	262

## M

Maintenance.....	213
General Information.....	213

Manual Climate Control.....	100
Manual Liftgate.....	59
Closing the Liftgate.....	59
Opening the Liftgate.....	59
Manual Seats.....	109
Adjusting the Height of the Driver	
Seat.....	110
Moving the Seat Backward and	
Forward.....	109
Recline Adjustment.....	110
Media Hub.....	301
Memory Function.....	112
Saving a PreSet Position.....	112
Message Center	
See: Information Displays.....	87
Mirrors	
See: Heated Windows and Mirrors.....	105
See: Windows and Mirrors.....	77
Mobile Communications Equipment.....	13
Moonroof.....	80
Bounce-Back.....	81
Opening and Closing the Moonroof.....	81
Opening and Closing the Sunscreen.....	81
Venting the Moonroof.....	81
Motorcraft Parts - 1.6L	
EcoBoost™.....	270
Motorcraft Parts - 2.0L	
EcoBoost™.....	271
Motorcraft Parts - 2.5L.....	272
MyKey Troubleshooting.....	53
MyKey™.....	49
Principle of Operation.....	49

## N

Normal Scheduled Maintenance.....	347
Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor™.....	347
Normal Maintenance Intervals.....	348

## O

Oil Check	
See: Engine Oil Check.....	218
Opening and Closing the Hood.....	213
Closing the Hood.....	214
Opening the Hood.....	213

# Index

Ordering Additional Owner's Literature.....	199
Obtaining a French Owner's Manual.....	200
Overhead Console.....	122
<b>P</b>	
Parking Aids.....	151
Principle of Operation.....	151
Parking Brake.....	146
Passive Anti-Theft System.....	65
SecuriLock®.....	65
PATS	
See: Passive Anti-Theft System.....	65
Perchlorate.....	11
Personal Safety System™.....	34
How Does the Personal Safety System Work?.....	34
Post-Crash Alert System.....	194
Power Door Locks	
See: Locking and Unlocking.....	55
Power Liftgate.....	60
Hands-Free Feature.....	62
Obstacle Detection.....	62
Opening and Closing the Liftgate.....	60
Setting the Liftgate Open Height.....	61
Stopping the Liftgate Movement.....	61
Power Seats.....	110
Power Lumbar.....	112
Power Steering Fluid Check.....	222
Power Windows.....	77
Accessory Delay.....	78
Bounce-Back.....	77
One-Touch Down.....	77
One-Touch Up.....	77
Window Lock.....	77
Protecting the Environment.....	14
<b>R</b>	
Rear Parking Aid.....	151
Obstacle Distance Indicator.....	152
Rear Seat Armrest.....	114
Rear Seats.....	113
Folding the Seatback.....	113
Recline Adjustment.....	113
Unfolding the Seatback.....	113
Rear Under Floor Storage.....	169
Adjustable Load Floor.....	169
Cargo Management System.....	169
Rear View Camera.....	157
Using the Rear View Camera System.....	157
Rear View Camera	
See: Rear View Camera.....	157
Rear Window Wiper and Washers.....	72
Rear Window Washer.....	72
Rear Window Wiper.....	72
Recommended Towing Weights.....	179
Refueling.....	131
Easy Fuel™ Capless Fuel System.....	132
Remote Control.....	45
Car Finder.....	47
Integrated Keyhead Transmitters.....	45
Intelligent Access Key.....	45
Remote Start.....	47
Replacing the Battery.....	46
Sounding a Panic Alarm.....	47
Remote Start.....	106
Automatic Settings.....	106
Heated and Cooled Devices.....	106
Last Settings.....	106
Removing a Headlamp.....	227
Repairing Minor Paint Damage.....	239
Replacement Parts	
Recommendation.....	11
Collision Repairs.....	11
Scheduled Maintenance and Mechanical Repairs.....	11
Warranty on Replacement Parts.....	12
Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control.....	48
Reporting Safety Defects (Canada Only).....	200
Reporting Safety Defects (U.S. Only).....	200

# Index

Roadside Assistance.....	190	Special Notices.....	12
Vehicles Sold in Canada: Getting Roadside Assistance.....	190	New Vehicle Limited Warranty.....	12
Vehicles Sold in Canada: Roadside Assistance Program Coverage.....	191	Notice to Owners of Pickup Trucks and Utility Type Vehicles.....	12
Vehicles Sold in Canada: Using Roadside Assistance.....	191	On-board Diagnostics (OBD-II).....	12
Vehicles Sold in the United States: Getting Roadside Assistance.....	190	Special Instructions.....	12
Vehicles Sold in the United States: Using Roadside Assistance.....	190	Using Your Vehicle as an Ambulance.....	13
Roadside Emergencies.....	190	Using Your Vehicle With a Snowplow.....	12
Roof Racks and Load Carriers.....	170	Special Operating Conditions Scheduled Maintenance.....	350
Adjusting the Crossbar.....	170	Exceptions.....	351
Running-In		Speed Control	
See: Breaking-In.....	187	See: Cruise Control.....	160
Running Out of Fuel.....	130	Stability Control.....	149
Adding Fuel From a Portable Fuel Container.....	131	Principle of Operation.....	149
Filling a Portable Fuel Container.....	131	Starter Switch	
<b>S</b>		See: Ignition Switch.....	123
Safety Canopy™.....	40	Starting a Gasoline Engine.....	124
Safety Precautions.....	129	Automatic Engine Shutdown.....	125
Satellite Radio.....	298	Failure to Start.....	125
Satellite Radio Electronic Serial Number (ESN).....	299	Guarding Against Exhaust Fumes.....	127
Satellite Radio Reception Factors.....	299	Important Ventilating Information.....	127
SIRIUS® Satellite Radio Service.....	299	Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Moving.....	126
Troubleshooting.....	300	Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Stationary.....	126
Scheduled Maintenance Record.....	352	Vehicles with an Ignition Key.....	124
Scheduled Maintenance.....	344	Vehicles with Keyless Start.....	124
Seatbelt Height Adjustment.....	31	Starting and Stopping the Engine.....	123
Seatbelt Reminder.....	32	General Information.....	123
Belt-Minder™.....	32	Steering.....	167
Seatbelts.....	27	Electric Power Steering.....	167
Principle of Operation.....	27	Steering Wheel.....	67
Seatbelt Warning Lamp and Indicator Chime.....	31	Storage Compartments.....	122
Conditions of operation.....	31	Sunroof	
Seats.....	107	See: Moonroof.....	80
Security.....	65	Sun Visors.....	80
Side Airbags.....	39	Illuminated Vanity Mirror.....	80
Sitting in the Correct Position.....	107	Supplementary Restraints System.....	35
Snow Chains		Principle of Operation.....	35
See: Using Snow Chains.....	258	Symbols Glossary.....	7
		SYNC™ Applications and Services.....	318
		911 Assist.....	318
		SYNC Mobile Apps.....	320
		SYNC™.....	302
		General Information.....	302
		SYNC™ Troubleshooting.....	332

# Index

## T

Tailgate	
See: Manual Liftgate.....	59
See: Power Liftgate.....	60
Technical Specifications	
See: Capacities and Specifications.....	268
The Better Business Bureau (BBB) Auto Line Program (U.S. Only).....	197
Tire Care.....	245
Glossary of Tire Terminology.....	246
Information About Uniform Tire Quality Grading.....	245
Information Contained on the Tire	
Sidewall.....	247
Temperature A B C.....	246
Traction AA A B C.....	245
Treadwear.....	245
Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....	259
Changing Tires With a Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....	260
Understanding Your Tire Pressure Monitoring System .....	260
Tires	
See: Wheels and Tires.....	242
Towing a Trailer.....	178
Load Placement.....	178
Towing Points.....	184
Installing the Recovery Hook.....	184
Recovery Hook Location.....	184
Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels.....	184
Towing the Vehicle on Four	
Wheels.....	185
Emergency Towing.....	185
Recreational Towing.....	186
Towing.....	178
Traction Control.....	148
Principle of Operation.....	148
Trailer Sway Control.....	179
Transmission Code Designation.....	274
Transmission.....	137
See: Transmission.....	137
Transporting the Vehicle.....	185

Trip Computer.....	90
All Value.....	90
Average Fuel.....	90
Digital Speedo.....	90
Distance to E.....	90
Instantaneous Fuel.....	90
Resetting the Trip Computer.....	90
Trip Odometer.....	90
Trip Timer.....	90

## U

Under Hood Overview - 1.6L	
EcoBoost™.....	215
Under Hood Overview - 2.0L	
EcoBoost™.....	216
Under Hood Overview - 2.5L.....	217
Universal Garage Door Opener.....	115
HomeLink Wireless Control System.....	115
USB Port.....	301
Using Cruise Control.....	160
Switching Cruise Control Off.....	160
Switching Cruise Control On.....	160
Using Four-Wheel Drive.....	140
Driving in Special Conditions With Four-Wheel Drive.....	140
Using MyKey With Remote Start Systems.....	53
Using Snow Chains.....	258
Using Stability Control.....	150
AdvanceTrac® with Roll Stability Control™ (RSC®).....	150
Using SYNC™ With Your Media Player.....	323
Accessing Your USB Song Library.....	327
Bluetooth Devices and System Settings.....	329
Connecting Your Digital Media Player to the USB Port.....	323
Media Menu Features.....	327
Media Voice Commands.....	324
USB 2.....	329
Voice Commands for Audio Sources.....	330

# Index

Using SYNC™ With Your Phone.....	306
Accessing Features through the Phone	
Menu.....	311
Accessing Your Phone Settings.....	314
Bluetooth Devices.....	315
Making Calls.....	309
Pairing a Phone for the First Time.....	306
Pairing Subsequent Phones.....	307
Phone Options during an Active Call.....	310
Phone Voice Commands.....	308
Receiving Calls.....	310
System Settings.....	316
Text Messaging.....	312
Using Traction Control.....	148
Switching the System Off.....	148
System Indicator Lights and	
Messages.....	148
Using a Switch.....	148
Using the Information Display	
Controls.....	148
Using Voice Recognition.....	304
Initiating a Voice Session.....	304
System Interaction and Feedback.....	305
Utilizing the Mediation/Arbitration	
Program (Canada Only).....	198

## V

Vehicle Care.....	235
General Information.....	235
Vehicle Certification Label.....	274
Vehicle Identification Number.....	273
Vehicle Storage.....	240
Battery.....	241
Body.....	240
Brakes.....	241
Cooling system.....	241
Engine.....	240
Fuel system.....	241
General.....	240
Miscellaneous.....	241
Removing Vehicle From Storage.....	241
Tires.....	241
Ventilation	
See: Climate Control.....	100
VIN	
See: Vehicle Identification Number.....	273
Voice Control.....	68

## W

Warning Lamps and Indicators.....	84
Airbag - Front.....	84
Anti-Lock Braking System.....	84
Battery.....	84
Blind Spot Monitor.....	84
Brake System.....	84
Cruise Control.....	84
Direction Indicator.....	84
Engine Oil.....	85
Fasten Safety Belt.....	85
Fog Lamps - Front.....	85
High Beam.....	85
Information.....	85
Low Fuel Level.....	85
Low Tire Pressure Warning.....	85
Parking Lamps.....	85
Service Engine Soon.....	85
Traction and Stability Control.....	86
Traction and Stability Control Off.....	86
Washer Fluid Check.....	222
Washers	
See: Cleaning the Exterior.....	235
See: Wipers and Washers.....	70
Waxing.....	236
Wheel Nuts	
See: Changing a Road Wheel.....	262
Wheels and Tires.....	242
General Information.....	242
Technical Specifications.....	266
Windows and Mirrors.....	77
Windshield Washers.....	71
Windshield Wipers.....	70
Intermittent Wipe.....	70
Speed Dependent Wipers.....	70
Wiper Blades	
See: Checking the Wiper Blades.....	224
Wipers and Washers.....	70
Wrecker Towing	
See: Transporting the Vehicle.....	185